Altova RaptorXML Server 2021
User & Reference Manual

All rights reserved. No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher.

Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

Published: 2015-2021

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
# Table of Contents

1 Introduction ................................................................. 8

2 About RaptorXML Server ............................................. 9
   2.1 Editions and Interfaces ........................................... 10
   2.2 System Requirements ............................................ 14
   2.3 Features ............................................................. 15
   2.4 Supported Specifications ....................................... 17

3 Setting Up RaptorXML .................................................. 19
   3.1 Processor Cores and Licenses ............................... 20
   3.2 Setup on Windows ............................................... 21
      3.2.1 Installation on Windows .................................. 21
      3.2.2 Licensing on Windows .................................... 24
   3.3 Setup on Linux .................................................... 28
      3.3.1 Installation on Linux ....................................... 28
      3.3.2 Licensing on Linux ......................................... 31
   3.4 Setup on macOS .................................................. 34
      3.4.1 Installation on macOS ..................................... 34
      3.4.2 Licensing on macOS ....................................... 36
   3.5 XML Catalogs ...................................................... 39
      3.5.1 How Catalogs Work ....................................... 39
      3.5.2 Catalog Structure in RaptorXML Server ............ 40
      3.5.3 Customizing your Catalogs ............................. 41
      3.5.4 Variables for Windows System Locations .......... 43
   3.6 Global Resources .................................................. 45
   3.7 Security Issues .................................................... 47
4 Command Line Interface (CLI)

4.1 XML, DTD, XSD Validation Commands ................................................................. 50
4.1.1 valxml-withdtd (xml) .................................................................................. 50
4.1.2 valxml-withxsd (xsi) .................................................................................. 53
4.1.3 valdtd (dtd) ............................................................................................... 60
4.1.4 valxsd (xsd) ............................................................................................. 64
4.2 Well-formedness Check Commands ................................................................. 70
4.2.1 wxml .................................................. 70
4.2.2 wfdtd ................................................ 73
4.2.3 wfany ............................................. 77
4.3 XQuery Commands ......................................................................................... 81
4.3.1 xquery ............................................. 81
4.3.2 xqueryupdate ........................................ 88
4.3.3 valxquery ....................................... 96
4.3.4 valxqueryupdate ........................................ 102
4.4 XSLT Commands ............................................................................................. 108
4.4.1 xslt ................................................ 108
4.4.2 valxslt ........................................... 116
4.5 JSON/Avro Commands ..................................................................................... 122
4.5.1 avroextractschema .......................................................... 122
4.5.2 valavro (avro) ....................................................................................... 125
4.5.3 valavrojson (avrojson) .................................................................. 128
4.5.4 valavroschema (avroschema) ...................................................... 132
4.5.5 valjsonschema (jsonschema) ...................................................... 135
4.5.6 valjson (json) .................................................................................... 138
4.5.7 wfjson .................................................. 142
4.6 XML Signature Commands ............................................................................. 147
4.6.1 xmlsignature-sign .................................................. 147
4.6.2 xmlsignature-verify .............................................. 151
4.6.3 xmlsignature-update .................................................. 154
4.6.4 xmlsignature-remove .............................................. 157
4.7 General Commands ......................................................................................... 159
4.7.1 valany ................................................ 159
4.7.2  script .................................................................................................................. 160
4.7.3  help ..................................................................................................................... 161

4.8  Localization Commands......................................................................................... 163
4.8.1  exportresourcestrings....................................................................................... 163
4.8.2  setdeflang......................................................................................................... 165

4.9  License Commands............................................................................................... 166
4.9.1  licenseserver..................................................................................................... 166
4.9.2  assignlicense (Windows only)........................................................................... 167
4.9.3  verifylicense (Windows only)........................................................................... 169

4.10  Administration Commands.................................................................................. 171
4.10.1  install ............................................................................................................... 172
4.10.2  uninstall.......................................................................................................... 172
4.10.3  start ................................................................................................................ 173
4.10.4  setdeflang..................................................................................................... 174
4.10.5  licenseserver................................................................................................... 175
4.10.6  assignlicense (Windows only)....................................................................... 176
4.10.7  verifylicense (Windows only)....................................................................... 178
4.10.8  createconfig................................................................................................... 179
4.10.9  exportresourcestrings................................................................................. 180
4.10.10 debug........................................................................................................... 181
4.10.11 help ............................................................................................................. 183
4.10.12 version......................................................................................................... 184

4.11  Options................................................................................................................ 185
4.11.1  Catalogs, Global Resources, ZIP Files......................................................... 185
4.11.2  Messages, Errors, Help, Timeout, Version.................................................... 186
4.11.3  Processing....................................................................................................... 187
4.11.4  XML ............................................................................................................... 188
4.11.5  XSD ................................................................................................................. 189
4.11.6  XQuery........................................................................................................... 191
4.11.7  XSLT ............................................................................................................... 193
4.11.8  JSON/Avro...................................................................................................... 195
4.11.9  XML Signatures.............................................................................................. 196

5  Server APIs: HTTP REST, COM/.NET, Java ....................................................... 200
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>HTTP REST Client Interface</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.1</td>
<td>Server Setup</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.2</td>
<td>Client Requests</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>COM/.NET API</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.1</td>
<td>COM Interface</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.2</td>
<td>COM Example: VBScript</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.3</td>
<td>.NET Interface</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.4</td>
<td>.NET Example: C#</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.5</td>
<td>.NET Example: Visual Basic .NET</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Java API</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.1</td>
<td>Overview of the Interface</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.2</td>
<td>Example Java Project</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Server API Reference</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.1</td>
<td>Interfaces/Classes</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.2</td>
<td>Enumerations</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Engine APIs: Python and .NET</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Licensing</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Python API</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1</td>
<td>Python API Versions</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2</td>
<td>RaptorXML Server as a Python Package</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.3</td>
<td>Debugging Server-Side Python Scripts</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.4</td>
<td>Debugging Python Scripts in Visual Studio Code</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.5</td>
<td>FAQs</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>.NET Framework API</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Additional Information</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Exit Codes</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Schema Location Hints</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Engine Information</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>XSLT and XQuery Engine Information</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.1</td>
<td>XSLT 1.0</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.2</td>
<td>XSLT 2.0</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.3</td>
<td>XSLT 3.0</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.4</td>
<td>XQuery 1.0</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.5</td>
<td>XQuery 3.1</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>XSLT and XPath/XQuery Functions</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.1</td>
<td>Altova Extension Functions</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.2</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Extension Functions</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Index**

440
1 Introduction

Altova RaptorXML Server (hereafter also called RaptorXML for short) is Altova's third-generation, hyper-fast XML and XBRL* processor. It has been built to be optimized for the latest standards and parallel computing environments. Designed to be highly cross-platform capable, the engine takes advantage of today's ubiquitous multi-core computers to deliver lightning fast processing of XML and XBRL data.

Note: XBRL processing is available only in RaptorXML+XBRL Server, not in RaptorXML Server.

This documentation

This documentation is delivered with the application and is also available online at the Altova website. This documentation is organized into the following sections:

- About RaptorXML
- Setting Up RaptorXML
- Command Line Interface
- Server APIs: HTTP, COM/.NET, Java
- Engine APIs: Python and .NET
- Additional Information
- Engine Information

Altova website: XML validation server, XML validator

Last updated: 25 February 2021
2 About RaptorXML Server

Editions and operating systems
There are two editions of RaptorXML, each suitable for a different set of requirements. These editions are described in the section Editions and Interfaces. RaptorXML is available for Windows, Linux, and macOS. For more details of system support, see the section System Requirements.

Features and supported specifications
RaptorXML provides XML validation, XSLT transformations, and XQuery executions, each with a wide range of powerful options. See the section Features for a broad list of available functionality and key features. The section Supported Specifications provides a detailed list of the specifications to which RaptorXML conforms. For more information, visit the RaptorXML page at the Altova website.
2.1 Editions and Interfaces

Editions

RaptorXML is available in the following editions:

- **RaptorXML Server**, which is a fast server-based XML processing engine for the validation and processing of XML, XML Schema, XML Signature, XSLT, and XQuery documents.
- **RaptorXML+XBRL Server**, which provides all the functionality of RaptorXML Server plus a wide range of XBRL processing functionality.

See [here](#) for a list of the supported specifications.

Interfaces

After you install RaptorXML, you can access it in one or more of the following ways:

- **Command Line Interface (CLI)**: available for Windows, Linux, and macOS installations of RaptorXML
- **HTTP REST client interface**: uses RaptorXML's HTTP interface
- **COM/.NET server interface (Windows)**: uses RaptorXML's (i) COM/.NET API and (ii) HTTP REST interface
- **Java server interface (Windows, Linux, macOS)**: uses RaptorXML's (i) Java API and (ii) HTTP REST interface
- **Altova XMLSpy interface**: RaptorXML can be accessed from within the Altova XMLSpy user interface
- **Python engine interface**: uses (i) a RaptorXML Python-wheel in your Python environment and (ii) the Python API of RaptorXML in your Python script. In this way, RaptorXML functionality can be used in Python scripts together with third-party Python packages
- **.NET engine interface (Windows)**: uses (i) a RaptorXML DLL and (ii) the .NET API of RaptorXML to create independent .NET applications that use RaptorXML functionality

These seven interfaces can be organized into four groups:

- **Command Line Interface (CLI)**
- **Server APIs: HTTP, COM/.NET, Java**
- **Engine APIs: Python and .NET**
- **Altova XMLSpy**

CLI, Server APIs, and Altova XMLSpy

Access via the CLI, the Server APIs, and Altova XMLSpy can be visualized as in the figure below.

RaptorXML Server defines an HTTP REST interface, which is used by clients to dispatch validation jobs to the server. Clients can either access the HTTP REST interface directly or use the high-level COM/.NET and Java Server APIs. These APIs provide easy to use COM/.NET and Java classes which manage the creation and dispatch of the HTTP REST requests. Additionally, Altova XMLSpy can be configured to run validation jobs on a remote RaptorXML Server.
**Command line interface (CLI)**

- RaptorXML is licensed on the machine on which it is installed and this instance is accessed via the command line
- Can be installed on Windows, Linux, and macOS
- Provides [command line usage](#) for validation and processing of XML, XML Schema, XML Signature, XQuery, and XSLT documents
- Python 3.7 is bundled in RaptorXML and will be used when a Python script is invoked with the `--script` option

**HTTP REST client interface**

- RaptorXML is licensed on the machine on which it is installed and this instance is accessed via an [HTTP REST client interface](#)
- Client requests are made in JSON format. Each request is assigned a job directory on the server, in which output files are saved. Server responses to the client include all relevant information about the job.
- Python 3.7 is bundled in RaptorXML and will be used when a Python script is invoked with the `--script` option

**COM/.NET interface**

- Available on Windows only
- RaptorXML is automatically registered as a COM server object when installed, and so can be invoked from within applications and scripting languages that have programming support for COM calls
- RaptorXML is licensed on the machine on which it is installed
- The .NET interface is built as a wrapper around the COM interface
• The **COM/.NET Server API** of RaptorXML provides objects that can be used in COM/.NET scripting languages to access RaptorXML functionality.

• Python 3.7 is bundled in RaptorXML and will be used when a Python script is invoked with the `--script` option.

**Java interface**

• RaptorXML is licensed on the machine on which it is installed and this instance is accessed via a Java program.

• RaptorXML functionality is available in the **Java Server API** as Java classes that can be used in Java programs.

• Python 3.7 is bundled in RaptorXML and will be used when a Python script is invoked with the `--script` option.

**Altova XMLSpy**

• If you have installed and licensed Altova XMLSpy and if XMLSpy can access RaptorXML Server across a network, then you can use RaptorXML Server from within the XMLSpy GUI to validate XML documents, as well as run XSLT and XQuery transformations.

• You can validate the active document or all the documents in an XMLSpy project folder.

• The validation results are displayed in the Messages window of the XMLSpy GUI.

• In XMLSpy, you can (i) validate documents or (ii) run XSLT/XQuery transformation by using either XMLSpy’s engines or RaptorXML Server.

• One of the main advantages of using Raptor is that you can configure individual validations by means of a large range of validation options. Furthermore, you can store a set of Raptor options as a "configuration" in XMLSpy, and then select one of your defined configurations for a particular Raptor validation. Using Raptor is also advantageous when large data collections are to be validated.

**Engine APIs**

The **Engine APIs** are different than the Server APIs in that RaptorXML is contained in the Python wheel and in the .NET DLL that are used, respectively, by Python programs and .NET applications (see figure below). These programs/applications must use, respectively, Raptor's **Python API** and Raptor's **.NET API** in order to access RaptorXML functionality.

**Note:** The functionality provided by the **Python API** and **.NET API** are considerably greater than that provided by either the CLI or the Server APIs; for example, the ability to read documents and manipulate data.
Python interface

- RaptorXML is available in a Python wheel package that can be installed in your Python 3.7 environment
- A Python program can then be written that uses objects from RaptorXML's Python API. This API provides much more functionality than is available in the CLI, and it can be combined with the functionality provided by third-party libraries in your Python environment.
- When RaptorXML functionality is called via RaptorXML's Python wheel, a check is carried out for a valid RaptorXML license on that machine before the command is executed.

.NET interface

- RaptorXML is available in a DLL that can be embedded in an application that supports the .NET Framework. See the section .NET Framework API for information about the API.
- RaptorXML's .NET API provides access to RaptorXML. The available functionality is much more than that which is available in the RaptorXML CLI.
- When RaptorXML functionality is called via a .NET application, a check is carried out for a valid RaptorXML license on that machine.
2.2 System Requirements

RaptorXML Server is supported on the following operating systems:

- **Windows**
  - Windows 7 SP1 with Platform Update, Windows 8, Windows 10

- **Windows Server**
  - Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1 with Platform Update or newer

- **Linux**
  - CentOS 7 or newer
  - RedHat 7 or newer
  - Debian 8 or newer
  - Ubuntu 16.04 LTS or newer

The following libraries are required as a prerequisite to install and run the application. If the packages below are not already available on your Linux machine, run the command `yum` (or `apt-get` if applicable) to install them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required by</th>
<th>CentOS, RedHat</th>
<th>Debian</th>
<th>Ubuntu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LicenseServer</td>
<td>krb5-libs</td>
<td>libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
<td>libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RaptorXML Server</td>
<td>qt5-qtbase-gui</td>
<td>libqt5gui5, libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
<td>libqt5gui5, libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If you plan to use Altova's Charts functionality, then at least one font must be installed on your system to ensure that charts will be rendered correctly. To list installed fonts, use, for example, the `fc-list` command of the Fontconfig library.

- **macOS**
  - macOS 10.13 or newer

RaptorXML is available for both 32-bit and 64-bit machines. Specifically these are x86 and amd64 (x86-64) instruction-set based cores: Intel Core i5, i7, XEON E5. To use RaptorXML via a COM interface, users should have privileges to use the COM interface, that is, to register the application and execute the relevant applications and/or scripts.
2.3 Features

RaptorXML provides the functionality listed below. Most functionality is common to command line usage and COM interface usage. One major difference is that COM interface usage on Windows allows documents to be constructed from text strings via the application or scripting code (instead of referencing XML, DTD, XML Schema, XSLT, or XQuery files).

XML Validation

- Validates the supplied XML document against internal or external DTDs or XML Schemas
- Checks well-formedness of XML, DTD, XML Schema, XSLT, and XQuery documents

XSLT Transformations

- Transforms XML using supplied XSLT 1.0, 2.0, or 3.0 document
- XML and XSLT documents can be provided as a file (via a URL) or, in the case of COM usage, as a text string
- Output is returned as a file (at a named location) or, in the case of COM usage, as a text string
- XSLT parameters can be supplied via the command line and via the COM interface
- Altova extension functions, as well as XBRL, Java and .NET extension functions, enable specialized processing. This allows, for example, the creation of such features as charts and barcode in output documents

XQuery Execution

- Executes XQuery 1.0 and 3.0 documents
- XQuery and XML documents can be provided as a file (via a URL) or, in the case of COM usage, as a text string
- Output is returned as a file (at a named location) or, in the case of COM usage, as a text string
- External XQuery variables can be supplied via the command line and via the COM interface
- Serialization options include: output encoding, output method (that is, whether the output is XML, XHTML, HTML, or text), omitting the XML declaration, and indentation

JSON and Avro Validation/Conversion

- Validation of JSON schema and Avro schema documents
- Validation of JSON instances against JSON schemas and Avro schemas
- Validation of Avro binaries
- Conversion of Avro binaries to Avro schema and Avro data in JSON format
- Conversion of Avro JSON data to Avro binary

Hyper-performance Features

- Ultra-high performance code optimizations
  - Native instruction-set implementations
  - 32-bit or 64-bit version
• Ultra-low memory footprint
  o Extremely compact in-memory representation of XML Information Set
  o Streaming instance validation
• Cross platform capabilities
• Highly scalable code for multi-CPU/multi-core/parallel computing
• Parallel loading, validation, and processing by design

Developer Features

• Superior error reporting capabilities
• Windows server mode and Unix daemon mode (via command-line options)
• Python 3.x interpreter for scripting included
• RaptorXML functionality in a Python package enables import of the functionality as a Python library
• .NET Framework API allows access to underlying XML data model
• COM API on Windows platform
• Java API everywhere
• XPath Extension functions Java, .NET, and more
• Streaming serialization
• Built-in HTTP server with REST validation API

For more information, see the section Supported Specifications and the Altova website.
2.4 Supported Specifications

RaptorXML supports the following specifications.

W3C Recommendations
Website: World Wide Web Consortium (W3C)

- Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0 (Fifth Edition)
- Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.1 (Second Edition)
- Namespaces in XML 1.0 (Third Edition)
- Namespaces in XML 1.1 (Second Edition)
- XML Information Set (Second Edition)
- XML Base (Second Edition)
- XML Inclusions (XInclude) Version 1.0 (Second Edition)
- XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0
- W3C XML Schema Definition Language (XSD) 1.1 Part 1: Structures
- W3C XML Schema Definition Language (XSD) 1.1 Part 2: Datatypes
- XPointer Framework
- XPointer xmlns() Scheme
- XPointer element() Scheme
- XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0
- XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 1.0
- XML Path Language (XPath) 2.0 (Second Edition)
- XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 2.0
- XQuery 1.0: An XML Query Language (Second Edition)
- XQuery 1.0 and XPath 2.0 Functions and Operators (Second Edition)
- XSLT 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Serialization (Second Edition)
- XML Path Language (XPath) 3.0
- XML Path Language (XPath) 3.1
- XQuery 3.0: An XML Query Language
- XQuery Update Facility 1.0
- XPath and XQuery Functions and Operators 3.0
- XSLT and XQuery Serialization 3.0

W3C Working Drafts & Candidate Recommendations
Website: World Wide Web Consortium (W3C)

- XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 3.0 (subset)
- XQuery 3.1: An XML Query Language
- XPath and XQuery Functions and Operators 3.1
- XQuery Update Facility 3.0
- XSLT and XQuery Serialization 3.1

OASIS Standards
Website: OASIS Standards
- XML Catalogs V 1.1 - OASIS Standard V1.1

**JSON/Avro Standards**

Websites: [JSON Schema](#) and [Apache Avro](#)

- JSON Schema Draft 4
- JSON Schema Draft 6
- JSON Schema Draft 7
- [Apache Avro™ 1.8.1](#)
3 Setting Up RaptorXML

This section describes procedures for setting up RaptorXML Server. It describes the following:

- Information about processor cores and licenses.
- Installation and licensing of RaptorXML on Windows, on Linux, and on macOS systems.
- How to use XML Catalogs.
- How to work with Altova global resources.
- Security issues related to RaptorXML.

RaptorXML has special options that support XML Catalogs and Altova global resources, both of which enhance portability and modularity. You can therefore leverage the use of these features in your environment to considerable advantage.

Note: Security concerns and how to set up important security solutions are described in the section Security Issues.
3.1 Processor Cores and Licenses

The licensing of Altova server products is based on the number of physical processor cores available on the product machine (as opposed to the number of logical cores). For example, a dual-core processor has two cores, a quad-core processor four cores, a hexa-core processor six cores, and so on. The number of cores licensed for a product must be greater than or equal to the number of cores available on that server machine, whether the server is a physical or virtual machine. For example, if a server has eight cores, you must purchase an 8-core license. You can also combine licenses to achieve the core count. So, two 4-core licenses can be used for an eight-core server instead of one 8-core license.

If you are using a computer server with a large number of CPU cores but only have a low volume to process, you may also create a virtual machine that is allocated a smaller number of cores, and purchase a license for that number. Such a deployment, of course, will have less processing speed than if all available cores of the computer were utilized.

Note: Each Altova server product license can be used for only one client machine at a time—the machine on which the Altova server product is installed—even if the license has unused licensing capacity. For example, if a 10-core license is used for a client machine that has 6 CPU cores, then the remaining 4 cores of licensing capacity cannot be used simultaneously for another client machine.

Single-thread execution

If an Altova server product allows single-thread execution, an option for Single-thread execution will be available. In these cases, if an Altova server-product license for only one core is available in the license pool, a machine with multiple cores can be assigned this one-core license. In such a case, the machine will run that product on a single core. Processing will therefore be slower, because multi-threading (which is possible on multiple cores) will not be available. The product will be executed in single thread mode on that machine.

To assign a single-core license to a multiple-core machine, in LicenseServer, select the Limit to single thread execution check box for that product.

Estimate of core requirements

There are various external factors that influence the data volumes and processing times your server can handle (for example: the hardware, the current load on the CPU, and memory allocation of other applications running on the server). In order to measure performance as accurately as possible, test the applications in your environment with data volumes and in conditions that approximate as closely as possible to real business situations.
3.2 Setup on Windows

This section describes the installation and licensing of RaptorXML Server on Windows systems.

**Installation on Windows**
- System requirements
- Installing RaptorXML Server
- Altova LicenseServer
- LicenseServer versions
- Trial license
- Application folder location

**Licensing on Windows**
- Start ServiceController
- Start LicenseServer
- Start RaptorXML Server
- Register RaptorXML Server
- Assign a license

**Note:** From version 2021 onwards, a 32-bit version of RaptorXML Server cannot be installed over a 64-bit version, or a 64-bit version over a 32-bit version. You must either (i) remove the older version before installing the newer version, or (ii) upgrade to a newer version that is the same bit version as your older installation.

### 3.2.1 Installation on Windows

RaptorXML Server is available for installation on Windows systems. Its installation and setup procedure is described below.

#### System requirements

- **Windows**
  - Windows 7 SP1 with Platform Update, Windows 8, Windows 10

- **Windows Server**
  - Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1 with Platform Update or newer

#### Installing RaptorXML Server

RaptorXML Server can be installed on Windows systems as follows:

- As a separate standalone server product called RaptorXML Server. To install RaptorXML Server, download and run the RaptorXML Server installer. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- As part of the FlowForce Server installation package. To install RaptorXML Server as part of the FlowForce Server package, download and run the FlowForce Server installer. Follow the on-screen instructions and make sure you check the option for installing RaptorXML Server.
The installers of both RaptorXML Server and FlowForce Server are available at the Altova Download Center (http://www.altova.com/download.html).

After installation, the RaptorXML Server executable will be located by default at:

\<ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin\RaptorXML.exe

All the necessary registrations to use RaptorXML Server via a COM interface, as a Java interface, and in the .NET environment will be done by the installer. This includes registering the RaptorXML Server executable as a COM server object and adding the Altova.RaptorXML.dll file to the .NET reference library.

**Installation on Windows Server Core**

Windows Server Core is a minimal Windows installation that does not use a number of GUI features. You can install RaptorXML Server on a Windows Server Core machine as follows:

1. Download the RaptorXML Server installer executable from the Altova website. This file is named RaptorXMLServer<version>.exe. Make sure to choose the executable matching your server platform (32-bit or 64-bit).
2. On a standard Windows machine (not the Windows Server Core machine), run the command RaptorXMLServer<version>.exe /u. This unpacks the .msi file to the same folder as the installer executable.
3. Copy the unpacked .msi file to the Windows Server Core machine.
4. If you are updating an earlier version of RaptorXML Server, shut down RaptorXML Server before carrying out the next step.
5. Use the .msi file for the installation by running the command msiexec /i RaptorXMLServer.msi. This starts the installation on Windows Server Core.

Keep the .msi file/s in a safe place. You will need them later to uninstall, repair or modify your installation/s.

To test the return value of the installation, run a script similar to the following. The return code will be in the %errorlevel% environment variable. A return code of 0 indicates success.

```
start /wait msiexec /i RaptorXMLServer.msi /q
echo %errorlevel%
```

For a silent installation with a return code and a log of the installation process, run:

```
start /wait msiexec /i RaptorXMLServer.msi /q /L*v! <pathToInstallLogFile>
```

To modify the installation, run:

```
msiexec /m RaptorXMLServer.msi
```

To repair the installation, run:

```
msiexec /r RaptorXMLServer.msi
```

To uninstall RaptorXML Server, run:

```
msiexec /x RaptorXMLServer.msi
```

To uninstall RaptorXML Server silently and report the detailed outcome in a log file:

```
start /wait msiexec /x RaptorXMLServer.msi /q /L*v! <pathToUninstallLogFile>
```
Note: On Windows Server Core, the charts functionality of RaptorXML Server will not be available.

Altova LicenseServer

- In order for RaptorXML Server to work, it must be licensed via an Altova LicenseServer on your network.
- When you install RaptorXML Server or FlowForce Server on Windows systems, an option is available that allows you to download and install Altova LicenseServer together with RaptorXML Server or FlowForce Server.
- If an Altova LicenseServer is already installed on your network, you do not need to install another one—unless a newer version of Altova LicenseServer is required. (See next point, LicenseServer versions.)
- During the installation process of RaptorXML Server or FlowForce Server, check or uncheck the option for installing Altova LicenseServer as appropriate. Note the following points:
  a. If you haven't installed Altova LicenseServer yet, leave the default settings as is. The wizard will install the latest version of Altova LicenseServer on the computer where you are running the wizard.
  b. If you haven't installed Altova LicenseServer yet and want to install Altova LicenseServer on another computer, clear the Install Altova LicenseServer on this machine check box, and then choose Register Later. In this case, you will need to install Altova LicenseServer and register RaptorXML Server separately.
  c. If Altova LicenseServer has already been installed on your computer but it has a lower version than the one indicated by the installation wizard, leave the default settings as is. In this case, the installation wizard will automatically upgrade your LicenseServer version with the one indicated on the dialog box. Note that the existing registration and licensing information will be preserved after the upgrade.
  d. If Altova LicenseServer has already been installed on your computer or network, and if it has the same version as the one indicated by the wizard, do the following:
     i. Clear the Install Altova LicenseServer on this machine check box.
     ii. Under Register this product with, choose the Altova LicenseServer instance on which you want to register RaptorXML Server, or choose Register later. Note that you can always select Register Later if you want to ignore the LicenseServer associations and carry on with the installation of RaptorXML Server.

See the section, Licensing on Windows, for more information about how to register and license RaptorXML Server with Altova LicenseServer.

LicenseServer versions

- Altova server products must be licensed either with the version of LicenseServer that is appropriate to the installed RaptorXML Server version, or with a later version of LicenseServer.
- The LicenseServer version that is appropriate for a particular version of RaptorXML Server is displayed during the installation of RaptorXML Server. You can install this version of LicenseServer along with RaptorXML Server, or you can install LicenseServer separately.
- Before installing a newer version of LicenseServer, any older one must be de-installed. The LicenseServer installer will do this automatically if it detects an older version.
- LicenseServer versions are backwards compatible. They will work with older versions of RaptorXML Server.
- If you install a new version of RaptorXML Server and if your installed LicenseServer version is older...
than the appropriate LicenseServer, install the latest version available on the Altova website.

- At the time of LicenseServer de-installation, all registration and licensing information held in the older version of LicenseServer will be saved to a database on your server machine. This data will be imported automatically into the newer version when the newer version is installed.
- The version number of the currently installed LicenseServer is given at the bottom of the LicenseServer configuration page (all tabs).

**Current version: 3.6**

**Trial license**

During the installation process, you will be given the option of requesting a 30-day trial license for RaptorXML Server. After submitting the request, a trial license will be sent to the email address you registered.

**Application folder location**

The application will be installed in the following folder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Windows 7, 8, 10</th>
<th>C:\Program Files\Altova\</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32 bit Version on 64-bit OS</td>
<td>C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.2.2 Licensing on Windows

RaptorXML Server must be licensed with Altova LicenseServer. Licensing is a two-step process:

1. **Register RaptorXML Server** with LicenseServer. Registration is done from RaptorXML Server.
2. **Assign a license** to RaptorXML Server from LicenseServer. Download the latest version of LicenseServer from the Altova website, and install it on your local machine or a machine on your network.

The steps to carry out are given below in brief. For detailed information, see the [LicenseServer user manual](#) at the Altova website.

**Start ServiceController**

Altova ServiceController is started in order to start Altova LicenseServer and Altova RaptorXML Server.

Altova ServiceController (ServiceController for short) is an application for conveniently starting, stopping and configuring Altova services **on Windows systems**.

ServiceController is installed with Altova LicenseServer and with Altova server products that are installed as services (FlowForce Server, RaptorXML(+XBRL) Server, and Mobile Together Server). It can be started by clicking **Start | Altova LicenseServer | Altova ServiceController**. (This command is also available in the Start menu folders of Altova server products that are installed as services (FlowForce Server, RaptorXML(+XBRL) Server, and Mobile Together Server).) After ServiceController has been started, it can
be accessed via the system tray (screenshot below).

To specify that ServiceController starts automatically on logging into the system, click the ServiceController icon in the system tray to display the ServiceController menu (screenshot below), and then toggle on the command Run Altova ServiceController at Startup. (This command is toggled on by default.) To exit ServiceController, click the ServiceController icon in the system tray and, in the menu that appears (see screenshot below), click Exit Altova ServiceController.

Start LicenseServer

To start LicenseServer, click the ServiceController icon in the system tray, hover over Altova LicenseServer in the menu that pops up (see screenshot below), and then select Start Service from the LicenseServer submenu. If LicenseServer is already running, the Start Service option will be disabled.

Start RaptorXML Server

To start RaptorXML Server, click the ServiceController icon in the system tray, hover over Altova RaptorXML Server in the menu that pops up (see screenshot below), and then select Start Service
from the RaptorXML Server submenu. If RaptorXML Server is already running, the Start Service option will be disabled.

Note: If RaptorXML Server has been licensed to run only single-thread executions (typically because your machine is multiple-core, but your license is single-core), then you can use only one instance of RaptorXML Server at a time: either as a service or from the command line. This is because the single-core license will be assigned automatically to the first instance that is started and is currently running; a second instance cannot be started till the first instance stops running.

- If you wish to use RaptorXML Server from the command line but the service is already running, then you must stop the service before using the command line.
- If you wish to start RaptorXML Server as a service, make sure that no command line action is currently being executed. Otherwise, you will not be able to start the service.

Register RaptorXML Server

To register RaptorXML Server from the command line interface, use the licenseserver command:

```
RaptorXML licenseserver [options] ServerName-Or-IP-Address
```

For example, if localhost is the name of the server on which LicenseServer is installed:

```
RaptorXML licenseserver localhost
```

If RaptorXML Server was installed as part of a FlowForce Server installation, registering FlowForce Server with LicenseServer will automatically also register RaptorXML Server. Essentially: (i) Start Altova FlowForce Web as a service via ServiceController (see previous point); (ii) Enter your password to access the Setup page; (iii) Select the LicenseServer name or address and click Register with LicenseServer. For more information, see Register FlowForce Server.

After successful registration, go to the Client Management tab of LicenseServer's configuration page to assign a license to RaptorXML Server.

Assign a license

After successfully registering RaptorXML Server, it will be listed in the Client Management tab of the configuration page of LicenseServer. Go there and assign a license to RaptorXML Server.

The licensing of Altova server products is based on the number of processor cores available on the product machine. For example, a dual-core processor has two cores, a quad-core processor four cores, a hexa-
core processor six cores, and so on. The number of cores licensed for a product must be greater than or equal to the number of cores available on that server machine, whether the server is a physical or virtual machine. For example, if a server has eight cores (an octa-core processor), you must purchase at least one 8-core license. You can also combine licenses to achieve the core count. So, two 4-core licenses can also be used for an octa-core server instead of one 8-core license.

If you are using a computer server with a large number of CPU cores but only have a low volume to process, you may also create a virtual machine that is allocated a smaller number of cores, and purchase a license for that number. Such a deployment, of course, will have less processing speed than if all available cores on the server were utilized.

**Note:** Each Altova server product license can be used for only one client machine—the machine on which the Altova server product is installed—at a time, even if the license has unused licensing capacity. For example, if a 10-core license is used for a client machine that has 6 CPU cores, then the remaining 4 cores of licensing capacity cannot be used simultaneously for another client machine.
3.3 Setup on Linux

This section describes the installation and licensing of RaptorXML Server on Linux systems (Debian, Ubuntu, CentOS, RedHat).

Installation on Linux

- System requirements
- Note about root user
- Uninstall old versions of Altova server products
- Download the Linux package
- Install RaptorXML Server
- Altova LicenseServer
- LicenseServer versions

Licensing on Linux

- Note about root user
- Start LicenseServer
- Start RaptorXML Server
- Register RaptorXML Server
- Assign a license

3.3.1 Installation on Linux

RaptorXML Server is available for installation on Linux systems. Its installation and setup procedure is described below.

- System requirements
  - Linux
    - CentOS 7 or newer
    - RedHat 7 or newer
    - Debian 8 or newer
    - Ubuntu 16.04 LTS or newer

The following libraries are required as a prerequisite to install and run the application. If the packages below are not already available on your Linux machine, run the command `yum` (or `apt-get` if applicable) to install them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required by</th>
<th>CentOS, RedHat</th>
<th>Debian</th>
<th>Ubuntu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LicenseServer</td>
<td>krb5-libs</td>
<td>libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
<td>libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RaptorXML Server</td>
<td>qt5-qtbase-gui, krb5-libs</td>
<td>libqt5gui5, libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
<td>libqt5gui5, libgssapi-krb5-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: If you plan to use Altova's Charts functionality, then at least one font must be installed on your system to ensure that charts will be rendered correctly. To list installed fonts, use, for example, the `fc-list` command of the Fontconfig library.
FlowForce Server integration

If you are installing RaptorXML Server together with FlowForce Server, it is recommended that you install FlowForce Server first. Otherwise, after having installed both RaptorXML Server and FlowForce Server, run the following command:

```
cp /opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/*.tool /opt/Altova/FlowForceServer2021/tools
```  

This command copies the .tool file from /etc directory of RaptorXML Server to the FlowForce Server /tools directory. The .tool file is required by FlowForce Server; it contains the path to the RaptorXML Server executable. You do not need to run this command if you install FlowForce Server before installing RaptorXML Server.

Note about root user

You must have administrator (root) privileges to be able to install RaptorXML Server. Installation must be done, therefore, as the root user. If you are logged in as root, you can leave out the sudo keyword from the commands listed below.

Uninstall old versions of Altova server products

If you need to uninstall a previous version, do this as follows. On the Linux command line interface (CLI), you can check which Altova server products are installed with the following command:

- [Debian, Ubuntu]: `dpkg --list | grep Altova`
- [CentOS, RedHat]: `rpm -qa | grep server`

If RaptorXML Server is not installed, go ahead with the installation as documented below in Installing RaptorXML Server.

If RaptorXML Server is installed and you wish to install a newer version of RaptorXML Server, uninstall the old version with the command:

- [Debian, Ubuntu]: `sudo dpkg --remove raptorxmlserver`
- [CentOS, RedHat]: `sudo rpm -e raptorxmlserver`

If you need to uninstall an old version of Altova LicenseServer, do this with the following command:

- [Debian, Ubuntu]: `sudo dpkg --remove licenseserver`
- [CentOS, RedHat]: `sudo rpm -e licenseserver`

On Debian and Ubuntu systems, it might happen that RaptorXML Server still appears in the list of installed products after it has been installed. In this case, run the purge command to clear RaptorXML Server from the list. You can also use the purge command instead of the remove command listed above.

```
sudo dpkg --purge raptorxmlserver
```

Download the Linux package

RaptorXML Server installation packages for the following Linux systems are available at the Altova website.
After downloading the Linux package, copy it to any directory on the Linux system. Since you will need an Altova LicenseServer in order to run RaptorXML Server, you may want to download LicenseServer from the Altova website at the same time as you download RaptorXML Server, rather than download it at a later time.

### Install RaptorXML Server

In a terminal window, switch to the directory where you have copied the Linux package. For example, if you copied it to a user directory called `MyAltova` (that is located, say, in the `/home/User` directory), then switch to this directory as follows:

```bash
cd /home/User/MyAltova
```

Install RaptorXML Server with the following command:

- **Debian**: `sudo dpkg --install raptorxmlserver-2021-debian.deb`
- **Ubuntu**: `sudo dpkg --install raptorxmlserver-2021-ubuntu.deb`
- **CentOS**: `sudo rpm -ivh raptorxmlserver-2021-1.x86_64.rpm`
- **RedHat**: `sudo rpm -ivh raptorxmlserver-2021-1.x86_64.rpm`

The RaptorXML Server package will be installed in the folder:

```
/opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021
```

### Altova LicenseServer

In order for any Altova Server product—including RaptorXML Server—to run, that server product must be licensed via an Altova LicenseServer on your network.

On Linux systems, Altova LicenseServer will need to be installed separately. Download LicenseServer from the Altova website and copy the package to any directory on the Linux system. Install it just like you installed RaptorXML Server (see previous step).

- **Debian**: `sudo dpkg --install licenseserver-3.6-debian.deb`
- **Ubuntu**: `sudo dpkg --install licenseserver-3.6-ubuntu.deb`
- **CentOS**: `sudo rpm -ivh licenseserver-3.6-1.x86_64.rpm`
- **RedHat**: `sudo rpm -ivh licenseserver-3.6-1.x86_64.rpm`

The LicenseServer package will be installed in:

```
/opt/Altova/LicenseServer
```

For information about how to register RaptorXML Server with Altova LicenseServer and license it, see the section, Licensing on Linux. Also see the LicenseServer documentation for more detailed information.
3.3.2 Licensing on Linux

RaptorXML Server must be licensed with Altova LicenseServer. Licensing is a two-step process:

1. **Register RaptorXML Server** with LicenseServer. Registration is done from RaptorXML Server.
2. **Assign a license** to RaptorXML Server from LicenseServer. Download the latest version of LicenseServer from the [Altova website](https://www.altova.com), and install it on your local machine or a machine on your network.

The steps to carry out are given below in brief. For detailed information, see the LicenseServer user manual at the [Altova website](https://www.altova.com).

**Note about root user**

You must have administrator (root) privileges to be able to install RaptorXML Server. Installation must be done, therefore, as the root user. If you are logged in as root, you can leave out the `sudo` keyword from the commands listed below.

**Start LicenseServer**

To correctly register and license RaptorXML Server with LicenseServer, LicenseServer must be running as a daemon on the network. Start LicenseServer as a daemon with the following command:

```
[< Debian 8] sudo /etc/init.d/licenseserver start
[≥ Debian 8] sudo systemctl start licenseserver
```
Setting Up RaptorXML Setup on Linux

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[CentOS 7]</th>
<th>sudo initctl start licenseserver</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[≥ CentOS 7]</td>
<td>sudo systemctl start licenseserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[&lt; Ubuntu 15]</td>
<td>sudo initctl start licenseserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[≥ Ubuntu 15]</td>
<td>sudo systemctl start licenseserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[RedHat]</td>
<td>sudo initctl start licenseserver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If at any time you need to stop LicenseServer, replace `start` with `stop` in the above commands. For example:

```
sudo /etc/init.d/licenseserver stop
```

**Start RaptorXML Server**

Start RaptorXML Server as a daemon with the following command:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[&lt; Debian 8]</th>
<th>sudo /etc/init.d/raptorxmlserver start</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[≥ Debian 8]</td>
<td>sudo systemctl start raptorxmlserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[&lt; CentOS 7]</td>
<td>sudo initctl start raptorxmlserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[≥ CentOS 7]</td>
<td>sudo systemctl start raptorxmlserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[&lt; Ubuntu 15]</td>
<td>sudo initctl start raptorxmlserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[≥ Ubuntu 15]</td>
<td>sudo systemctl start raptorxmlserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[RedHat]</td>
<td>sudo initctl start raptorxmlserver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Register RaptorXML Server**

To register RaptorXML Server from the command line interface, use the `licenseserver` command:

```
sudo /opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/raptorxml licenseserver [options]
ServerName-Or-IP-Address
```

For example, if `localhost` is the name of the server on which LicenseServer is installed:

```
sudo /opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/raptorxml licenseserver localhost
```

In the command above, `localhost` is the name of the server on which LicenseServer is installed. Notice also that the location of the RaptorXML Server executable is:

```
/opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/
```

After successful registration, go to the Client Management tab of LicenseServer's configuration page to assign a license to RaptorXML Server.

**Assign a license**

After successfully registering RaptorXML Server, it will be listed in the Client Management tab of the configuration page of LicenseServer. Go there and assign a license to RaptorXML Server.
The licensing of Altova server products is based on the number of processor cores available on the product machine. For example, a dual-core processor has two cores, a quad-core processor four cores, a hexa-core processor six cores, and so on. The number of cores licensed for a product must be greater than or equal to the number of cores available on that server machine, whether the server is a physical or virtual machine. For example, if a server has eight cores (an octa-core processor), you must purchase at least one 8-core license. You can also combine licenses to achieve the core count. So, two 4-core licenses can also be used for an octa-core server instead of one 8-core license.

If you are using a computer server with a large number of CPU cores but only have a low volume to process, you may also create a virtual machine that is allocated a smaller number of cores, and purchase a license for that number. Such a deployment, of course, will have less processing speed than if all available cores on the server were utilized.

**Note:** Each Altova server product license can be used for only one client machine—the machine on which the Altova server product is installed—at a time, even if the license has unused licensing capacity. For example, if a 10-core license is used for a client machine that has 6 CPU cores, then the remaining 4 cores of licensing capacity cannot be used simultaneously for another client machine.
3.4 Setup on macOS

This section describes the installation and licensing of RaptorXML Server on macOS systems.

### Installation on macOS

- System requirements
- Note about root user
- Uninstall old versions of Altova server products
- Download the macOS package
- Install RaptorXML Server
- Altova LicenseServer
- LicenseServer versions

### Licensing on macOS

- Note about root user
- Start LicenseServer
- Start RaptorXML Server
- Register RaptorXML Server
- Assign a license

3.4.1 Installation on macOS

RaptorXML Server is available for installation on macOS systems. Its installation and setup procedure is described below.

#### System requirements

- macOS 10.13 or newer

#### FlowForce Server integration

If you install RaptorXML Server together with FlowForce Server, it is recommended that you install FlowForce Server first. If you install RaptorXML Server before FlowForce Server, then, after having installed both RaptorXML Server and FlowForce Server, run the following command:

```
cp /usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/*.tool /usr/local/Altova/FlowForceServer2021/tools
```

This command copies the `.tool` file from `/etc` directory of RaptorXML Server to the FlowForce Server `/tools` directory. The `.tool` file is required by FlowForce Server; it contains the path to the RaptorXML Server executable. You do not need to run this command if you install FlowForce Server before installing RaptorXML Server.

#### Note about root user
You must have administrator (root) privileges to be able to install RaptorXML Server. Installation must be done, therefore, as the root user. If you are logged in as root, you can leave out the sudo keyword from the commands listed below.

#### Uninstall old versions of Altova server products
Before uninstalling RaptorXML Server, stop the service with the following command:

```
sudo launchctl unload /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.RaptorXMLServer2021.plist
```

To check whether the service has been stopped, open the Activity Monitor in Finder and make sure that RaptorXML Server is not in the list. In the Applications folder in Finder, right-click the RaptorXML Server icon and select **Move to Trash**. The application will be moved to Trash. You will, however, still need to remove the application from the `usr` folder. Do this with the command:

```
sudo rm -rf /usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/
```

If you need to uninstall an old version of Altova LicenseServer, you must first stop it running as a service. Do this with the following command:

```
sudo launchctl unload /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.LicenseServer.plist
```

To check whether the service has been stopped, open the Activity Monitor in Finder and make sure that LicenseServer is not in the list. Then proceed to uninstall in the same way as described above for RaptorXML Server.

#### Download the disk image file
Download the disk image (.dmg) file from the Altova website ([http://www.altova.com/download.html](http://www.altova.com/download.html)).

#### Install RaptorXML Server
Click to open the downloaded disk image (.dmg). This causes the RaptorXML Server installer to appear as a new virtual drive on your computer. On the new virtual drive, double-click the installer package (.pkg). Go through the successive steps of the installer wizard. These are self-explanatory and include one step in which you have to agree to the license agreement before being able to proceed. To eject the drive after installation, right-click it and select **Eject**.

The RaptorXML Server package will be installed in the folder:

- `/usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021` (application binaries)
- `/var/Altova/RaptorXMLServer` (data files: database and logs)

RaptorXML Server server daemon starts automatically after installation and a re-boot of the machine. You can start RaptorXML Server as a daemon with the following command:

```
sudo launchctl load /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.RaptorXMLServer2021.plist
```

#### Altova LicenseServer
In order for any Altova Server product—including RaptorXML Server—to run, that server product must be licensed via an Altova LicenseServer on your network.
The Altova LicenseServer installation package is available on the virtual drive you have mounted in the previous step. To install Altova LicenseServer, double-click the installer package included on the virtual drive and follow the on-screen instructions. You will need to accept the license agreement for installation to proceed.

Altova LicenseServer can also be downloaded and installed separately from the Altova website (http://www.altova.com/download.html).

The LicenseServer package will be installed in the folder:

```
/usr/local/Altova/LicenseServer
```

For information about how to register RaptorXML Server with Altova LicenseServer and license it, see the section, Licensing on macOS.

## LicenseServer versions

- Altova server products must be licensed either with the version of LicenseServer that is appropriate to the installed RaptorXML Server version, or with a later version of LicenseServer.
- The LicenseServer version that is appropriate for a particular version of RaptorXML Server is displayed during the installation of RaptorXML Server. You can install this version of LicenseServer along with RaptorXML Server, or you can install LicenseServer separately.
- Before installing a newer version of LicenseServer, any older one must be de-installed. The LicenseServer installer will do this automatically if it detects an older version.
- LicenseServer versions are backwards compatible. They will work with older versions of RaptorXML Server.
- If you install a new version of RaptorXML Server and if your installed LicenseServer version is older than the appropriate LicenseServer, install the latest version available on the Altova website.
- At the time of LicenseServer de-installation, all registration and licensing information held in the older version of LicenseServer will be saved to a database on your server machine. This data will be imported automatically into the newer version when the newer version is installed.
- The version number of the currently installed LicenseServer is given at the bottom of the LicenseServer configuration page (all tabs).

Current version: 3.6

### 3.4.2 Licensing on macOS

RaptorXML Server must be licensed with Altova LicenseServer. Licensing is a two-step process:

1. **Register RaptorXML Server** with LicenseServer. Registration is done from RaptorXML Server.
2. **Assign a license** to RaptorXML Server from LicenseServer. Download the latest version of LicenseServer from the Altova website, and install it on your local machine or a machine on your network.

The steps to carry out are given below in brief. For detailed information, see the LicenseServer user manual at the Altova website.
Note about root user

You must have administrator (root) privileges to be able to install RaptorXML Server. Installation must be
done, therefore, as the root user. If you are logged in as root, you can leave out the sudo keyword from
the commands listed below.

Start LicenseServer

To correctly register and license RaptorXML Server with LicenseServer, LicenseServer must be running as
a daemon. Start LicenseServer as a daemon with the following command:

```
sudo launchctl load /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.LicenseServer.plist
```

If at any time you need to stop LicenseServer, replace load with unload in the above command:
```
sudo launchctl unload /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.LicenseServer.plist
```

Start RaptorXML Server

RaptorXML Server server daemon starts automatically after installation and a re-boot of the machine. You
can start RaptorXML Server as a daemon with the following command:

```
sudo launchctl load /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.RaptorXMLServer2021.plist
```

If at any time you need to stop RaptorXML Server, use:
```
sudo launchctl unload /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.RaptorXMLServer2021.plist
```

Register RaptorXML Server

To register RaptorXML Server from the command line interface, use the licenseserver command:

```
sudo /usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/RaptorXML licenseserver [options] ServerName-Or-IP-Address
```

For example, if localhost is the name of the server on which LicenseServer is installed:
```
sudo /usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/RaptorXML licenseserver localhost
```

In the command above, localhost is the name of the server on which LicenseServer is installed. Notice
also that the location of the RaptorXML Server executable is:

```
/usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/
```

After successful registration, go to the Client Management tab of LicenseServer's configuration page to
assign a license to RaptorXML Server.

Assign a license

After successfully registering RaptorXML Server, it will be listed in the Client Management tab of the
configuration page of LicenseServer. Go there and assign a license to RaptorXML Server.

The licensing of Altova server products is based on the number of processor cores available on the product
machine. For example, a dual-core processor has two cores, a quad-core processor four cores, a hexa-
core processor six cores, and so on. The number of cores licensed for a product must be greater than or
equal to the number of cores available on that server machine, whether the server is a physical or virtual
machine. For example, if a server has eight cores (an octa-core processor), you must purchase at least
one 8-core license. You can also combine licenses to achieve the core count. So, two 4-core licenses can also be used for an octa-core server instead of one 8-core license.

If you are using a computer server with a large number of CPU cores but only have a low volume to process, you may also create a virtual machine that is allocated a smaller number of cores, and purchase a license for that number. Such a deployment, of course, will have less processing speed than if all available cores on the server were utilized.

**Note:** Each Altova server product license can be used for only one client machine—the machine on which the Altova server product is installed—at a time, even if the license has unused licensing capacity. For example, if a 10-core license is used for a client machine that has 6 CPU cores, then the remaining 4 cores of licensing capacity cannot be used simultaneously for another client machine.
3.5 XML Catalogs

The XML catalog mechanism enables files to be retrieved from local folders, thus increasing the overall processing speed, as well as improving the portability of documents—since only the catalog file URIs then need to be changed. See the section How Catalogs Work for details.

Altova’s XML products use a catalog mechanism to quickly access and load commonly used files, such as DTDs and XML Schemas. This catalog mechanism can be customized and extended by the user, and it is described in the sections Catalog Structure in RaptorXML Server and Customizing your Catalogs. The section Variables for System Locations list Windows variables for common system locations. These variables can be used in catalog files to locate commonly used folders.

This section is organized into the following sub-sections:

- How Catalogs Work
- Catalog Structure in RaptorXML Server
- Customizing your Catalogs
- Variables for Windows System Locations

For more information on catalogs, see the XML Catalogs specification.

3.5.1 How Catalogs Work

Catalogs can be used to redirect both DTDs and XML Schemas. While the concept behind the mechanisms of both cases is the same, the details are different and are explained below.

**DTDs**

Catalogs are commonly used to redirect a call to a DTD to a local URI. This is achieved by mapping, in the catalog file, public or system identifiers to the required local URI. So when the `DOCTYPE` declaration in an XML file is read, its public or system identifier locates the required local resource via the catalog file mapping.

For popular schemas, the `PUBLIC` identifier is usually pre-defined, thus requiring only that the URI in the catalog file map the `PUBLIC` identifier to the correct local copy. When the XML document is parsed, the `PUBLIC` identifier in it is read. If this identifier is found in a catalog file, then the corresponding URL in the catalog file will be looked up and the schema will be read from this location. So, for example, if the following SVG file is opened in RaptorXML Server:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" standalone="no"?>
<!DOCTYPE svg PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD SVG 1.1//EN" "http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/1.1/DTD/svg11.dtd">
<svg width="20" height="20" xmlns:space="preserve">
  <g style="fill:red; stroke:#000000">
    <rect x="0" y="0" width="15" height="15"/>
    <rect x="5" y="5" width="15" height="15"/>
  </g>
</svg>
```

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
The catalog is searched for the PUBLIC identifier of this SVG file. Let’s say the catalog file contains the following entry:

```xml
<catalog>
  ...
  <public publicId="-//W3C//DTD SVG 1.1//EN"
    uri="schemas/svg/svg11.dtd"/>
  ...
</catalog>
```

In this case, there is a match for the PUBLIC identifier. As a result, the lookup for the SVG DTD is redirected to the URL `schemas/svg/svg11.dtd` (which is relative to the catalog file). This is a local file that will be used as the DTD for the SVG file. If there is no mapping for the Public ID in the catalog, then the URL in the XML document will be used (in the SVG file example above, this is the Internet URL: http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/1.1/DTD/svg11.dtd).

### XML Schemas

In RaptorXML Server, you can also use catalogs with **XML Schemas**. In the XML instance file, the reference to the schema will occur in the `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute of the XML document's top-level element. For example,

```xml
xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.xmlspy.com/schemas/orgchart OrgChart.xsd"
```

The value of the `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute has two parts: a namespace part (green above) and a URI part (highlighted). The namespace part is used in the catalog to map to the alternative resource. For example, the following catalog entry redirects the schema reference above to a schema at an alternative location.

```xml
<uri name="http://www.xmlspy.com/schemas/orgchart"
    uri="C:\MySchemas\OrgChart.xsd"/>
```

Normally, the URI part of the `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute's value is a path to the actual schema location. However, if the schema is referenced via a catalog, the URI part need not point to an actual XML Schema but must exist so that the lexical validity of the `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute is maintained. A value of `foo`, for example, would be sufficient for the URI part of the attribute's value to be valid.

### 3.5.2 Catalog Structure in RaptorXML Server

When RaptorXML Server starts, it loads a file called `RootCatalog.xml` (structure shown in listing below), which contains a list of catalog files that will be looked up. You can modify this file and enter as many catalog files to look up as you like, each of which is referenced in a `nextCatalog` element. These catalog files are looked up and the URIs in them are resolved according to their mappings.

Listing of RootCatalog.xml

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog"
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xsi:schemaLocation="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog Catalog.xsd">
  <nextCatalog catalog="%PersonalFolder%/Altova/%AppAndVersionName%/CustomCatalog.xml"/>
  <!-- Include all catalogs under common schemas folder on the first directory level -->
  <nextCatalog spy:recurseFrom="%CommonSchemasFolder%" catalog="catalog.xml"
```
The listing above references a custom catalog (named CustomCatalog.xml) and a set of catalogs that locate commonly used schemas (such as W3C XML Schemas and the SVG schema).

- **CustomCatalog.xml** is located in the RaptorXML Server application folder's etc subfolder. It is a skeleton file in which you can create your own mappings. You can add mappings to CustomCatalog.xml for any schema you require that is not addressed by the catalog files in the Common Schemas Folder. Do this by using the supported elements of the OASIS catalog mechanism (see next section).
- The Common Schemas Folder (located via the variable %CommonSchemasFolder%) contains a set of commonly used schemas. Inside each of these schema folders is a catalog.xml file that maps public and/or system identifiers to URIs that point to locally saved copies of the respective schemas.
- **CoreCatalog.xml** is located in the RaptorXML Server application folder, and is used to locate schemas and stylesheets used by RaptorXML Server-specific processes, such as StyleVision Power Stylesheets which are stylesheets used to generate Altova's Authentic View of XML documents.

### Location variables
The variables that are used in RootCatalog.xml (listing above) have the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%PersonalFolder%</td>
<td>Personal folder of the current user, for example C:\Users&lt;name&gt;\Documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%CommonSchemasFolder%</td>
<td>C:\ProgramData\Altova\Common2021\Schemas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%ApplicationWritableDataFolder%</td>
<td>C:\ProgramData\Altova</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Location of catalog files and schemas
Note the locations of the various catalog files.

- **RootCatalog.xml**, **CustomCatalog.xml**, and **CoreCatalog.xml** are in the RaptorXML Server application folder.
- The **catalog.xml** files are each in a specific schema folder, these schema folders being inside the Common Schemas Folder.

### 3.5.3 Customizing your Catalogs

When creating entries in CustomCatalog.xml (or any other catalog file that is to be read by RaptorXML Server), use only the following elements of the OASIS catalog specification. Each of the elements below is listed with an explanation of their attribute values. For a more detailed explanation, see the [XML Catalogs specification](#). Note that each element can take the xml:base attribute, which is used to specify the base URI of that element.

- `<public publicId="PublicID of Resource" uri="URL of local file"/>`
- `<system systemId="SystemID of Resource" uri="URL of local file"/>`
Note the following points:

- In cases where there is no public identifier, as with most stylesheets, the system identifier can be directly mapped to a URL via the system element.
- A URI can be mapped to another URI using the uri element.
- The rewriteURI and rewriteSystem elements enable the rewriting of the starting part of a URI or system identifier, respectively. This allows the start of a filepath to be replaced and consequently enables the targeting of another directory. For more information on these elements, see the XML Catalogs specification.

From release 2014 onwards, RaptorXML Server adheres closely to the XML Catalogs specification (OASIS Standard V1.1, 7 October 2005) specification. This specification strictly separates external-identifier look-ups (those with a Public ID or System ID) from URI look-ups (URIs that are not Public IDs or System IDs). Namespace URIs must therefore be considered simply URIs—not Public IDs or System IDs—and must be used as URI look-ups rather than external-identifier look-ups. In RaptorXML Server versions prior to version 2014, schema namespace URIs were translated through <public> mappings. From version 2014 onwards, <uri> mappings have to be used.

Prior to v2014:

```xml
uri="file:///C:/MyDocs/Catalog/test.xsd"/>
```

V-2014 onwards:

```xml
<uri name="http://www.MyMapping.com/ref"
uri="file:///C:/MyDocs/Catalog/test.xsd"/>
```

How RaptorXML Server finds a referenced schema

A schema is referenced in an XML document via the xsi:schemaLocation attribute (shown below). The value of the xsi:schemaLocation attribute has two parts: a namespace part (green) and a URI part (highlighted).

```
xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.xmlspy.com/schemas/orgchart OrgChart.xsd"
```

The set of steps that is followed to find a referenced schema depends on the validation options --schemalocation-hints and --schema-mapping. Given below are the procedures for each value of the two options:

- **--schemalocation-hints**
  - load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore
  - Specifies the behavior of the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes: whether to load a schema document and, if yes, which information should be used to find it; (the default is load-by-schemalocation).
  - **load-by-schemalocation**
    - 1. If the URI part of the xsi:schemaLocation is mapped in a catalog, load the resulting URI
    - 2. Load the URI directly
  - **load-by-namespace**
    - 1. If the namespace part of the xsi:schemaLocation is mapped in a catalog, load the resulting URI
Setting Up RaptorXML

XML Catalogs

2. Load nothing.
   - `load-combining-both`
     1. If the URI part of the `xsi:schemaLocation` is mapped in a catalog, load the resulting URI.
     2. If the namespace part of the `xsi:schemaLocation` is mapped in a catalog, load the resulting URI.
     3. Load the URI part directly.

   - `--schema-mapping=prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace`
     If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, then this option specifies which of the two should be preferred during catalog lookup; (the default is `prefer-schemalocation`). This option is used to change the order of the first two steps in the `load-combining-both` variant above.

XML Schema specifications

XML Schema specification information is built into RaptorXML Server and the validity of XML Schema (.xsd) documents is checked against this internal information. In an XML Schema document, therefore, no references should be made to any schema that defines the XML Schema specification.

The catalog.xml file in the `%AltovaCommonSchemasFolder%\Schemas\schema` folder contains references to DTDs that implement older XML Schema specifications. You should not validate your XML Schema documents against these schemas. The referenced files are included solely to provide RaptorXML Server with entry helper info for editing purposes should you wish to create documents according to these older recommendations.

3.5.4 Variables for Windows System Locations

Shell environment variables can be used in the `nextCatalog` element to specify the path to various system locations (see RootCatalog.xml listing above). The following shell environment variables are supported:

- `%PersonalFolder%` Full path to the Personal folder of the current user, for example C:\Users\<name>\Documents
- `%CommonSchemasFolder%` C:\ProgramData\Altova\Common2021\Schemas
- `%ApplicationWritableDataFolder%` C:\ProgramData\Altova
- `%AltovaCommonFolder%` C:\Program Files\Altova\Common2021
- `%DesktopFolder%` Full path to the Desktop folder of the current user.
- `%ProgramMenuFolder%` Full path to the Program Menu folder of the current user.
- `%StartMenuFolder%` Full path to Start Menu folder of the current user.
%StartUpFolder%  Full path to Start Up folder of the current user.
%TemplateFolder%  Full path to the Template folder of the current user.
%AdminToolsFolder%  Full path to the file system directory that stores administrative tools of the current user.
%AppDataFolder%  Full path to the Application Data folder of the current user.
%CommonAppDataFolder%  Full path to the file directory containing application data of all users.
%FavoritesFolder%  Full path of the Favorites folder of the current user.
%PersonalFolder%  Full path to the Personal folder of the current user.
%SendToFolder%  Full path to the SendTo folder of the current user.
%FontsFolder%  Full path to the System Fonts folder.
%ProgramFilesFolder%  Full path to the Program Files folder of the current user.
%CommonFilesFolder%  Full path to the Common Files folder of the current user.
%WindowsFolder%  Full path to the Windows folder of the current user.
%SystemFolder%  Full path to the System folder of the current user.
%LocalAppDataFolder%  Full path to the file system directory that serves as the data repository for local (nonroaming) applications.
%MyPicturesFolder%  Full path to the MyPictures folder.
### 3.6 Global Resources

**This section:**
- About global resources
- Using global resources

#### About global resources

An Altova global resource file maps an alias to multiple resources via different configurations, as shown in the diagram below. An alias can therefore be switched to access a different resource by switching its configuration.

Global resources are defined in Altova products, such as Altova XMLSpy, and are saved in a global resources XML file. RaptorXML is able to use global resources as inputs. To do this, it requires the name and location of the global resources file, and the alias and configuration to be used.

The advantage of using global resources is that the resource can be changed merely by switching the name of the configuration. When using RaptorXML, this means that by providing a different value of the `--globalresourcesconfig | --gc` option, a different resource can be used. (See the example below.)

#### Using global resources with RaptorXML

To specify a global resource as an input for a RaptorXML command, the following parameters are required:

- The global resources XML file (specified on the CLI with the option `--globalresourcesfile | --gr`)
- The required configuration (specified on the CLI with the option `--globalresourcesconfig | --gc`)
- The alias. This can be specified directly on the CLI where a file name is required, or it can be at a location inside an XML file where RaptorXML looks for a filename (such as in an `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute).

For example, if you wish to transform input.xml with transform.xslt to output.html, this would typically be achieved on the CLI with the following command that uses filenames:

```
  raptorxml xslt --input=input.xml --output=output.html transform.xslt
```

If, however, you have a global resource definition that matches the alias `MyInput` to the file resource `FirstInput.xml` via a configuration called `FirstConfig`, then you could use the alias `MyInput` on the CLI as follows:

```
  raptorxml xslt --input=altova://file_resource/MyInput --gr=C:\MyGlobalResources.xml --gc=FirstConfig --output=Output.html transform.xslt
```
Now, if you have another file resource, say SecondInput.xml, that is matched to the alias MyInput via a configuration called SecondConfig, then this resource can be used by changing only the \texttt{--gc} option of the previous command:

\begin{verbatim}
   raptorxml xslt --input=altova://file_resource/MyInput --gr=C:\MyGlobalResources.xml --gc=SecondConfig --output=Output.html transform.xslt
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Note:} In the example above a file resource was used; a file resource must be prefixed with \texttt{altova://file_resource/}. You can also use global resources that are folders. To identify a folder resource, use: \texttt{altova://folder_resource/AliasName}. Note that, on the CLI, you can also use folder resources as part of a filepath. For example: \texttt{altova://folder_resource/AliasName/input.xml}. 

3.7 Security Issues

This section:

- Security concerns related to the HTTP interface
- Making Python scripts safe

Some interface features of RaptorXML Server pose security concerns. These are described below together with their solutions.

Security concerns related to the HTTP REST interface

The HTTP REST interface, by default, allows result documents to be written to any location specified by the client (that is accessible with the HTTP protocol). It is important therefore to consider this security aspect when configuring RaptorXML Server.

If there is a concern that security might be compromised or that the interface might be misused, the server can be configured to write result documents to a dedicated output directory on the server itself. This is specified by setting the `server.unrestricted-filesystem-access` option of the server configuration file to false. When access is restricted in this way, the client can download result documents from the dedicated output directory with GET requests. Alternatively, an administrator can copy/upload result document files from the server to the target location.

Making Python scripts safe

When a Python script is specified in a command via HTTP to RaptorXML Server, the script will only work if it is located in the trusted directory. The script is executed from the trusted directory. Specifying a Python script from any other directory will result in an error. The trusted directory is specified in the `server.script-root-dir` setting of the server configuration file, and a trusted directory must be specified if you wish to use Python scripts. Make sure that all Python scripts to be used are saved in this directory.

Though all output generated by the server for HTTP job requests is written to the job output directory (which is a sub-directory of the output-root-directory), this limitation does not apply to Python scripts, which can write to any location. The server administrator must review the Python scripts in the trusted directory for potential vulnerability issues.
4  Command Line Interface (CLI)

The RaptorXML Server executable provides application functionality that can be called from the command line interface (CLI). The path to the executable is:

Linux  /opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/raptorxml
Mac  /usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/raptorxml
Windows  %ProgramFilesFolder%\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin\RaptorXML.exe

Usage
The command line syntax is:

```
raptorxml --h | --help | --version | <command> [options] [arguments]
```

- `--help` (short form `--h`) displays the help text of the given command. If no command is named, then all commands of the executable are listed, each with a brief description of the command.
- `--version` displays the version number of RaptorXML Server.
- `<command>` is the command to execute. Commands are described in the sub-sections of this section (see list below).
- `[options]` are the options of a command; they are listed and described with their respective commands.
- `[arguments]` are the arguments of a command; they are listed and described with their respective commands.

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

CLI commands
The commands have been organized by their functionality as listed below, and are described in the sub-sections of this section.

- XML, DTD, XSD Validation Commands
- Well-formedness Check Commands
- XQuery Commands
- XSLT Commands
- JSON/Avro Commands
- XML Signature Commands
- General Commands
- Localization Commands
- License Commands
- Administration Commands
4.1 XML, DTD, XSD Validation Commands

XML validation commands can be used to validate the following types of document:

- `valxml-withdtd`: Validates an XML instance document against a DTD
- `valxml-withxsd`: Validates an XML instance document against an XML Schema
- `valdtd`: Validates a DTD document

4.1.1 `valxml-withdtd (xml)`

The `valxml-withdtd | xml` command validates one or more XML instance documents against a DTD.

```
raptorxml valxml-withdtd | xml [options] InputFile
```

- The `InputFile` argument is the XML document to validate. If a reference to a DTD exists in the XML document, the `--dtd` option is not required.
- To validate multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the `InputFile` argument together with the `--listfile` option set to true (see the Options list below).

Examples

Examples of the `valxml-withdtd` command:

```
• raptorxml valxml-withdtd --dtd=c:\MyDTD.dtd c:\Test.xml
• raptorxml xml c:\Test.xml
• raptorxml xml --verbose=true c:\Test.xml
• raptorxml xml --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt
```

Casing and slashes on the command line

- * Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (`RaptorXML`) works only on Windows and Mac.
- * Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotemation mark (for example, "C:\My directory") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence " stands for the double-quotemation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you
need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C: \My Directory\ \".

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

-validation and processing

- **dtd**
  --dtd = FILE
  Specifies the external DTD document to use for validation. If a reference to an external DTD is present in the XML document, then the CLI option overrides the external reference.

- **listfile**
  --listfile = true|false
  If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **namespaces**
  --namespaces = true|false
  Enables namespace-aware processing. This is useful for checking the XML instance for errors due to incorrect namespaces. Default value is false.
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **recurse**
  --recurse = true|false
  Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip\ zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, * .xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **streaming**
  --streaming = true|false
  Enables streaming validation. Default is true. In streaming mode, data stored in memory is minimized and processing is faster. The downside is that information that might be required subsequently—for example, a data model of the XML instance document—will not be available. In
situations where this is significant, streaming mode will need to be turned off (by giving --streaming a value of false). When using the --script option with the valxml-withxsd command, disable streaming. Note that the --streaming option is ignored if --parallel-assessment is set to true. 

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

### Catalogs and global resources

**catalog**

```bash
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, [XML Catalogs](#xml-catalogs), for information about working with catalogs.

**user-catalog**

```bash
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, [XML Catalogs](#xml-catalogs), for information about working with catalogs.

**enable-globalresources**

```bash
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is false. 

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**globalresourceconfig [gc]**

```bash
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
```

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

**globalresourcefile [gr]**

```bash
--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
```

Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

### Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

**error-format**

```bash
--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
```

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

**error-limit**

```bash
--error-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.
info-limit

```
--info-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

help

```
--help
```

Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

log-output

```
--log-output = FILE
```

Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout

```
--network-timeout = VALUE
```

Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

verbose

```
--verbose = true|false
```

A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

verbose-output

```
--verbose-output = FILE
```

Writes verbose output to FILE.

version

```
--version
```

Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

warning-limit

```
--warning-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

4.1.2 valxml-withxsd (xsi)

The valxml-withxsd | xsi command validates one or more XML instance documents according to the W3C XML Schema Definition Language (XSD) 1.0 and 1.1 specifications.
raptorxml valxml-withxsd | xsi [options] InputFile

- The InputFile argument is the XML document to validate. The --schemalocation-hints option specifies what mechanism is used to find the schema. The --xsd=FILE option specifies the schema/s to use if the XML file contains no schema reference.
- To validate multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the InputFile argument together with the --listfile option set to true (see the Options list below).

Note: If using the --script option to run Python scripts, make sure to also specify --streaming=false.

Examples
Examples of the valxml-withxsd command:
- `raptorxml valxml-withxsd --schemalocation-hints=load-by-schemalocation --xsd=c:\MyXSD.xsd c:\HasNoXSDRef.xml`
- `raptorxml xsi c:\HasXSDRef.xml`
- `raptorxml xsi --xsd-version=1.1 --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt`

Casing and slashes on the command line
- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\ ".

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.
Validation and processing

assess-mode

```
--assessment-mode = lax|strict
```

Specifies the schema-validity assessment mode as defined in the XSD specifications. Default value is strict. The XML instance document will be validated according to the mode specified with this option.

ct-restrict-mode

```
--ct-restrict-mode = 1.0|1.1|default
```

Specifies how to check complex type restrictions. A value of 1.0 checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD 1.0 specification—even in XSD 1.1 validation mode. A value of 1.1 checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD 1.1 specification—even in XSD 1.0 validation mode. A value of default checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD specification of the current validation mode (1.0 or 1.1). The default value is default.

listfile

```
--listfile = true|false
```

If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

parallel-assessment [pa]

```
--pa | --parallel-assessment = true|false
```

If set to true, schema validity assessment is carried out in parallel. This means that if there are more than 128 elements at any level, these elements are processed in parallel using multiple threads. Very large XML files can therefore be processed faster if this option is enabled. Parallel assessment takes place on one hierarchical level at a time, but can occur at multiple levels within a single infoset. Note that parallel assessment does not work in streaming mode. For this reason, the --streaming option is ignored if --parallel-assessment is set to true. Also, memory usage is higher when the --parallel-assessment option is used. The default setting is false. Short form for the option is --pa. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

recurse

```
--recurse = true|false
```

Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip|zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.*.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

report-import-namespace-mismatch-as-warning

```
--report-import-namespace-mismatch-as-warning = true|false
```

Downgrades namespace or target-namespace mismatch errors when importing schemas with xs:import from errors to warnings. The default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

▶ schema-imports

```--schema-imports = load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only```

Specifies the behaviour of `xs:import` elements, each of which has an optional `namespace` attribute and an optional `schemaLocation` attribute: `<import namespace="someNS" schemaLocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-preferring-schemalocation.

The behavior is as follows:

- **load-by-schemalocation**: The value of the `schemaLocation` attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of catalog mappings. If the `namespace` attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).
- **load-preferring-schemalocation**: If the `schemaLocation` attribute is present, it is used, taking account of catalog mappings. If no `schemaLocation` attribute is present, then the value of the `namespace` attribute is used via a catalog mapping. This is the default value.
- **load-by-namespace**: The value of the `namespace` attribute is used to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.
- **load-combining-both**: If either the `namespace` or `schemaLocation` attribute has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the `namespace` nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- **license-namespace-only**: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

▶ schemalocation-hints

```--schemalocation-hints = load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore```

Specifies the behavior of the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-by-schemalocation.

- The `load-by-schemalocation` value uses the URL of the schema location in the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.
- The `load-by-namespace` value takes the namespace part of `xsi:schemaLocation` and an empty string in the case of `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.
- If `load-combining-both` is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- If the option's value is `ignore`, then the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes are both ignored.

▶ schema-mapping

```--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace```

If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of
them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the `--schemalocation-hints` or the `--schema-imports` option has a value of `load-combining-both`, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the `prefer-schemalocation` value refers to the URL mapping).) Default is `prefer-schemalocation`.

### script

`--script = FILE`

Executes the Python script in the submitted file after validation has been completed. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script.

### script-api-version

`--api, --script-api-version = 1; 2; 2.1; 2.2; 2.3; 2.4; 2.4.1; 2.5; 2.6; 2.7; 2.8; 2.8.1; 2.8.2; 2.8.3`

Specifies the Python API version to be used for the script. The default value is the latest version, currently `2.8.3`. Instead of the values `1` and `2`, you can also use the values `1.0` and `2.0`, respectively.

### script-output

`--script-output = FILE`

Writes the script's standard output to the file named in `FILE`.

### script-param

`--script-param = KEY:VALUE`

Additional user-specified parameters that can be accessed during the execution of Python scripts. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script parameter.

### streaming

`--streaming = true|false`

Enables streaming validation. Default is `true`. In streaming mode, data stored in memory is minimized and processing is faster. The downside is that information that might be required subsequently—for example, a data model of the XML instance document—will not be available. In situations where this is significant, streaming mode will need to be turned off (by giving `--streaming false`). When using the `--script` option with the `valxml-withxsd` command, disable streaming. Note that the `--streaming` option is ignored if `--parallel-assessment` is set to `true`. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### xinclude

`--xinclude = true|false`

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is `false`. When `false`, XInclude's `include` elements are ignored. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### xml-mode

`--xml-mode = wf|id|valid`

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: `wf` = wellformed check;
id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

**xml-mode-for-schemas**

```
--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: wf=wellformed check; id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

**xsd**

```
--xsd = FILE
```

Specifies one or more XML Schema documents to use for the validation of XML instance documents. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one schema document.

**xsd-version**

```
--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect
```

Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is 1.0. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is 1.0-compatible is not 1.1-compatible. The detect option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the vc:minVersion attribute of the document's <xs:schema> element. If the value of the @vc:minVersion attribute is 1.1, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the @vc:minVersion attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.

**Catalogs and global resources**

**catalog**

```
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**user-catalog**

```
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**enable-globalresources**

```
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.
XML, DTD, XSD Validation Commands

Command Line Interface (CLI)

--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

- globalresourcefile [gr]
--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

- Messages, errors, help, timeout, version
  - error-format
    --error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
    Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

  - error-limit
    --error-limit = N | unlimited
    Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

  - info-limit
    --info-limit = N | unlimited
    Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

  - help
    --help
    Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

  - log-output
    --log-output = FILE
    Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

  - network-timeout
    --network-timeout = VALUE
    Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is 40.

  - verbose
    --verbose = true|false
    A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.
    Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

  - verbose-output
---verbose-output = FILE
Writes verbose output to FILE.

\textbf{version}

\texttt{--version}
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place \texttt{--version} before the command.

\textbf{warning-limit}

\texttt{--warning-limit = \textit{N} | unlimited}
Specifies the warning limit in the range \textit{1-65535} or \textit{unlimited}. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is \textit{100}.

### 4.1.3 \texttt{valdtd (dtd)}

The \texttt{valdtd | dtd} command validates one or more DTD documents according to the XML 1.0 or XML 1.1 specification.

\begin{verbatim}
  raptorxml valdtd | dtd [options] InputFile
\end{verbatim}

- The \texttt{InputFile} argument is the DTD document to validate.
- To validate multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the \texttt{InputFile} argument together with the \texttt{--listfile} option set to \texttt{true} (see the Options list below).

\textbf{Examples}

Examples of the \texttt{valdtd} command:

- \begin{verbatim}
  \texttt{raptorxml valdtd c:\Test.dtd}
  \texttt{raptorxml dtd --verbose=true c:\Test.dtd}
  \texttt{raptorxml dtd --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Casing and slashes on the command line}

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) \textbf{on Windows}

\begin{verbatim}
  raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)
\end{verbatim}

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

\textbf{Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems}
On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, “C:\My directory\”) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: “C:\My Directory\\".

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Validation and processing

- listfile
  --listfile = [true|false]
  If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.
  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- recurse
  --recurse = [true|false]
  Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip|zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.
  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- script
  --script = [FILE]
  Executes the Python script in the submitted file after validation has been completed. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script.

- script-api-version
  --api, --script-api-version = [1; 2; 2.1; 2.2; 2.3; 2.4; 2.4.1; 2.5; 2.6; 2.7; 2.8; 2.8.1; 2.8.2; 2.8.3]
  Specifies the Python API version to be used for the script. The default value is the latest version, currently 2.8.3. Instead of the values 1 and 2, you can also use the values 1.0 and 2.0, respectively.
script-output
   --script-output = FILE
   Writes the script's standard output to the file named in FILE.

script-param
   --script-param = KEY:VALUE
   Additional user-specified parameters that can be accessed during the execution of Python scripts.
   Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script parameter.

Catalogs and global resources

--catalog = FILE
   Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

--user-catalog = FILE
   Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

--enable-globalresources = true|false
   Enables global resources. Default value is false.
   Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

globalresourceconfig [gc]
   --gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
   Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

globalresourcefile [gr]
   --gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
   Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
   Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.
error-limit

   --error-limit = \textit{N | unlimited}

   Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

info-limit

   --info-limit = \textit{N | unlimited}

   Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

help

   --help

   Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

log-output

   --log-output = \textit{FILE}

   Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout

   --network-timeout = \textit{VALUE}

   Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

verbose

   --verbose = \textit{true|false}

   A value of \textit{true} enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is \textit{false}. \textbf{Note}: Boolean option values are set to \textit{true} if the option is specified without a value.

verbose-output

   --verbose-output = \textit{FILE}

   Writes verbose output to \textit{FILE}.

version

   --version

   Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

warning-limit

   --warning-limit = \textit{N | unlimited}

   Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.
4.1.4  valxsd (xsd)

The valxsd | xsd command validates one or more XML Schema documents (XSD documents) according to the W3C XML Schema Definition Language (XSD) 1.0 or 1.1 specification. Note that it is the schema itself that is validated against the XML Schema specification, not an XML instance document against an XML Schema.

```
raptorxml valxsd | xsd [options] InputFile
```

- The InputFile argument is the XML Schema document to validate. The `--xsd-version=1.0|1.1` option specifies the XSD version to validate against, with the default being 1.0.
- To validate multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the InputFile argument together with the `--listfile` option set to true (see the Options list below).

Examples

Examples of the valxsd command:

- `raptorxml valxsd c:\Test.xsd`
- `raptorxml xsd --verbose=true c:\Test.xsd`
- `raptorxml xsd --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt`

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

- Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
- Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean
value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

### Validation and processing

- **ct-restrict-mode**

  **--ct-restrict-mode = 1.0|1.1|default**

  Specifies how to check complex type restrictions. A value of 1.0 checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD 1.0 specification—even in XSD 1.1 validation mode. A value of 1.1 checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD 1.1 specification—even in XSD 1.0 validation mode. A value of default checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD specification of the current validation mode (1.0 or 1.1). The default value is default.

- **listfile**

  **--listfile = true|false**

  If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **recurse**

  **--recurse = true|false**

  Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip\zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.

  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **report-import-namespace-mismatch-as-warning**

  **--report-import-namespace-mismatch-as-warning = true|false**

  Downgrades namespace or target-namespace mismatch errors when importing schemas with xs:import from errors to warnings. The default value is false.

  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **schema-imports**

  **--schema-imports = load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only**

  Specifies the behaviour of xs:import elements, each of which has an optional namespace attribute and an optional schemalocation attribute: `<import namespace="someNS" schemalocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-preferring-schemalocation.

  The behavior is as follows:

  - load-by-schemalocation: The value of the schemalocation attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of catalog mappings. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).
load-preferring-schemalocation: If the schemaLocation attribute is present, it is used, taking account of catalog mappings. If no schemaLocation attribute is present, then the value of the namespace attribute is used via a catalog mapping. This is the default value.

load-by-namespace: The value of the namespace attribute is used to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.

load-combining-both: If either the namespace or schemaLocation attribute has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If no catalog mapping is present, the schemaLocation attribute is used.

license-namespace-only: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

schemalocation-hints
--schemalocation-hints = load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore

Specifies the behavior of the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-by-schemalocation.

schema-mapping
--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace

If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the --schemalocation-hints or the --schema-imports option has a value of load-combining-both, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the prefer-schemalocation value refers to the URL mapping.) Default is prefer-schemalocation.

script
--script = FILE

Executes the Python script in the submitted file after validation has been completed. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script.

script-api-version
--api, --script-api-version = 1; 2; 2.1; 2.2; 2.3; 2.4; 2.4.1; 2.5; 2.6; 2.7; 2.8; 2.8.1; 2.8.2; 2.8.3

Specifies the Python API version to be used for the script. The default value is the latest version,
currently **2.8.3**. Instead of the values 1 and 2, you can also use the values 1.0 and 2.0, respectively.

**script-output**

```
--script-output = FILE
```

Writes the script's standard output to the file named in `FILE`.

**script-param**

```
--script-param = KEY:VALUE
```

Additional user-specified parameters that can be accessed during the execution of Python scripts. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script parameter.

**xinclude**

```
--xinclude = true|false
```

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is `false`. When `false`, XInclude's `include` elements are ignored.

**Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**xml-mode-for-schemas**

```
--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: `wf`=wellformed check; `id`=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; `valid`=validation. Default value is `wf`. Note that a value of `valid` requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

**xsd-version**

```
--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect
```

Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is `1.0`. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is `1.0`-compatible is not `1.1`-compatible. The `detect` option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the `vc:minVersion` attribute of the document's `<xs:schema>` element. If the value of the `@vc:minVersion` attribute is `1.1`, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the `@vc:minVersion` attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.

**Catalogs and global resources**

**catalog**

```
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, `XML Catalogs`, for information about working with catalogs.

**user-catalog**

```
--user-catalog = FILE
```


Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**enable-globalresources**

```
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is `false`.

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**globalresourceconfig [gc]**

```
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
```

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

**globalresourcefile [gr]**

```
--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
```

Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

---

**Messages, errors, help, timeout, version**

**error-format**

```
--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
```

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is `text`. The other options generate XML formats, with `longxml` generating more detail.

**error-limit**

```
--error-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or `unlimited`. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

**info-limit**

```
--info-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or `unlimited`. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

**help**

```
--help
```

Displays help text for the command. For example, `valany --h`. (Alternatively the `help` command can be used with an argument. For example: `help valany`.)

**log-output**

```
--log-output = FILE
```

Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

**network-timeout**
---network-timeout = VALUE
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

- verbose
  --verbose = true|false
  A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. *Note*: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- verbose-output
  --verbose-output = FILE
  Writes verbose output to FILE.

- version
  --version
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

- warning-limit
  --warning-limit = N | unlimited
  Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.
4.2 Well-formedness Check Commands

The well-formedness check commands can be used to check the well-formedness of XML documents and DTDs. These commands are listed below and described in detail in the sub-sections of this section:

- `wfxml`: Checks the well-formedness of XML documents
- `wfdtd`: Checks the well-formedness of DTDs
- `wfany`: Checks the well-formedness of an XML document or DTD. Type is detected automatically

4.2.1 `wfxml`

The `wfxml` command checks one or more XML documents for well-formedness according to the XML 1.0 or XML 1.1 specification.

```
raptorxml wfxml [options] InputFile
```

- The `InputFile` argument is the XML document to check for well-formedness.
- To check multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be checked on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be checked in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the `InputFile` argument together with the `--listfile` option set to true (see the Options list below).

Examples

Examples of the `wfxml` command:

- `raptorxml wfxml c:\Test.xml`
- `raptorxml wfxml --verbose=true c:\Test.xml`
- `raptorxml wfxml --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt`

Casing and slashes on the command line

- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- `raptorxml` (and `raptorxmlserver` for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac).
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotes character (for example, "C:\My directory") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotes mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\\. To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory"
Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Validation and processing

- **dtd**
  
  --dtd = FILE
  
  Specifies the external DTD document to use for validation. If a reference to an external DTD is present in the XML document, then the CLI option overrides the external reference.

- **listfile**
  
  --listfile = true|false
  
  If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **namespaces**
  
  --namespaces = true|false
  
  Enables namespace-aware processing. This is useful for checking the XML instance for errors due to incorrect namespaces. Default value is false.
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **recurse**
  
  --recurse = true|false
  
  Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **streaming**
  
  --streaming = true|false
  
  Enables streaming validation. Default is true. In streaming mode, data stored in memory is minimized and processing is faster. The downside is that information that might be required subsequently—for example, a data model of the XML instance document—will not be available. In situations where this is significant, streaming mode will need to be turned off (by giving --streaming...
When using the `--script` option with the `valxml-withxsd` command, disable streaming. Note that the `--streaming` option is ignored if `--parallel-assessment` is set to `true`. Note: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

Catalogs and global resources

- **catalog**
  ```bash
  --catalog FILE
  ```
  Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

- **user-catalog**
  ```bash
  --user-catalog FILE
  ```
  Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

- **enable-globalresources**
  ```bash
  --enable-globalresources true|false
  ```
  Enables global resources. Default value is `false`. Note: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **globalresourceconfig [gc]**
  ```bash
  --gc | --globalresourceconfig VALUE
  ```
  Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

- **globalresourcefile [gr]**
  ```bash
  --gr | --globalresourcefile FILE
  ```
  Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

- **error-format**
  ```bash
  --error-format text|shortxml|longxml
  ```
  Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is `text`. The other options generate XML formats, with `longxml` generating more detail.

- **error-limit**
  ```bash
  --error-limit N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

- **info-limit**
--info-limit = $ \texttt{N | unlimited}$
Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

\section*{help}

\textbf{--help}
Displays help text for the command. For example, \texttt{valany --h}. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: \texttt{help valany}.)

\section*{log-output}

\textbf{--log-output = FILE}
Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

\section*{network-timeout}

\textbf{--network-timeout = VALUE}
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

\section*{verbose}

\textbf{--verbose = true|false}
A value of \texttt{true} enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is \texttt{false}.

\textbf{Note}: Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.

\section*{verbose-output}

\textbf{--verbose-output = FILE}
Writes verbose output to \texttt{FILE}.

\section*{version}

\textbf{--version}
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place \texttt{--version} before the command.

\section*{warning-limit}

\textbf{--warning-limit = $ \texttt{N | unlimited}$}
Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

\subsection*{4.2.2 \texttt{wfdtd}}

The \texttt{wfdtd} command checks one or more DTD documents for well-formedness according to the XML 1.0 or XML 1.1 specification.
Command Line Interface (CLI) Well-formedness Check Commands

**raptorxml wfdtd [options] InputFile**

- The *InputFile* argument is the DTD document to check for well-formedness.
- To check multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be checked on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be checked in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the *InputFile* argument together with the *--listfile* option set to **true** (see the Options list below).

**Examples**

Examples of the *wfdtd* command:

- `raptorxml wfdtd c:\Test.dtd`
- `raptorxml wfdtd --verbose=true c:\Test.dtd`
- `raptorxml wfdtd --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt`

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

* RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on **Windows**
* raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on **Windows and Unix** (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (*raptorxml* and *raptorxmlserver*) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotatio mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotatio mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

**Options**

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: **--option=value**. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is **TRUE**. Use the **--h, --help** option to display information about the command.

**Validation and processing**

- listfile

  **--listfile = true|false**

  If **true**, treats the command's *InputFile* argument as a text file containing one filename per line.
Default value is \texttt{false}. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the \texttt{--listfile} option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

\textbf{Note:} Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{re\-cure\-se} \texttt{\ --\--\-re\-cure\-se = true|false}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If \texttt{true}, the command's \texttt{InputFile} argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip\zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is \texttt{false}.
  \item \textbf{Note:} Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\subsection*{Catalogs and global resources}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{ca\-talo\-g} \texttt{\ --\--\-ca\-talo\-g = FILE}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{user\-ca\-talo\-g} \texttt{\ --\--\-user\-ca\-talo\-g = FILE}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{en\-able\-glo\-bal\-re\-sources} \texttt{\ --\--\-en\-able\-glo\-bal\-re\-sources = true|false}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Enables \texttt{global resources}. Default value is \texttt{false}.
  \item \textbf{Note:} Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{global\-re\-source\-config [gc]} \texttt{\ --\--\-global\-re\-source\-config = VALUE}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables \texttt{global resources}).
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{global\-re\-source\-file [gr]} \texttt{\ --\--\-global\-re\-source\-file = FILE}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Specifies the \texttt{global resource file} (and enables \texttt{global resources}).
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\subsection*{Messages, errors, help, timeout, version}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{err\-or\-for\-mat} \texttt{\ --\--\-err\-or\-for\-mat = text|shortxml|longxml}
\end{itemize}
Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

- **error-limit**
  ```shell
  --error-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

- **info-limit**
  ```shell
  --info-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

- **help**
  ```shell
  --help
  ```
  Displays help text for the command. For example, `valany --h`. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: `help valany`.)

- **log-output**
  ```shell
  --log-output = FILE
  ```
  Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

- **network-timeout**
  ```shell
  --network-timeout = VALUE
  ```
  Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

- **verbose**
  ```shell
  --verbose = true|false
  ```
  A value of `true` enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is `false`. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **verbose-output**
  ```shell
  --verbose-output = FILE
  ```
  Writes verbose output to `FILE`.

- **version**
  ```shell
  --version
  ```
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place `--version` before the command.

- **warning-limit**
  ```shell
  --warning-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is
reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

4.2.3 \textbf{wfany}

The \texttt{wfany} command checks an XML or DTD document for well-formedness according to the respective specification/s. The type of document is detected automatically.

\begin{verbatim}
raptorxml wfany [options] InputFile
\end{verbatim}

- The \texttt{InputFile} argument is the document to check for well-formedness.
- Note that only one document can be submitted as the argument of the command. The type of the submitted document is detected automatically.

**Examples**

Examples of the \texttt{wfany} command:

- \texttt{raptorxml wfany c:\Test.xml}
- \texttt{raptorxml wfany --error-format=text c:\Test.xml}

\textbf{Casing and slashes on the command line}

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows

\texttt{raptorxml} (and \texttt{raptorxmlserver} for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

\textbf{Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems}

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence " stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

\textbf{Options}

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: \texttt{--option=value}. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii)
when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the \texttt{--h, --help} option to display information about the command.

\section*{Processing}
\subsection*{listfile}
\texttt{--listfile = true|false}
If \emph{true}, treats the command's \texttt{InputFile} argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is \emph{false}. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the \texttt{--listfile} option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

\textit{Note}: Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.

\section*{Catalogs and global resources}
\subsection*{catalog}
\texttt{--catalog = FILE}
Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (\texttt{<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml}). See the section, \textit{XML Catalogs}, for information about working with catalogs.

\subsection*{user-catalog}
\texttt{--user-catalog = FILE}
Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, \textit{XML Catalogs}, for information about working with catalogs.

\subsection*{enable-globalresources}
\texttt{--enable-globalresources = true|false}
Enables \textit{global resources}. Default value is \texttt{false}.

\textit{Note}: Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.

\subsection*{globalresourceconfig \texttt{[gc]}}
\texttt{--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE}
Specifies the \textit{active configuration of the global resource} (and enables \textit{global resources}).

\subsection*{globalresourcefile \texttt{[gr]}}
\texttt{--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE}
Specifies the \textit{global resource file} (and enables \textit{global resources}).

\section*{Messages, errors, help, timeout, version}
\subsection*{error-format}
\texttt{--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml}
Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is \texttt{text}. The other options generate XML
formats, with `longxml` generating more detail.

- **error-limit**
  
  ```
  --error-limit = N | unlimited
  ```

  Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

- **info-limit**
  
  ```
  --info-limit = N | unlimited
  ```

  Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

- **help**
  
  ```
  --help
  ```

  Displays help text for the command. For example, `valany --h`. (Alternatively the `help` command can be used with an argument. For example: `help valany`.)

- **log-output**
  
  ```
  --log-output = FILE
  ```

  Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

- **network-timeout**
  
  ```
  --network-timeout = VALUE
  ```

  Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

- **verbose**
  
  ```
  --verbose = true|false
  ```

  A value of `true` enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is `false`. 
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **verbose-output**
  
  ```
  --verbose-output = FILE
  ```

  Writes verbose output to `FILE`.

- **version**
  
  ```
  --version
  ```

  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place `--version` before the command.

- **warning-limit**
  
  ```
  --warning-limit = N | unlimited
  ```

  Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.
4.3 XQuery Commands

The XQuery commands are:

- `xquery`: for executing XQuery documents, optionally with an input document
- `xqueryupdate`: for executing an XQuery update, using an XQuery document and, optionally, the input XML document to update
- `valxquery`: for validating XQuery documents
- `valxqueryupdate`: for validating an XQuery (update) document

### 4.3.1 xquery

The `xquery` command takes an XQuery file as its single argument and executes it with an optional input file to produce an output file. The input and output files are specified as options.

```
raptorxml xquery [options] XQuery-File
```

- The argument `XQuery-File` is the path and name of the XQuery file to be executed.
- You can use XQuery 1.0 or 3.0. By default XQuery 3.0 is used.

**Examples**

Examples of the `xquery` command:

- `raptorxml xquery --output=c:\Output.xml c:\TestQuery.xq`
- `raptorxml xquery --input=c:\Input.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --param=company:"Altova" --p=date:"2006-01-01" c:\TestQuery.xq`
- `raptorxml xquery --input=c:\Input.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --param=source:"doc( 'c:\test\books.xml' )//book "`
- `raptorxml xquery --output=c:\Output.xml --omit-xml-declaration=false --output-encoding=ASCII c:\TestQuery.xq`

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

- * RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- * raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

- Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (`RaptorXML`) works only on Windows and Mac.
- * Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "c:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to
escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\\".

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

XQuery Processing

indent-characters

--indent-characters = VALUE
Specifies the character string to be used as indentation.

input

--input = FILE
The URL of the XML file to be transformed.

omit-xml-declaration

--omit-xml-declaration = true|false
Serialization option to specify whether the XML declaration should be omitted from the output or not. If true, there will be no XML declaration in the output document. If false, an XML declaration will be included. Default value is false. Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

output, xsltoutput

output = FILE, xsltoutput = FILE
The URL of the primary-output file. For example, in the case of multiple-file HTML output, the primary-output file will be the location of the entry point HTML file. Additional output files, such as generated image files, are reported as xslt-additional-output-files. If no --output or --xsltoutput option is specified, output is written to standard output.

output-encoding

--output-encoding = VALUE
The value of the encoding attribute in the output document. Valid values are names in the IANA character set registry. Default value is UTF-8.

output-indent

--output-indent = true|false
If true, the output will be indented according to its hierarchic structure. If false, there will be no hierarchical indentation. Default is false. Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.
**output-method**

```plaintext
--output-method = xml|html|xhtml|text
```

Specifies the output format. Default value is xml.

**param [p]**

```plaintext
--p | --param = KEY:VALUE
```

**XQuery**

Specifies the value of an external parameter. An external parameter is declared in the XQuery document with the `declare variable` declaration followed by a variable name and then the `external` keyword followed by the trailing semi-colon. For example:

```plaintext
declare variable $foo as xs:string external;
```

The `external` keyword `$foo` becomes an external parameter, the value of which is passed at runtime from an external source. The external parameter is given a value with the CLI command. For example:

```plaintext
--param=foo:'MyName'
```

In the description statement above, `KEY` is the external parameter name, `VALUE` is the value of the external parameter, given as an XPath expression. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the XQuery document. If multiple external parameters are passed values on the CLI, each must be given a separate `--param` option. Double quotes must be used if the XPath expression contains spaces.

**XSLT**

Specifies a global stylesheet parameter. `KEY` is the parameter name, `VALUE` is an XPath expression that provides the parameter value. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the stylesheet. If multiple parameters are used, the `--param` switch must be used before each parameter. Double quotes must be used around the XPath expression if it contains a space—whether the space is in the XPath expression itself or in a string literal in the expression. For example:

```plaintext
raptorxml xslt --input=c:\Test.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --param=date://node[1]/@att1 --p=title:'stringwithoutspace' --param=title:"'string with spaces'" --p=amount:456 c:\Test.xslt
```

**xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings**

```plaintext
--xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false
```

If true, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is false.

**xquery-version**

```plaintext
--xquery-version = 1|1.0|3|3.0|3.1
```

Specifies whether the XQuery processor should use XQuery 1.0 or XQuery 3.0. Default value is 3.1.

**XML Schema and XML instance**

**load-xml-with-psvi**
--load-xml-with-psvi = true|false
Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation information for them. Default is: true.

schema-imports

--schema-imports = load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only

Specifies the behavior of `xs:import` elements, each of which has an optional namespace attribute and an optional `schemaLocation` attribute: `<import namespace="someNS" schemaLocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-preferring-schemalocation.

The behavior is as follows:

- **load-by-schemalocation**: The value of the `schemaLocation` attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of catalog mappings. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).
- **load-preferring-schemalocation**: If the `schemaLocation` attribute is present, it is used, taking account of catalog mappings. If no `schemaLocation` attribute is present, then the value of the namespace attribute is used via a catalog mapping. This is the default value.
- **load-by-namespace**: The value of the namespace attribute is used to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.
- **load-combining-both**: If either the namespace or `schemaLocation` attribute has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If no catalog mapping is present, the `schemaLocation` attribute is used.
- **license-namespace-only**: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

schema-location-hints

--schema-location-hints = load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore

Specifies the behavior of the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-by-schemalocation.

- The `load-by-schemalocation` value uses the URL of the schema location in the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.
- The `load-by-namespace` value takes the namespace part of `xsi:schemaLocation` and an empty string in the case of `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.
- If `load-combining-both` is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- If the option's value is ignore, then the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes are both ignored.

schema-mapping

--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace
If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the --schemalocation-hints or the --schema-imports option has a value of load-combining-both, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the prefer-schemalocation value refers to the URL mapping.) Default is prefer-schemalocation.

\textbf{\texttt{--xinclude = true|false}}

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is false. When false, XInclude's include elements are ignored.

\textit{Note:} Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.

\textbf{\texttt{--xml-mode = wf|id|valid}}

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: \texttt{wf=wellformed check}; \texttt{id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks}; \texttt{valid=validation}. Default value is \texttt{wf}. Note that a value of \texttt{valid} requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

\textbf{\texttt{--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid}}

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: \texttt{wf=wellformed check}; \texttt{id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks}; \texttt{valid=validation}. Default value is \texttt{wf}. Note that a value of \texttt{valid} requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

\textbf{\texttt{--xml-validation-error-as-warning = true|false}}

If \texttt{true}, treats validation errors as warnings. If errors are treated as warnings, additional processing, such as XSLT transformations, will continue regardless of errors. Default is \texttt{false}.

\textbf{\texttt{--xsd = FILE}}

Specifies one or more XML Schema documents to use for the validation of XML instance documents. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one schema document.

\textbf{\texttt{--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect}}

Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is \texttt{1.0}. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is 1.0-compatible is not 1.1-compatible. The \texttt{detect} option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the \texttt{vc:minVersion} attribute of the document's \texttt{<xs:schema>} element. If the value of the \texttt{vc:minVersion} attribute is 1.1, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the \texttt{vc:minVersion} attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.
Catalogs and global resources

- **catalog**
  ```
  --catalog = FILE
  ```
  Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

- **user-catalog**
  ```
  --user-catalog = FILE
  ```
  Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

- **enable-globalresources**
  ```
  --enable-globalresources = true|false
  ```
  Enables global resources. Default value is `false`.
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **globalresourceconfig [gc]**
  ```
  --gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
  ```
  Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

- **globalresourcefile [gr]**
  ```
  --gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
  ```
  Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Extensions

These options define the handling of special extension functions that are available in a number of Enterprise-level Altova products (such as XMLSpy Enterprise Edition). Their use is described in the user manuals of these products.

- **chartext-disable**
  ```
  --chartext-disable = true|false
  ```
  Disables chart extensions. Default value is `false`.
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **dotnetext-disable**
  ```
  --dotnetext-disable = true|false
  ```
  Disables .NET extensions. Default value is `false`.
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **jvm-location**
  ```
  --jvm-location = FILE
  ```
  `FILE` specifies the location of the Java Virtual Machine (DLL on Windows, shared object on Linux).
The JVM is needed if you use Java extension functions in your XSLT/XQuery code. Default is false.

**Command Line Interface (CLI)**

### javaext-barcode-location

```
--javaext-barcode-location = FILE
```

Specifies the path to the folder that contains the barcode extension file AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar. The path must be given in one of the following forms:

- A file URI, for example: `--javaext-barcode-location="file:///C:/Program Files/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/jar/"
- A Windows path with backslashes escaped, for example: `--javaext-barcode-location="C:\\Program Files\\Altova\\RaptorXMLServer2021\\etc\\jar\\"

### javaext-disable

```
--javaext-disable = true|false
```

Disables Java extensions. Default value is false. **Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

### Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

#### error-format

```
--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
```

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

#### error-limit

```
--error-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

#### info-limit

```
--info-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

#### help

```
--help
```

Displays help text for the command. For example, `valany --h`. (Alternatively the `help` command can be used with an argument. For example: `help valany`.)

#### log-output

```
--log-output = FILE
```

Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.
network-timeout

\[-network-timeout = VALUE\]
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

verbose

\[-verbose = true|false\]
A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

verbose-output

\[-verbose-output = FILE\]
Writes verbose output to FILE.

version

\[-version\]
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

warning-limit

\[-warning-limit = N | unlimited\]
Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

4.3.2 xqueryupdate

The xqueryupdate command takes an XQuery file as its single argument and executes it with an optional input file to produce an updated output file. The input and output files are specified as options.

raptorxml xqueryupdate [options] XQuery-File

- The argument XQuery-File is the path and name of the XQuery file to be executed.
- You can specify whether XQuery Update 1.0 or 3.0 should be used. By default XQuery Update 3.0 is used.

Examples

Examples of the xqueryupdate command:

- raptorxml xqueryupdate --output=c:\Output.xml c:\TestQuery.xq
- raptorxml xqueryupdate --input=c:\Input.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --param=company:"Altova" --p=date:"2006-01-01" c:\TestQuery.xq
- raptorxml xqueryupdate --input=c:\Input.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --param=source:"doc( 'c:\test\books.xml' )//book " c:\TestQuery.xq
```
- raptorxml xqueryupdate --output=c:\Output.xml --omit-xml-declaration=false --output-encoding=ASCII c:\TestQuery.xq
```

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotiation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotiation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

XQuery Update Processing

indent-characters

```
--indent-characters = VALUE
```

Specifies the character string to be used as indentation.

input

```
--input = FILE
```

The URL of the XML file to be transformed.

omit-xml-declaration

```
--omit-xml-declaration = true|false
```

Serialization option to specify whether the XML declaration should be omitted from the output or not. If true, there will be no XML declaration in the output document. If false, an XML declaration will be included. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.
output, xsltoutput

`output = FILE, xsltoutput = FILE`

The URL of the primary-output file. For example, in the case of multiple-file HTML output, the primary-output file will be the location of the entry point HTML file. Additional output files, such as generated image files, are reported as `xslt-additional-output-files`. If no `--output` or `--xsltoutput` option is specified, output is written to standard output.

output-encoding

`--output-encoding = VALUE`

The value of the encoding attribute in the output document. Valid values are names in the IANA character set registry. Default value is UTF-8.

output-indent

`--output-indent = true|false`

If true, the output will be indented according to its hierarchic structure. If false, there will be no hierarchical indentation. Default is false. Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

output-method

`--output-method = xml|html|xhtml|text`

Specifies the output format. Default value is xml.

param [p]

`--p | --param = KEY:VALUE`

[XQuery]

Specifies the value of an external parameter. An external parameter is declared in the XQuery document with the `declare variable` declaration followed by a variable name and then the external keyword followed by the trailing semi-colon. For example:

```
declare variable $foo as xs:string external;
```

The external keyword $foo becomes an external parameter, the value of which is passed at runtime from an external source. The external parameter is given a value with the CLI command. For example:

```
--param=foo:'MyName'
```

In the description statement above, `KEY` is the external parameter name, `VALUE` is the value of the external parameter, given as an XPath expression. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the XQuery document. If multiple external parameters are passed values on the CLI, each must be given a separate `--param` option. Double quotes must be used if the XPath expression contains spaces.

[XSLT]

Specifies a global stylesheet parameter. `KEY` is the parameter name, `VALUE` is an XPath expression that provides the parameter value. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the stylesheet. If multiple parameters are used, the `--param` switch must be used before each parameter. Double quotes must be used around the XPath expression if it contains a space—whether the space is in the XPath expression itself or in a string literal in the expression. For example:
raptorxml xslt --input=c:\Test.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --
param=date://node[1]/@att1 --p=title:'stringwithoutspace' --
param=title:'''string with spaces'" --p=amount:456 c:\Test.xslt

**xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings**

```
--xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false
```

If true, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is false.

**xquery-update-version**

```
--xquery-update-version = 1|1.0|3|3.0|
```

Specifies whether the XQuery processor should use XQuery Update Facility 1.0 or XQuery Update Facility 3.0. Default value is 3.

**keep-formatting**

```
--keep-formatting = true|false
```

Keeps the formatting of the target document to the maximum extent that this is possible. Default is: true.

**updated-xml**

```
--updated-xml = discard|writeback|asmainresult
```

Specifies how the updated XML file should be handled. The updates can be either:

- discarded and not written to file (discard)
- written back to the input XML file that is specified with the --input option (writeback)
- saved either to standard output or to the location specified in the --output option (if this is defined)

Default is: discard.

**XML Schema and XML instance**

**load-xml-with-psvi**

```
--load-xml-with-psvi = true|false
```

Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation information for them. Default is: true.

**schema-imports**

```
--schema-imports = load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only
```

Specifies the behavior of xs:import elements, each of which has an optional namespace attribute and an optional schemalocation attribute: `<import namespace="someNS" schemalocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-preferring-schemalocation.

The behavior is as follows:
• **load-by-schemalocation**: The value of the `schemaLocation` attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of catalog mappings. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).

• **load-preferring-schemalocation**: If the `schemaLocation` attribute is present, it is used, taking account of catalog mappings. If no `schemaLocation` attribute is present, then the value of the namespace attribute is used via a catalog mapping. This is the default value.

• **load-by-namespace**: The value of the namespace attribute is used to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.

• **load-combining-both**: If either the namespace or `schemaLocation` attribute has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the `--schema-mapping` option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If no catalog mapping is present, the `schemaLocation` attribute is used.

• **license-namespace-only**: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

### schemalocation-hints

---

**--schemalocation-hints =** `load-by-schemalocation` | `load-by-namespace` | `load-combining-both` | `ignore`

Specifies the behavior of the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: `load-by-schemalocation`.

• The `load-by-schemalocation` value uses the URL of the schema location in the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.

• The `load-by-namespace` value takes the namespace part of `xsi:schemaLocation` and an empty string in the case of `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.

• If `load-combining-both` is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the `--schema-mapping` option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.

• If the option's value is `ignore`, then the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes are both ignored.

### schema-mapping

---

**--schema-mapping =** `prefer-schemalocation` | `prefer-namespace`

If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the `--schemalocation-hints` or the `--schema-imports` option has a value of `load-combining-both`, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the `prefer-schemalocation` value refers to the URL mapping.) Default is `prefer-schemalocation`.

### xinclude

---

**--xinclude =** `true`|`false`

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is `false`. When `false`, XInclude's `include` elements are ignored.

**Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.
xml-mode

```
--xml-mode = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: \textit{wf}=wellformed check; \textit{id}=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; \textit{valid}=validation. Default value is \textit{wf}. Note that a value of \textit{valid} requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

xml-mode-for-schemas

```
--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: \textit{wf}=wellformed check; \textit{id}=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; \textit{valid}=validation. Default value is \textit{wf}. Note that a value of \textit{valid} requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

xml-validation-error-as-warning

```
--xml-validation-error-as-warning = true|false
```

If \textit{true}, treats validation errors as warnings. If errors are treated as warnings, additional processing, such as XSLT transformations, will continue regardless of errors. Default is \textit{false}.

xsd

```
--xsd = FILE
```

Specifies one or more XML Schema documents to use for the validation of XML instance documents. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one schema document.

xsd-version

```
--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect
```

Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is 1.0. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is 1.0-compatible is not 1.1-compatible. The \textit{detect} option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the \texttt{vc:minVersion} attribute of the document's \texttt{<xs:schema> element. If the value of the @vc:minVersion attribute is 1.1, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the @vc:minVersion attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.

Catalogs and global resources

catalog

```
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (\texttt{<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml}). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

user-catalog

```
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**--enable-globalresources**

```
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE**

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

**--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE**

Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

**Extensions**

These options define the handling of special extension functions that are available in a number of Enterprise-level Altova products (such as XMLSpy Enterprise Edition). Their use is described in the user manuals of these products.

**--chartext-disable**

```
--chartext-disable = true|false
```

Disables chart extensions. Default value is false.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**--dotnetext-disable**

```
--dotnetext-disable = true|false
```

Disables .NET extensions. Default value is false.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**--jvm-location**

```
--jvm-location = FILE
```

FILE specifies the location of the Java Virtual Machine (DLL on Windows, shared object on Linux). The JVM is needed if you use Java extension functions in your XSLT/XQuery code. Default is false.

**--javaext-barcode-location**

```
--javaext-barcode-location = FILE
```

Specifies the path to the folder that contains the barcode extension file AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar. The path must be given in one of the following forms:

- A file URI, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="file:///C:/Program Files/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/jar/
- A Windows path with backslashes escaped, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="C:\\Program Files\\Altova\\RaptorXMLServer2021\\etc\\jar\\"
**javaext-disable**

`--javaext-disable = true|false`

Disables Java extensions. Default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**Messages, errors, help, timeout, version**

**error-format**

`--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml`

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is `text`. The other options generate XML formats, with `longxml` generating more detail.

**error-limit**

`--error-limit = N | unlimited`

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is `100`. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

**info-limit**

`--info-limit = N | unlimited`

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is `100`.

**help**

`--help`

Displays help text for the command. For example, `valany --h`. (Alternatively the `help` command can be used with an argument. For example: `help valany`.)

**log-output**

`--log-output = FILE`

Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

**network-timeout**

`--network-timeout = VALUE`

Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: `40`.

**verbose**

`--verbose = true|false`

A value of `true` enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**verbose-output**

`--verbose-output = FILE`
\begin{quote}
W*rites verbose output to \texttt{FILE}.
\end{quote}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{version}
  \begin{quote}
  \texttt{--version}
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place \texttt{--version} before the command.
  \end{quote}
\item \texttt{warning-limit}
  \begin{quote}
  \texttt{--warning-limit = \ N | unlimited}
  Specifies the warning limit in the range \texttt{1-65535} or \texttt{unlimited}. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is \texttt{100}.
  \end{quote}
\end{itemize}

\section*{4.3.3 \texttt{valxquery}}

The \texttt{valxquery} command takes an XQuery file as its single argument and validates it.

\begin{quote}
raptorxml valxquery [options] XQuery-File
\end{quote}

- The \texttt{XQuery-File} argument is the path and name of the XQuery file to be validated.

\section*{Examples}

Examples of the \texttt{valxquery} command:

- \texttt{raptorxml valxquery c:\Test.xquery}
- \texttt{raptorxml valxquery --xquery-version=1 c:\Test.xquery}

\begin{itemize}
\item Casing and slashes on the command line
  \texttt{RaptorXML} (and \texttt{RaptorXMLServer} for administration commands) on Windows
  \texttt{raptorxml} (and \texttt{raptorxmlserver} for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Note that lowercase (\texttt{raptorxml} and \texttt{raptorxmlserver}) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (\texttt{RaptorXML}) works only on Windows and Mac.
  \item Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.
  \end{itemize}
\item Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems
  On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quo**tation** mark (for example, "C:\My directory") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quot**a**tion mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \"\. To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\"
Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is `TRUE`. Use the `--h, --help` option to display information about the command.

XQuery processing

- `omit-xml-declaration`

  `--omit-xml-declaration = true|false`  
  Serialization option to specify whether the XML declaration should be omitted from the output or not. If `true`, there will be no XML declaration in the output document. If `false`, an XML declaration will be included. Default value is `false`.  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- `xquery-version`

  `--xquery-version = 1|1.0|3|3.0|3.1`  
  Specifies whether the XQuery processor should use XQuery 1.0 or XQuery 3.0. Default value is 3.1.

XML Schema and XML instance

- `load-xml-with-psvi`

  `--load-xml-with-psvi = true|false`  
  Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation information for them. Default is: `true`.

- `schema-imports`

  `--schema-imports = load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only`  
  Specifies the behaviour of `xs:import` elements, each of which has an optional `namespace` attribute and an optional `schemaLocation` attribute: `<import namespace="someNS" schemaLocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: `load-preferring-schemalocation`. The behavior is as follows:

  - `load-by-schemalocation`: The value of the `schemaLocation` attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of `catalog mappings`. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).
  - `load-preferring-schemalocation`: If the `schemaLocation` attribute is present, it is used, taking account of `catalog mappings`. If no `schemaLocation` attribute is present, then the value of the `namespace` attribute is used via a `catalog mapping`. This is the **default value**.
• load-by-namespace: The value of the namespace attribute is used to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.
• load-combining-both: If either the namespace or schemaLocation attribute has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If no catalog mapping is present, the schemaLocation attribute is used.
• license-namespace-only: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

**schemalocation-hints**

--schemalocation-hints = load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore

Specifies the behavior of the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-by-schemalocation.

• The load-by-schemalocation value uses the URL of the schema location in the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.
• The load-by-namespace value takes the namespace part of xsi:schemaLocation and an empty string in the case of xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.
• If load-combining-both is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
• If the option's value is ignore, then the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes are both ignored.

**schema-mapping**

--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace

If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the --schemalocation-hints option has a value of load-combining-both, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the prefer-schemalocation value refers to the URL mapping).) Default is prefer-schemalocation.

**xinclude**

--xinclude = true|false

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is false. When false, XInclude's include elements are ignored.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**xml-mode**

--xml-mode = wf|id|valid

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: wf=wellformed check; id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.
xml-mode-for-schemas

```
--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: wf=wellformed check; id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings

```
--xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false
```

If true, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is false.

xsd-version

```
--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect
```

Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is 1.0. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is 1.0-compatible is not 1.1-compatible. The detect option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the vc:minVersion attribute of the document's <xs:schema> element. If the value of the @vc:minVersion attribute is 1.1, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the @vc:minVersion attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.

Catalogs and global resources

catalog

```
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (installation-folder\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

user-catalog

```
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

enable-globalresources

```
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

globalresourceconfig [gc]

```
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
```

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).
globalresourcefile [gr]

--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Extensions

These options define the handling of special extension functions that are available in a number of Enterprise-level Altova products (such as XMLSpy Enterprise Edition). Their use is described in the user manuals of these products.

chartext-disable

--chartext-disable = true|false
Disables chart extensions. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

dotnetext-disable

--dotnetext-disable = true|false
Disables .NET extensions. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

jvm-location

--jvm-location = FILE
FILE specifies the location of the Java Virtual Machine (DLL on Windows, shared object on Linux). The JVM is needed if you use Java extension functions in your XSLT/XQuery code. Default is false.

javaext-barcode-location

--javaext-barcode-location = FILE
Specifies the path to the folder that contains the barcode extension file AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar. The path must be given in one of the following forms:

- A file URL, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="file:///C:/Program Files/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/jar/
- A Windows path with backslashes escaped, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="C:\\Program Files\\Altova\\RaptorXMLServer2021\\etc\\jar\\"

javaext-disable

--javaext-disable = true|false
Disables Java extensions. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

error-format

--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

- error-limit
  --error-limit = N | unlimited
  Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

- info-limit
  --info-limit = N | unlimited
  Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

- help
  --help
  Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

- log-output
  --log-output = FILE
  Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

- network-timeout
  --network-timeout = VALUE
  Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

- verbose
  --verbose = true|false
  A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- verbose-output
  --verbose-output = FILE
  Writes verbose output to FILE.

- version
  --version
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

- warning-limit
  --warning-limit = N | unlimited
  Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is
reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

4.3.4 valxqueryupdate

The valxqueryupdate command takes an XQuery file as its single argument and validates it.

    raptorxml valxqueryupdate [options] XQuery-File

- The XQuery-File argument is the path and name of the XQuery file to be validated.

Examples

Examples of the valxqueryupdate command:

- raptorxml valxqueryupdate c:\Test.xqu
- raptorxml valxqueryupdate --xquery-update-version=1 c:\Test.xqu

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.

* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence " stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\ 
".

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.
XQuery processing

omit-xml-declaration

```
--omit-xml-declaration = [true|false]
```

Serialization option to specify whether the XML declaration should be omitted from the output or not. If `true`, there will be no XML declaration in the output document. If `false`, an XML declaration will be included. Default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

---

xquery-update-version

```
--xquery-update-version = [1|1.0|3|3.0]
```

Specifies whether the XQuery processor should use XQuery Update Facility 1.0 or XQuery Update Facility 3.0. Default value is `3`.

---

XML Schema and XML instance

load-xml-with-psvi

```
--load-xml-with-psvi = [true|false]
```

Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation information for them. Default is: `true`.

---

schema-imports

```
--schema-imports = [load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only]
```

Specifies the behaviour of `xs:import` elements, each of which has an optional `namespace` attribute and an optional `schemaLocation` attribute: `<import namespace="someNS" schemaLocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: `load-preferring-schemalocation`.

The behavior is as follows:

- **load-by-schemalocation:** The value of the `schemaLocation` attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of *catalog mappings*. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).
- **load-preferring-schemalocation:** If the `schemaLocation` attribute is present, it is used, taking account of *catalog mappings*. If no `schemaLocation` attribute is present, then the value of the `namespace` attribute is used via a *catalog mapping*. This is the *default value*.
- **load-by-namespace:** The value of the `namespace` attribute is used to locate the schema via a *catalog mapping*.
- **load-combining-both:** If either the `namespace` or `schemaLocation` attribute has a *catalog mapping*, then the mapping is used. If both have *catalog mappings*, then the value of the `--schema-mapping` option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If no *catalog mapping* is present, the `schemaLocation` attribute is used.
- **license-namespace-only:** The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

---

schemalocation-hints

```
--schemalocation-hints = [load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore]
```

---
Specifies the behavior of the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: `load-by-schemalocation`.

- The `load-by-schemalocation` value uses the URL of the schema location in the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.
- The `load-by-namespace` value takes the namespace part of `xsi:schemaLocation` and an empty string in the case of `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.
- If `load-combining-both` is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the value of the `--schema-mapping` option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- If the option's value is `ignore`, then the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes are both ignored.

### schema-mapping

```
--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace
```

If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the `--schemalocation-hints` or the `--schema-imports` option has a value of `load-combining-both`, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the `prefer-schemalocation` value refers to the URL mapping).) Default is `prefer-schemalocation`.

### xinclude

```
--xinclude = true|false
```

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is `false`. When `false`, XInclude's `include` elements are ignored.

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### xml-mode

```
--xml-mode = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: `wf`=wellformed check; `id`=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; `valid`=validation. Default value is `wf`. Note that a value of `valid` requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

### xml-mode-for-schemas

```
--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: `wf`=wellformed check; `id`=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; `valid`=validation. Default value is `wf`. Note that a value of `valid` requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

### xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings

```
--xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false
```


If true, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is false.

\textbf{xsd-version}

\texttt{--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect}

Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is 1.0. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is 1.0-compatible is not 1.1-compatible. The detect option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the vc:minVersion attribute of the document's \texttt{<xs:schema>} element. If the value of the \texttt{@vc:minVersion} attribute is 1.1, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the \texttt{@vc:minVersion} attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.

\textbf{Catalogs and global resources}

\textbf{catalog}

\texttt{--catalog = FILE}

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (\texttt{<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml}). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

\textbf{user-catalog}

\texttt{--user-catalog = FILE}

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

\textbf{enable-globalresources}

\texttt{--enable-globalresources = true|false}

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

\textit{Note}: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

\textbf{globalresourceconfig [gc]}

\texttt{--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE}

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

\textbf{globalresourcefile [gr]}

\texttt{--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE}

Specifies the \texttt{global resource file} (and enables global resources).

\textbf{Extensions}

These options define the handling of special extension functions that are available in a number of Enterprise-level Altova products (such as XMLSpy Enterprise Edition). Their use is described in the user manuals of these products.
chartext-disable

```--chartext-disable = true|false```
Disables chart extensions. Default value is `false`.

*Note*: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

dotnetext-disable

```--dotnetext-disable = true|false```
Disables .NET extensions. Default value is `false`.

*Note*: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

ejm-location

```--jvm-location = FILE```

`FILE` specifies the location of the Java Virtual Machine (DLL on Windows, shared object on Linux). The JVM is needed if you use Java extension functions in your XSLT/XQuery code. Default is `false`.

javaext-barcode-location

```--javaext-barcode-location = FILE```

Specifies the path to the folder that contains the barcode extension file.

AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar. The path must be given in one of the following forms:

- A file URI, for example: `--javaext-barcode-location=file:///C:/Program Files/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/jar/`
- A Windows path with backslashes escaped, for example: `--javaext-barcode-location=C:\Program Files\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\jar\`

javaext-disable

```--javaext-disable = true|false```
Disables Java extensions. Default value is `false`.

*Note*: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**Messages, errors, help, timeout, version**

error-format

```--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml```

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is `text`. The other options generate XML formats, with `longxml` generating more detail.

error-limit

```--error-limit = N | unlimited```

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or `unlimited`. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

info-limit

```--info-limit = N | unlimited```
Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if
the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

**** help

--help
Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command
can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

**** log-output

--log-output = FILE
Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output
location.

**** network-timeout

--network-timeout = VALUE
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

**** verbose

--verbose = true|false
A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**** verbose-output

--verbose-output = FILE
Writes verbose output to FILE.

**** version

--version
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the
command.

**** warning-limit

--warning-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is
reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.
4.4 XSLT Commands

The XSLT commands are:

- `xslt`: for transforming XML documents with an XSLT document
- `valxslt`: for validating XSLT documents

4.4.1 xslt

The `xslt` command takes an XSLT file as its single argument and uses it to transform an input XML file to produce an output file. The input and output files are specified as `options`.

```
raptorxml xslt [options] XSLT-File
```

- The `XSLT-File` argument is the path and name of the XSLT file to use for the transformation.
- An input XML file (`--input`) or a named template entry point (`--template.entry-point`) is required.
- To transform JSON data, load the JSON data via the `json-doc($path)` function of XPath 3.1, and use the `xslt` command's `--initial-match-selection` option. See the last item in the examples given below.
- If no `--output` option is specified, output is written to standard output. You can use XSLT 1.0, 2.0, or 3.0. By default XSLT 3.0 is used.

Examples

Examples of the `xslt` command:

- `raptorxml xslt --input=c:\Test.xml --output=c:\Output.xml c:\Test.xslt`
- `raptorxml xslt --template-entry-point=StartTemplate --output=c:\Output.xml c:\Test.xslt`
- `raptorxml xslt --input=c:\Test.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --param=date://node[1]/@att1 --p=title:'stringwithoutspace' --param=title:"'string with spaces'" --p=amount:456 c:\Test.xslt`
- `raptorxml xslt --initial-match-selection=json-doc('MyData.json', map{'liberal':true()}) --output=c:\MyData.xml c:\Test.xslt`

Casing and slashes on the command line

- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (`RaptorXML`) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder
names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, “C:\My directory\”) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\"

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

- XSLT processing
  - indent-characters
    --indent-characters = VALUE
    Specifies the character string to be used as indentation.

  - function-param
    --function-param = VALUE
    Specifies the functions that will be passed to the initial function. To specify more than one function, use the option multiple times. Note, however, that order is important.

  - global-context-item
    --global-context-item = VALUE
    Specifies the context item that is to be used to evaluate global variables.

  - initial-function
    --initial-function = VALUE
    The name of a function that is to be executed as the entry point of the transformation.

  - initial-match-selection
    --initial-match-selection = VALUE
    Specifies the value (sequence) of the initial match selection.

  - initial-mode, template-mode
    --initial-mode, --template-mode = VALUE
    Specifies the template mode to use for the transformation.

  - initial-template, template-entry-point
    --initial-template, --template-entry-point = VALUE
Gives the name of a named template in the XSLT stylesheet that is the entry point of the transformation.

**input**

`--input = FILE`

The URL of the XML file to be transformed.

**output, xsltoutput**

`output = FILE, xsltoutput = FILE`

The URL of the primary-output file. For example, in the case of multiple-file HTML output, the primary-output file will be the location of the entry point HTML file. Additional output files, such as generated image files, are reported as `xslt-additional-output-files`. If no `--output` or `--xsltoutput` option is specified, output is written to standard output.

**param [p]**

`--p | --param = KEY:VALUE`

**XQuery**

Specifies the value of an external parameter. An external parameter is declared in the XQuery document with the `declare variable` declaration followed by a variable name and then the `external` keyword followed by the trailing semi-colon. For example:

```
declare variable $foo as xs:string external;
```

The `external` keyword `$foo` becomes an external parameter, the value of which is passed at runtime from an external source. The external parameter is given a value with the CLI command. For example:

```
--param=foo:'MyName'
```

In the description statement above, `KEY` is the external parameter name, `VALUE` is the value of the external parameter, given as an XPath expression. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the XQuery document. If multiple external parameters are passed values on the CLI, each must be given a separate `--param` option. Double quotes must be used if the XPath expression contains spaces.

**XSLT**

Specifies a global stylesheet parameter. `KEY` is the parameter name, `VALUE` is an XPath expression that provides the parameter value. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the stylesheet. If multiple parameters are used, the `--param` switch must be used before each parameter. Double quotes must be used around the XPath expression if it contains a space—whether the space is in the XPath expression itself or in a string literal in the expression. For example:

```
raptorxml xslt --input=c:\Test.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --param=date://node[1]/@att1 --param=title:'stringwithoutspace' --param=title:'''string with spaces''' --param=amount:456 c:\Test.xslt
```

**streaming-serialization-enabled**

`--streaming-serialization-enabled = true|false`

Enables streaming serialization. Default value is `true`.  
**Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.
Command Line Interface (CLI)

XSLT Commands

- template-param

  ```
  --template-param = KEY:VALUE
  ```

  Specifies parameters that will be passed to the initial template only (and not to any descending
  template call). To specify multiple parameters, use the option once for each parameter.

- tunnel-param

  ```
  --tunnel-param = KEY:VALUE
  ```

  Specifies parameters that will be passed to the initial template and to descending template calls. To
  specify multiple parameters, use the option once for each parameter.

- xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings

  ```
  --xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false
  ```

  If `true`, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas
  an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is
  `false`.

- xslt-version

  ```
  --xslt-version = 1|1.0|2|2.0|3|3.0|3.1
  ```

  Specifies whether the XSLT processor should use XSLT 1.0, XSLT 2.0, or XSLT 3.0. Default value is
  3.

XML Schema and XML instance

- load-xml-with-psvi

  ```
  --load-xml-with-psvi = true|false
  ```

  Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation information for them.
  Default is: `true`.

- schema-imports

  ```
  --schema-imports = load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-
  by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only
  ```

  Specifies the behaviour of `xs:import` elements, each of which has an optional `namespace` attribute
  and an optional `schemalocation` attribute: `<import namespace="someNS"
  schemalocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just
  license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used
  to find it. Default: `load-preferring-schemalocation`. The behavior is as follows:

  - `load-by-schemalocation`: The value of the `schemalocation` attribute is used to locate the
    schema, taking account of catalog mappings. If the `namespace` attribute is present, the
    namespace is imported (licensed).
  - `load-preferring-schemalocation`: If the `schemalocation` attribute is present, it is used,
    taking account of catalog mappings. If no `schemalocation` attribute is present, then the
    value of the `namespace` attribute is used via a catalog mapping. This is the default value.
  - `load-by-namespace`: The value of the `namespace` attribute is used to locate the schema via a
catalog mapping.

- load-combining-both: If either the namespace or schemaLocation attribute has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If no catalog mapping is present, the schemaLocation attribute is used.
- license-namespace-only: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

v schemalocation-hints

--schemalocation-hints = load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore

Specifies the behavior of the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-by-schemalocation.

- The load-by-schemalocation value uses the URL of the schema location in the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.
- The load-by-namespace value takes the namespace part of xsi:schemaLocation and an empty string in the case of xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.
- If load-combining-both is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- If the option’s value is ignore, then the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes are both ignored.

v schema-mapping

--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace

If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the --schemalocation-hints or the --schema-imports option has a value of load-combining-both, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the prefer-schemalocation value refers to the URL mapping).) Default is prefer-schemalocation.

v xinclude

--xinclude = true|false

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is false. When false, XInclude’s include elements are ignored.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

v xml-mode

--xml-mode = wf|id|valid

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: wf=wellformed check; id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.
xml-mode-for-schemas

```bash
--xml-mode-for-schemas = [wf|id|valid]
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: `wf`=wellformed check; `id`=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; `valid`=validation. Default value is `wf`. Note that a value of `valid` requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

xml-validation-error-as-warning

```bash
--xml-validation-error-as-warning = [true|false]
```

If `true`, treats validation errors as warnings. If errors are treated as warnings, additional processing, such as XSLT transformations, will continue regardless of errors. Default is `false`.

xsd

```bash
--xsd = FILE
```

Specifies one or more XML Schema documents to use for the validation of XML instance documents. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one schema document.

text

```bash
--xsd-version = [1.0|1.1|detect]
```

Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is `1.0`. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is `1.0`-compatible is not `1.1`-compatible. The `detect` option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the `vc:minVersion` attribute of the document's `<xs:schema>` element. If the value of the `@vc:minVersion` attribute is `1.1`, the schema is detected as being version `1.1`. For any other value, or if the `@vc:minVersion` attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version `1.0`.

Catalogs and global resources

catalog

```bash
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, XML Catalogs for information about working with catalogs.

user-catalog

```bash
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs for information about working with catalogs.

enable-globalresources

```bash
--enable-globalresources = [true|false]
```

Enables global resources. Default value is `false`.

Note: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.
globalresourceconfig [gc]
   --gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
   Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

globalresourcefile [gr]
   --gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
   Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Extensions
These options define the handling of special extension functions that are available in a number of Enterprise-level Altova products (such as XMLSpy Enterprise Edition). Their use is described in the user manuals of these products.

 chartext-disable
   --chartext-disable = true|false
   Disables chart extensions. Default value is false.
   Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

 dotnetext-disable
   --dotnetext-disable = true|false
   Disables .NET extensions. Default value is false.
   Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

 jvm-location
   --jvm-location = FILE
   FILE specifies the location of the Java Virtual Machine (DLL on Windows, shared object on Linux).
   The JVM is needed if you use Java extension functions in your XSLT/XQuery code. Default is false.

 javaext-barcode-location
   --javaext-barcode-location = FILE
   Specifies the path to the folder that contains the barcode extension file AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar. The path must be given in one of the following forms:
   - A file URI, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="file:///C:/Program Files/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/jar/
   - A Windows path with backslashes escaped, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="C:\\Program Files\\Altova\\RaptorXMLServer2021\\etc\\jar\\"

 javaext-disable
   --javaext-disable = true|false
   Disables Java extensions. Default value is false.
   Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

 Messages, errors, help, timeout, version
error-format

```command
--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
```

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

error-limit

```command
--error-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

info-limit

```command
--info-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

help

```command
--help
```

Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

log-output

```command
--log-output = FILE
```

Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout

```command
--network-timeout = VALUE
```

Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

verbose

```command
--verbose = true|false
```

A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

verbose-output

```command
--verbose-output = FILE
```

Writes verbose output to FILE.

version

```command
--version
```

Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

warning-limit
--warning-limit = \texttt{N | unlimited}

Specifies the warning limit in the range \texttt{1-65535} or \texttt{unlimited}. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is \texttt{100}.

\section*{4.4.2 \texttt{valxslt}}

The \texttt{valxslt} command takes an XSLT file as its single argument and validates it.

\begin{verbatim}
 raptorxml valxslt [options] XSLT-File
\end{verbatim}

- The \texttt{XSLT-File} argument is the path and name of the XSLT file to be validated.
- Validation can be according to the XSLT 1.0, 2.0, or 3.0 specification. By default XSLT 3.0 is the specification used.

\section*{Examples}

Examples of the \texttt{valxslt} command:

- \texttt{raptorxml valxslt \texttt{c:\Test.xslt}}
- \texttt{raptorxml valxslt \texttt{--xslt-version=2 \texttt{c:\Test.xslt}}}

\section*{Casing and slashes on the command line}

\texttt{RaptorXML} (and \texttt{RaptorXMLServer} for administration commands) on \texttt{Windows}
\texttt{raptorxml} (and \texttt{raptorxmlserver} for administration commands) on \texttt{Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)}

* Note that lowercase (\texttt{raptorxml} and \texttt{raptorxmlserver}) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (\texttt{RaptorXML}) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

\section*{Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems}

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "\texttt{My File}". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "\texttt{C:\My directory}" ) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \texttt{\"} stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \texttt{\"}. To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "\texttt{C:\My Directory\}".

\section*{Options}

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: \texttt{--option=value}. 
Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the \texttt{--h, --help} option to display information about the command.

\textbf{XSLT processing}

\textbf{initial-mode, template-mode}

\begin{verbatim}
--initial-mode, --template-mode = VALUE
\end{verbatim}

Specifies the template mode to use for the transformation.

\textbf{initial-template, template-entry-point}

\begin{verbatim}
--initial-template, --template-entry-point = VALUE
\end{verbatim}

Gives the name of a named template in the XSLT stylesheet that is the entry point of the transformation.

\textbf{xslt-version}

\begin{verbatim}
--xslt-version = 1|1.0|2|2.0|3|3.0|3.1
\end{verbatim}

Specifies whether the XSLT processor should use XSLT 1.0, XSLT 2.0, or XSLT 3.0. Default value is 3.

\textbf{XML Schema and XML instance}

\textbf{load-xml-with-psvi}

\begin{verbatim}
--load-xml-with-psvi = true|false
\end{verbatim}

Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation information for them. Default is: true.

\textbf{schema-imports}

\begin{verbatim}
--schema-imports = load-by-schemalocation | load-prefering-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only
\end{verbatim}

Specifies the behaviour of \texttt{xs:import} elements, each of which has an optional \texttt{namespace} attribute and an optional \texttt{schemaLocation} attribute: \texttt{<import namespace="someNS" schemaLocation="someURL">}. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-prefering-schemalocation.

The behavior is as follows:

- \texttt{load-by-schemalocation}: The value of the \texttt{schemaLocation} attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of \texttt{catalog mappings}. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).
- \texttt{load-prefering-schemalocation}: If the \texttt{schemaLocation} attribute is present, it is used, taking account of \texttt{catalog mappings}. If no \texttt{schemaLocation} attribute is present, then the value of the namespace attribute is used via a \texttt{catalog mapping}. This is the \texttt{default value}.
- \texttt{load-by-namespace}: The value of the \texttt{namespace} attribute is used to locate the schema via a \texttt{catalog mapping}.
- \texttt{load-combining-both}: If either the \texttt{namespace} or \texttt{schemaLocation} attribute has a \texttt{catalog mapping}, then the mapping is used. If both have \texttt{catalog mappings}, then the value of the \texttt{--schema-mapping} option (\texttt{XML/XSD option}) decides which mapping is used. If no \texttt{catalog mapping} exists, then the last \texttt{catalog mapping} is used.
mapping is present, the schemaLocation attribute is used.

- license-namespace-only: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

**schemalocation-hints**

```
--schemalocation-hints = load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore
```

Specifies the behavior of the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: load-by-schemalocation.

- The load-by-schemalocation value uses the URL of the schema location in the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.
- The load-by-namespace value takes the namespace part of xsi:schemaLocation and an empty string in the case of xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.
- If load-combining-both is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the --schema-mapping option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- If the option's value is ignore, then the xsi:schemaLocation and xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attributes are both ignored.

**schema-mapping**

```
--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace
```

If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the --schemalocation-hints or the --schema-imports option has a value of load-combining-both, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the prefer-schemalocation value refers to the URL mapping).) Default is prefer-schemalocation.

**xinclude**

```
--xinclude = true|false
```

Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is false. When false, XInclude's include elements are ignored.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**xml-mode**

```
--xml-mode = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: wf=wellformed check; id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

**xml-mode-for-schemas**

```
--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid
```

Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: wf=wellformed check;
id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is \textit{wf}. Note that a value of valid requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

\section*{xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings}
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false}
\end{itemize}
If \texttt{true}, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is false.

\section*{xsd-version}
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect}
\end{itemize}
Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is 1.0. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is 1.0-compatible is not 1.1-compatible. The detect option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the @vc:minVersion attribute of the document's <xs:schema> element. If the value of the @vc:minVersion attribute is 1.1, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the @vc:minVersion attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.

\section*{Catalogs and global resources}
\subsection*{catalog}
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--catalog = FILE}
\end{itemize}
Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (\texttt{<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml}). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

\subsection*{user-catalog}
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--user-catalog = FILE}
\end{itemize}
Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

\subsection*{enable-globalresources}
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--enable-globalresources = true|false}
\end{itemize}
Enables global resources. Default value is false. \textit{Note:} Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.

\subsection*{globalresourceconfig [gc]}
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE}
\end{itemize}
Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

\subsection*{globalresourcefile [gr]}
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE}
\end{itemize}
Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).
Extensions

These options define the handling of special extension functions that are available in a number of Enterprise-level Altova products (such as XMLSpy Enterprise Edition). Their use is described in the user manuals of these products.

- **chartext-disable**
  
  ```
  --chartext-disable = true|false
  ```
  
  Disables chart extensions. Default value is `false`.
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **dotnetext-disable**
  
  ```
  --dotnetext-disable = true|false
  ```
  
  Disables .NET extensions. Default value is `false`.
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **jvm-location**
  
  ```
  --jvm-location = FILE
  ```
  
  FILE specifies the location of the Java Virtual Machine (DLL on Windows, shared object on Linux). The JVM is needed if you use Java extension functions in your XSLT/XQuery code. Default is `false`.

- **javaext-barcode-location**
  
  ```
  --javaext-barcode-location = FILE
  ```
  
  Specifies the path to the folder that contains the barcode extension file AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar. The path must be given in one of the following forms:
  
  - A file URI, for example: `--javaext-barcode-location="file:///C:/Program Files/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/jar/"
  - A Windows path with backslashes escaped, for example: `--javaext-barcode-location="C:\Program Files\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\jar\"`

- **javaext-disable**
  
  ```
  --javaext-disable = true|false
  ```
  
  Disables Java extensions. Default value is `false`.
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **Messages, errors, help, timeout, version**

  - **error-format**
    
    ```
    --error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
    ```
    
    Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is `text`. The other options generate XML formats, with `longxml` generating more detail.
---error-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

info-limit
---info-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

help
---help
Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

log-output
---log-output = FILE
Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout
---network-timeout = VALUE
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

verbose
---verbose = true|false
A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

verbose-output
---verbose-output = FILE
Writes verbose output to FILE.

version
---version
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

warning-limit
---warning-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.
4.5 JSON/Avro Commands

The JSON commands can be used to check the validity and well-formedness of JSON schema and instance documents. These commands are listed below and described in detail in the sub-sections of this section:

- **avroextractschema**: Extracts the Avro schema from an Avro binary file
- **valavro**: Validates the data in one or more Avro binaries against the respective Avro schema of each binary
- **valavrojson**: Validates one or more JSON data files against an Avro schema
- **valavroschema**: Validates an Avro schema against the Avro schema specification
- **valjsonschema**: Checks the validity of JSON schema documents
- **valjson**: Checks the validity of JSON documents
- **wfjson**: Checks the well-formedness of JSON documents.

4.5.1 avroextractschema

An Avro binary file contains an Avro data block preceded by the Avro schema that defines the structure of the data block. The avroextractschema command extracts the Avro schema from the Avro binary and serializes the Avro schema as JSON.

```
raptorxml avroextractschema [options] --avrooutput=AvroSchemaFile AvroBinaryFile
```

- The **AvroBinaryFile** argument specifies the Avro binary file from which the Avro schema is to be extracted.
- The **--avrooutput** option specifies the location of the extracted Avro schema.

**Example**

Example of the avroextractschema command:

```
raptorxml avroextractschema --avrooutput=c:\MyAvroSchema.avsc c:\MyAvroBinary.avro
```

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "c:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to
escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: "\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\ \".

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Processing

• output, avrooutput
  --output = FILE, --avrooutput = FILE
  Sets the location of the Avro output file.

• recurse
  --recurse = true|false
  Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip|zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.
  Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

Catalogs and global resources

• catalog
  --catalog = FILE
  Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

• user-catalog
  --user-catalog = FILE
  Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

• enable-globalresources
  --enable-globalresources = true|false
  Enables global resources. Default value is false.
  Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.
globalresourceconfig [gc]

```markdown
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
```
Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

globalresourcefile [gr]

```markdown
--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
```
Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

error-format

```markdown
--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
```
Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

error-limit

```markdown
--error-limit = N | unlimited
```
Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/ transformation.

info-limit

```markdown
--info-limit = N | unlimited
```
Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

help

```markdown
--help
```
Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

log-output

```markdown
--log-output = FILE
```
Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout

```markdown
--network-timeout = VALUE
```
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

verbose

```markdown
--verbose = true|false
```
A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.
4.5.2 valavro (avro)

The `valavro | avro` command validates the data block in one or more Avro binary files against the respective Avro schemas in each binary file.

```
raptorxml valavro | avro [options] AvroBinaryFile
```

- The `AvroBinaryFile` argument specifies one or more Avro binary files to validate. Specifically, the data block in each Avro binary file is validated against the Avro schema in that binary file.
- To validate multiple Avro binaries, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the `AvroBinaryFile` argument together with the `--listfile` option set to true (see the Options list below).

Examples

Examples of the `valavro` command:

- `raptorxml valavro c:\MyAvroBinary.avro`
- `raptorxml valavro c:\MyAvroBinary01.avro c:\MyAvroBinary02.avro`
- `raptorxml avro --listfile=true c:\MyFileList.txt`

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.
Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\\".

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is true. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Processing

listfile

--listfile = true|false

If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

recurse

--recurse = true|false

Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip\zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

Catalogs and global resources

catalog

--catalog = FILE

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs", for information about working with catalogs.
user-catalog

    --user-catalog = FILE

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

enable-globalresources

    --enable-globalresources = true|false

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

globalresourceconfig [gc]

    --gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

globalresourcefile [gr]

    --gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE

Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

error-format

    --error-format = text|shortxml|longxml

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

error-limit

    --error-limit = N | unlimited

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

info-limit

    --info-limit = N | unlimited

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

help

    --help

Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

log-output

    --log-output = FILE
Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

- network-timeout
  ```
  --network-timeout = VALUE
  ```
  Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

- verbose
  ```
  --verbose = [true|false]
  ```
  A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.
  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- verbose-output
  ```
  --verbose-output = FILE
  ```
  Writes verbose output to FILE.

- version
  ```
  --version
  ```
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

- warning-limit
  ```
  --warning-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

### 4.5.3 valavrojson (avrojson)

The `valavrojson` | `avrojson` command validates a JSON document against an Avro schema.

```
  raptorxml valavrojson | avrojson [options] --avroschema=AvroSchema JSONFile
```

- The `JSONFile` argument specifies the JSON document to validate.
- The `--avroschema` option specifies the Avro schema against which the JSON document is to be validated.
- To validate multiple JSON files, either: (i) list the files on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to validate in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the `JSONFile` argument together with the `--listfile` option set to true (see the Options list below).
Examples

Examples of the `valavrojson` command:

- `raptorxml valavrojson --avroschema=c:\MyAvroSchema.avsc c:\MyJSONDataFile.json`
- `raptorxml avrojson --avroschema=c:\MyAvroSchema.avsc c:\MyJSONDataFile.json`

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "c:\My directory") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\"

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is `TRUE`. Use the `--h, --help` option to display information about the command.

Processing

- **listfile**

  `--listfile = true|false`

  If `true`, treats the command's `InputFile` argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is `false`. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the `--listfile` option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **recurse**

  `--recurse = true|false`

  Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If `true`, the command's
InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip|zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.*xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**Catalogs and global resources**

- **Catalog**
  ```
  --catalog = FILE
  ```
  Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

- **User-Catalog**
  ```
  --user-catalog = FILE
  ```
  Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

- **Enable-GlobalResources**
  ```
  --enable-globalresources = true|false
  ```
  Enables global resources. Default value is false.

  Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **GlobalResourceConfig [gc]**
  ```
  --gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
  ```
  Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

- **GlobalResourceFile [gr]**
  ```
  --gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
  ```
  Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

**Messages, errors, help, timeout, version**

- **Error-Format**
  ```
  --error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
  ```
  Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

- **Error-Limit**
  ```
  --error-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.
info-limit

\[--\text{info-limit} = N \mid \text{unlimited}\]

Specifies the information message limit in the range \(1-65535\) or \text{unlimited}. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is \(100\).

help

\[--\text{help}\]

Displays help text for the command. For example, \textit{valany --h}. (Alternatively the \texttt{help} command can be used with an argument. For example: \texttt{help valany}.)

log-output

\[--\text{log-output} = \text{FILE}\]

Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout

\[--\text{network-timeout} = \text{VALUE}\]

Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: \(40\).

verbose

\[--\text{verbose} = \text{true|false}\]

A value of \texttt{true} enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is \texttt{false}. \textit{Note}: Boolean option values are set to \texttt{true} if the option is specified without a value.

verbose-output

\[--\text{verbose-output} = \text{FILE}\]

Writes \texttt{verbose} output to \texttt{FILE}.

version

\[--\text{version}\]

Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place \texttt{--version} before the command.

warning-limit

\[--\text{warning-limit} = N \mid \text{unlimited}\]

Specifies the warning limit in the range \(1-65535\) or \text{unlimited}. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is \(100\).
4.5.4 **valavroschema (avroschema)**

The `valavroschema | avroschema` command validates one or more Avro schema documents against the Avro schema specification.

```
raptorxml valavroschema | avroschema [options] AvroSchema
```

- The *AvroSchema* argument is the Avro schema document to validate.
- To validate multiple Avro schemas, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the *AvroSchema* argument together with the `--listfile` option set to true (see the Options list below).

**Examples**

Examples of the `valavroschema` command:

- `raptorxml valavroschema c:\MyAvroSchema.avsc`
- `raptorxml valavroschema c:\MyAvroSchema01.avsc c:\MyAvroSchema02.avsc`
- `raptorxml avroschema --listfile=true c:\MyFileList.txt`

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

- **RaptorXML** (and **RaptorXMLServer** for administration commands) on **Windows**
- **raptorxml** (and **raptorxmlserver** for administration commands) on **Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)**

* Note that lowercase (**raptorxml** and **raptorxmlserver**) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (**RaptorXML**) works only on Windows and Mac.

* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

**Options**

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the `--h, --help` option to display information about the command.
Processing

--listfile = true|false
If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line.
Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

--recurse = true|false
Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip\zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

Catalogs and global resources

catalog
--catalog = FILE
Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

user-catalog
--user-catalog = FILE
Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

enable-globalresources
--enable-globalresources = true|false
Enables global resources. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

globalresourceconfig [gc]
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

globalresourcefile [gr]
--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).
Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

- **error-format**
  ```
  --error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
  ```
  Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is `text`. The other options generate XML formats, with `longxml` generating more detail.

- **error-limit**
  ```
  --error-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

- **info-limit**
  ```
  --info-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

- **help**
  ```
  --help
  ```
  Displays help text for the command. For example, `valany --h`. (Alternatively the `help` command can be used with an argument. For example: `help valany`.)

- **log-output**
  ```
  --log-output = FILE
  ```
  Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

- **network-timeout**
  ```
  --network-timeout = VALUE
  ```
  Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

- **verbose**
  ```
  --verbose = true|false
  ```
  A value of `true` enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is `false`. **Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **verbose-output**
  ```
  --verbose-output = FILE
  ```
  Writes verbose output to `FILE`.

- **version**
  ```
  --version
  ```
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place `--version` before the command.
warning-limit

--warning-limit = N | unlimited

Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

4.5.5 valjsonschema (jsonschema)

The `valjsonschema` command validates one or more JSON schema documents according to the JSON Schema Draft 4, Draft 6, or Draft 7 specifications.

```
raptorxml valjsonschema | jsonschema [options] InputFile
```

- The `InputFile` argument is the JSON schema document to validate.
- To validate multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one filename per line, and supply this text file as the `InputFile` argument together with the `--listfile` option set to true (see the Options list below).

Examples

Examples of the `valjsonschema` command:

- `raptorxml valjsonschema c:\MyJSONSchema.json`
- `raptorxml jsonschema c:\MyJSONSchema-01.json c:\MyJSONSchema-02.json`
- `raptorxml jsonschema --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt`

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (`RaptorXML`) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, “C:\My directory\”) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\"
Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

▼ Validation and processing

▼ listfile
--listfile = true|false
If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

▼ recurse
--recurse = true|false
Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip|zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

▼ JSON validation options

▼ additional-schema
--additional-schema = FILE
Specifies URIs of an additional schema document. The additional schema will be loaded by the main schema and can be referenced from the main schema by the additional schemas id or $id property.

▼ disable-format-checks
--disable-format-checks = true|false
Disables the semantic validation imposed by the format attribute. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

▼ jsonschema-version
--jsonschema-version = draft04|draft06|draft07|latest|detect
Specifies which version of the JSON Schema specification draft version to use. Default is detect.
Catalogs and global resources

**catalog**

```
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**user-catalog**

```
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**enable-globalresources**

```
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**globalresourceconfig [gc]**

```
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
```

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

**globalresourcefile [gr]**

```
--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
```

Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

**error-format**

```
--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
```

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

**error-limit**

```
--error-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

**info-limit**

```
--info-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

**help**
--help
Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

---

log-output
--log-output = FILE
Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

---

network-timeout
--network-timeout = VALUE
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

---

verbose
--verbose = true|false
A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. 
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

---

verbose-output
--verbose-output = FILE
Writes verbose output to FILE.

---

version
--version
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

---

warning-limit
--warning-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

---

4.5.6 valjson (json)

The valjson | json command validates one or more JSON instance documents according to the JSON schema supplied with the --schema option.

raptorxml valjson | json [options] --jsonschema=File InputFile

- The InputFile argument is the JSON instance document to validate.
- To validate multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be validated on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be validated in a text file (.txt file), with one
filename per line, and supply this text file as the InputFile argument together with the --listfile option set to true (see the Options list below).

Examples

Examples of the valjson command:

- `raptorxml valjson --jsonschema=c:\MyJSONSchema.json c:\MyJSONInstance.json`
- `raptorxml json --jsonschema=c:\MyJSONSchema.json c:\MyJSONInstance-01.json c:\MyJSONInstance-02.json`
- `raptorxml json --jsonschema=c:\MyJSONSchema.json --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt`

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\\\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\\".

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Validation and processing

- `schema, jsonschema`
  
  --schema = FILE, --jsonschema = FILE
  
  Specifies the path to the JSON Schema document to use for the validation of JSON instance documents.

- `listfile`
  
  --listfile = true|false
If `true`, treats the command’s `InputFile` argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is `false`. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the `--listfile` option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### additional-schema

```{--additional-schema = FILE}
```

Specifies URIs of an additional schema document. The additional schema will be loaded by the main schema and can be referenced from the main schema by the additional schemas `id` or `$id` property.

### recurse

```{--recurse = true|false}
```

Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If `true`, the command’s `InputFile` argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip|zip\test.xml" will select files named `test.xml` at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters `*` and `?` may be used. So, `*.xml` will select all `.xml` files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### json5

```{--json5 = true|false}
```

Enables JSON5 support. Default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### jsonc

```{--jsonc = true|false}
```

Enables support for comments in JSON. Default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### json-lines

```{--json-lines = true|false}
```

Enables support for JSON Lines (that is, one JSON value per line). Default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### jsonschema-version

```{--jsonschema-version = draft04|draft06|draft07|latest|detect}
```

Specifies which version of the JSON Schema specification draft version to use. Default is `detect`.

### disable-format-checks

```{--disable-format-checks = true|false}
```

Disables the semantic validation imposed by the format attribute. Default value is `false`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

### Catalogs and global resources
**catalog**

`--catalog = FILE`

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**user-catalog**

`--user-catalog = FILE`

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**enable-globalresources**

`--enable-globalresources = true|false`

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**globalresourceconfig [gc]**

`--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE`

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

**globalresourcefile [gr]**

`--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE`

Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

**Messages, errors, help, timeout, version**

**error-format**

`--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml`

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

**error-limit**

`--error-limit = N | unlimited`

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

**info-limit**

`--info-limit = N | unlimited`

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

**help**

`--help`
Displays help text for the command. For example, `valany --h`. (Alternatively the `help` command can be used with an argument. For example: `help valany`.)

- **log-output**
  ```
  --log-output = FILE
  ```
  Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

- **network-timeout**
  ```
  --network-timeout = VALUE
  ```
  Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

- **verbose**
  ```
  --verbose = true|false
  ```
  A value of `true` enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is `false`. 
  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- **verbose-output**
  ```
  --verbose-output = FILE
  ```
  Writes verbose output to `FILE`.

- **version**
  ```
  --version
  ```
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place `--version` before the command.

- **warning-limit**
  ```
  --warning-limit = N | unlimited
  ```
  Specifies the warning limit in the range `1-65535` or `unlimited`. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is `100`.

## 4.5.7 wfjson

The `wfjson` command checks one or more JSON documents according to the ECMA-404 specification for well-formedness.

```
 raptorxml wfjson [options] InputFile
```

- The `InputFile` argument is the JSON document (schema or instance) to check for well-formedness.
- To check multiple documents, either: (i) list the files to be checked on the CLI, with each file separated from the next by a space; or (ii) list the files to be checked in a text file (.txt file), with one filename
per line, and supply this text file as the InputFile argument together with the --listfile option set to true (see the Options list below).

Examples
Examples of the wfjson command:

- `raptorxml wfjson c:\MyJSONFile.json`
- `raptorxml wfjson c:\MyJSONFile-01.json c:\MyJSONFile-02.json`
- `raptorxml wfjson --listfile=true c:\FileList.txt`

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Validation and processing

- **json5**
  
  **--json5 = true|false**
  Enables JSON5 support. Default value is false.
  
  *Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- **jsonc**
  
  **--jsonc = true|false**
  Enables support for comments in JSON. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**json-lines**

```bash
--json-lines = true|false
```

Enables support for JSON Lines (that is, one JSON value per line). Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**listfile**

```bash
--listfile = true|false
```

If true, treats the command's InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**recurse**

```bash
--recurse = true|false
```

Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's InputFile argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip\zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**Catalogs and global resources**

**catalog**

```bash
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**user-catalog**

```bash
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**enable-globalresources**

```bash
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**globalresourceconfig [gc]**

```bash
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
```

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).
globalresourcefile [gr]

--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

Messages, errors, help, timeout, version

error-format

--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

error-limit

--error-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

info-limit

--info-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

help

--help
Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

log-output

--log-output = FILE
Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout

--network-timeout = VALUE
Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is: 40.

verbose

--verbose = true|false
A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

verbose-output

--verbose-output = FILE
Writes verbose output to \textit{FILE}.

\textbf{version}

\texttt{--version}
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place \texttt{--version} before the command.

\textbf{warning-limit}

\texttt{--warning-limit = N | unlimited}
Specifies the warning limit in the range \texttt{1-65535} or \texttt{unlimited}. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is \texttt{100}.
4.6  XML Signature Commands

The XML Signature commands can be used to sign an XML document and to verify a signed document. These commands are listed below and described in detail in the sub-sections of this section:

- **xmlsignature-sign**: Creates an XML signature output document from an input document
- **xmlsignature-verify**: Verifies an XML signature document
- **xmlsignature-update**: Updates the signature of a (modified) XML document
- **xmlsignature-remove**: Removes the signature of an XML document

4.6.1  xmlsignature-sign

The xmlsignature-sign | xsign command takes an XML document as input and creates an XML signature output document using the specified signing options.

```
raptorxml xmlsignature-sign [options] --output=File --signature-type=Value --signature-canonicalization-method=Value --certname=Value|hmackey=Value InputFile
```

- The **InputFile** argument is the XML document to sign.
- The **--output** option specifies the location of the document that contains the XML signature.

**Example**

Example of the xmlsignature-sign command:

```
raptorxml xsign --output=c:\SignedFile.xml --signature-type=enveloped --signature-canonicalization-method=xml-c14n11 --hmackey=secretpassword c:\SomeUnsigned.xml
```

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\\. To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".
Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

▼ Common options
- output
  output = FILE
  The URL of the output document that is created with the new XML signature.

- verbose
  --verbose = true|false
  A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. 
  Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

▼ XML Signature options
- absolute-reference-uri
  --absolute-reference-uri = true|false
  Specifies whether the URI of the signed document is to be read as absolute (true) or relative (false). Default is false. 
  Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

- certname, certificate-name
  --certname, --certificate-name = VALUE
  The name of the certificate used for signing.

  Windows
  This is the Subject name of a certificate from the selected --certificate-store.

  Example to list the certificates (under PowerShell)
  % ls cert://CurrentUser/My
  PSParentPath: Microsoft.PowerShell.Security\Certificate::CurrentUser\My
  Thumbprint Subject
  --------- -------
  C9DF64BB0AFFA75F5A73474D78B7CCFFFC37C95BFC6C CN=certificate1
  ... CN=...

  Example: --certificate-name==certificate1

  Linux/MacOS
**Command Line Interface (CLI)**

**XML Signature Commands**

---

---certname specifies the file name of a PEM encoded X.509v3 certificate with the private key. Such files usually have the extension .pem.

*Example:* --certificate-name=/path/to/certificate1.pem

---

**certstore, certificate-store**

---certstore, --certificate-store = VALUE

The location where the certificate specified with --certificate-name is stored.

**Windows**

The name of a certificate store under cert://CurrentUser. The available certificate stores can be listed (under PowerShell) by using % ls cert://CurrentUser/. Certificates would then be listed as follows:

- Name : TrustedPublisher
- Name : ClientAuthIssuer
- Name : Root
- Name : UserDS
- Name : CA
- Name : ACRS
- Name : REQUEST
- Name : AuthRoot
- Name : MSIEHistoryJournal
- Name : TrustedPeople
- Name : MyCertStore
- Name : Local NonRemovable Certificates
- Name : SmartCardRoot
- Name : Trust
- Name : Disallowed

*Example:* --certificate-store=MyCertStore

**Linux/MacOS**

The --certstore option is currently not supported.

---

**digest, digest-method**

---digest, --digest-method = sha1|sha256|sha384|sha512

The algorithm that is used to compute the digest value over the input XML file. Available values are: sha1|sha256|sha384|sha512.

---

**hmackey, hmac-secret-key**

---hmackey, --hmac-secret-key = VALUE

The HMAC shared secret key; must have a minimum length of six characters.

*Example:* --hmackey=secretpassword

---

**hmaclen, hmac-output-length**

---hmaclen, --hmac-output-length = LENGTH
Truncates the output of the HMAC algorithm to length bits. If specified, this value must be
- a multiple of 8
- larger than 80
- larger than half of the underlying hash algorithm’s output length

keyinfo, append-keyinfo

```--keyinfo, --append-keyinfo = true|false```
Specifies whether to include the KeyInfo element in the signature or not. The default is false.

signature-canonicalization-method

```--sigc14nmeth, --signature-canonicalization-method = VALUE```
Specifies the canonicalization algorithm to apply to the SignedInfo element. The value must be one of:
- REC-xml-c14n-20010315
- xml-c14n11
- xml-exc-c14n#

signature-method

```--sigmeth, --signature-method = VALUE```
Specifies the algorithm to use for generating the signature.

When a certificate is used
If a certificate is specified, then SignatureMethod is optional and the value for this parameter is
derived from the certificate. If specified, it must match the algorithm used by the certificate. Example:
rsa-sha256.

When --hmac-secret-key is used
When HMACSecretKey is used, then SignatureMethod is mandatory. The value must be one of the
supported HMAC algorithms:
- hmac-sha256
- hmac-sha386
- hmac-sha512
- hmac-sha1 (discouraged by the specification)

Example: hmac-sha256

signature-type

```--sigtype, --signature-type = detached | enveloping | enveloped```
Specifies the type of signature to be generated.

transforms

```--transforms = VALUE```
Specifies the XML Signature transformations applied to the input document. The supported values are:
- REC-xml-c14n-20010315 for Canonical XML 1.0 (omit comments)
- xml-c14n11 for Canonical XML 1.1 (omit comments)
- xml-exc-c14n# for Exclusive XML Canonicalization 1.0 (omit comments)
- REC-xml-c14n-20010315#WithComments for Canonical XML 1.0 (with comments)
- xml-c14n11#WithComments for Canonical XML 1.1 (with comments)
- xml-exc-c14n#WithComments for Exclusive XML Canonicalization 1.0 (with comments)
- base64
- strip-whitespaces Altova extension

Example: --transforms=xml-c14n11

Note: This option can be specified multiple times. If specified multiple times, then the order of specification is significant. The first specified transformation receives the input document. The last specified transformation is used immediately before calculation of the digest value.

write-default-attributes

--write-default-attributes = true|false
Specifies whether to include default attribute values from the DTD in the signed document.

Help and version options

help

--help
Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

version

--version
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

4.6.2 xmlsignature-verify

The xmlsignature-verify | xverify command verifies the XML signature of the input file.

raptorxml xmlsignature-verify [options] InputFile

- The InputFile argument is the signed XML document to verify.
- If the verification is successful, a result="OK" message is displayed; otherwise, a result="Failed" message is displayed.

Example

Example of the xmlsignature-verify command:
• `raptorxml xverify c:\SignedFile.xml`

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) *on Windows*

raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) *on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)*

* Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while uppercase (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.

* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotes mark (for example, "C:\My directory") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotations mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\\".

**Options**

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the `--h, --help` option to display information about the command.

**Common options**

**verbose**

`--verbose = true|false`

A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.

*Note*: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**XML Signature options**

**certname, certificate-name**

`--certname, --certificate-name = VALUE`

The name of the certificate used for signing.

*Windows*

This is the Subject name of a certificate from the selected `--certificate-store`.

*Example to list the certificates (under PowerShell)*
% ls cert://CurrentUser/My
PSParentPath: Microsoft.PowerShell.Security\Certificate::CurrentUser\My
Thumbprint Subject
---------------------
C9DF64BB0A9F3FA73474D78B7CCFFC37C95BFC6C CN=certificate1
... CN=...

Example: --certificate-name==certificate1

**Linux/MacOS**

--certname specifies the file name of a PEM encoded X.509v3 certificate with the private key. Such files usually have the extension .pem.

Example: --certificate-name==/path/to/certificate1.pem

**certstore, certificate-store**

--certstore, --certificate-store = VALUE

The location where the certificate specified with --certificate-name is stored.

**Windows**

The name of a certificate store under cert://CurrentUser. The available certificate stores can be listed (under PowerShell) by using % ls cert://CurrentUser/. Certificates would then be listed as follows:

Name : TrustedPublisher
Name : ClientAuthIssuer
Name : Root
Name : UserDS
Name : CA
Name : ACRS
Name : REQUEST
Name : AuthRoot
Name : MSIEHistoryJournal
Name : TrustedPeople
Name : MyCertStore
Name : Local NonRemovable Certificates
Name : SmartCardRoot
Name : Trust
Name : Disallowed

Example: --certificate-store==MyCertStore

**Linux/MacOS**

The --certstore option is currently not supported.

**hmackey, hmac-secret-key**

--hmackey, --hmac-secret-key = VALUE

The HMAC shared secret key; must have a minimum length of six characters.
Example: --hmackey=secretpassword

Help and version options

- **help**
  - **--help**
    - Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

- **version**
  - **--version**
    - Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

4.6.3 *xmlsignature-update*

The *xmlsignature-update* | *xupdate* command updates the XML signature in the signed input file. If the document has been modified, the updated XML signature will be different; otherwise, the updated signature will be the same as the previous signature.

`raptorxml xmlsignature-update [options] --output=File SignedFile`

- The *SignedFile* argument is the signed XML document to update.
- Either (i) the *hmac-secret-key* option or (ii) the *certificate-name* and *certificate-store* options must be specified.
- If the *certificate-name* and *certificate-store* options are specified, then they must match those that were used to sign the XML document previously. (Note that the *certificate-store* option is currently not supported on Linux and macOS.)

**Examples**

Examples of the *xmlsignature-update* command:

- `raptorxml xupdate --output=c:\UpdatedSignedFile.xml --certname=certificate1 --certstore=MyCertStore c:\SomeSignedFile.xml`
- `raptorxml xupdate --output=c:\UpdatedSignedFile.xml --hmackey=SecretPassword c:\SomeSignedFile.xml`

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- `raptorxml` (and `raptormslserver` for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptormslserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and
Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

**Options**

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: **--option=value**. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is `TRUE`. Use the **--h, --help** option to display information about the command.

**Common options**

- **output**
  
  `output = FILE`
  
  The URL of the output document that is created with the new XML signature.

- **verbose**
  
  **--verbose = [true|false]**
  
  A value of `true` enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is `false`.
  
  **Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**XML Signature options**

- **certname, certificate-name**
  
  **--certname, --certificate-name = VALUE**
  
  The name of the certificate used for signing.

  **Windows**
  
  This is the **Subject** name of a certificate from the selected **--certificate-store**.

  **Example to list the certificates (under PowerShell)**
  
  ```plaintext
  % ls cert://CurrentUser/My
  PSParentPath: Microsoft.PowerShell.Security\Certificate::CurrentUser\My
  Thumbprint Subject
  -----------
  ```
C9DF64BB0AAF5FA73474D78B7CCFFC37C95BFC6C CN=certificate1
... CN=...

*Example:* `--certificate-name==certificate1`

**Linux/MacOS**

`--certname` specifies the file name of a PEM encoded X.509v3 certificate with the private key. Such files usually have the extension `.pem`.

*Example:* `--certificate-name==/path/to/certificate1.pem`

**certstore, certificate-store**

`--certstore, --certificate-store = VALUE`

The location where the certificate specified with `--certificate-name` is stored.

**Windows**

The name of a certificate store under `cert:///CurrentUser`. The available certificate stores can be listed (under PowerShell) by using `% ls cert:///CurrentUser/`. Certificates would then be listed as follows:

Name : TrustedPublisher
Name : ClientAuthIssuer
Name : Root
Name : UserDS
Name : CA
Name : ACRS
Name : REQUEST
Name : AuthRoot
Name : MSIEHistoryJournal
Name : TrustedPeople
Name : MyCertStore
Name : Local NonRemovable Certificates
Name : SmartCardRoot
Name : Trust
Name : Disallowed

*Example:* `--certificate-store==MyCertStore`

**Linux/MacOS**

The `--certstore` option is currently not supported.

**hmackey, hmac-secret-key**

`--hmackey, --hmac-secret-key = VALUE`

The HMAC shared secret key; must have a minimum length of six characters.

*Example:* `--hmackey=secretpassword`
Help and version options

- help
  --help
  Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

- version
  --version
  Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

4.6.4 xmlsignature-remove

The xmlsignature-remove | xremove command removes the XML signature of the signed input file, and saves the resulting unsigned document to an output location that you specify.

```
raptorxml xmlsignature-remove [options] --output=File SignedFile
```

- The SignedFile argument is the signed XML document from which you want to remove the XML signature.
- The --output option specifies the location of the unsigned XML document that is generated.

Example

Example of the xmlsignature-remove command:

```
  raptorxml xremove --output=c:\UnsignedFile.xml c:\SignedFile.xml
```

Casing and slashes on the command line

- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, “c:\My directory\”) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you
need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\ \".

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is true. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

▼ Common options

▼ output
output = FILE
The URL of the output document that is created with the XML signature removed.

▼ verbose
--verbose = true|false
A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false. Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

▼ Help and version options

▼ help
--help
Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

▼ version
--version
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.
4.7 General Commands

This section contains a description of the following general commands:

- **valany**: validates the submitted document according to its type
- **script**: executes a Python script
- **help**: displays information about the named command

4.7.1 valany

The valany command is a general command that validates a document on the basis of what type of document it is. The type of the input document is detected automatically, and the corresponding validation is carried out according to the respective specification. The InputFile argument is the document to validate. Note that only one document can be submitted as the argument of the command.

```
    raptorxml valany [options] InputFile
```

The valany command covers the following types of validation. Its options are those that are available for the corresponding individual validation command. See the description of the respective validation commands for a list of their respective options.

- **valdtd (dtd)**
- **valxsd (xsd)**
- **valxml-withdtd (xml)**
- **valxml-withxsd (xsi)**
- **valxslt**
- **valxquery**
- **valavrojson (avrojson)**

Examples

```
    raptorxml valany c:\Test.xsd
```

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, “c:\My directory\”) might not be read
correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\\\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\\".

**Options**

See the description of the respective validation commands for a list of their respective options. Note, however, that while most individual validation commands accept multiple input documents, the `valany` command accepts only one input document. Options such as the `--listfile` option will therefore not apply to `valany`.

### 4.7.2 script

The `script` command executes a Python 3.7 script that uses the RaptorXML Python API.

```
raptorxml script [options] PythonScriptFile
```

The `File` argument is the path to the Python script you want to execute. Additional options are available for this command. To obtain a list of these options, run the following command:

```
raptorxml script [-h | --help]
```

**Examples**

- `raptorxml script c:\MyPythonScript.py`
- `raptorxml script -h`
- `raptorxml script`  
  # Without a script file, an interactive Python shell is started
- `raptorxml script -m pip`  
  # Loads and executes the `pip` module; see the Options section below

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

- **RaptorXML** (and **RaptorXMLServer** for administration commands) on Windows
- **raptorxml** (and **raptormxmlserver** for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

  * Note that lowercase (**raptorxml** and **raptormxmlserver**) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (**RaptorXML**) works only on Windows and Mac.
  * Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape
sequence, and the escape sequence " stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Options
Any options and arguments after the script command are forwarded directly to the Python interpreter. Please consult the Python documentation page https://docs.python.org/3.7/using/cmdline.html for a complete listing of available options.

4.7.3 help

Syntax and description
The help command takes a single argument (Command), which is the name of the command for which help is required. It displays the command's syntax, its options, and other relevant information. If the Command argument is not specified, then all commands of the executable are listed, with each having a brief text description. The help command can be called from either executable: raptorxml or raptorxmlserver.

raptorxml help Command
raptorxmlserver help Command

Casing and slashes on the command line
RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Example
Examples of the help command to display information about the licenserver command (this command is available in both executables):

raptorxml help licenseserver
raptorxmlserver help licenseserver

The --help option
Help information about a command is also available by using the --help option of the command for which help information is required. The two commands below produce the same results:

raptorxml licenseserver --help
The command above uses the --help option of the licenseserver command.

    raptorxml help licenseserver

The help command takes licenseserver as its argument.

Both commands display help information about the licenseserver command.
4.8 Localization Commands

You can create a localized version of the RaptorXML application for any language of your choice. Five localized versions (English, German, Spanish, French, and Japanese) are already available in the `<ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin\` folder. These five language versions therefore do not need to be created.

Create a localized version in another language as follows:

1. Generate an XML file containing the resource strings. Do this with the `exportresourcestrings` command. The resource strings in the generated XML file will be one of the five supported languages: English (`en`), German (`de`), Spanish (`es`), French (`fr`), or Japanese (`ja`), according to the argument used with the command.
2. Translate the resource strings from the language of the generated XML file into the target language. The resource strings are the contents of the `<string>` elements in the XML file. Do not translate variables in curly brackets, such as `{option}` or `{product}`.
3. Contact Altova Support to generate a localized RaptorXML DLL file from your translated XML file.
4. After you receive your localized DLL file from Altova Support, save the DLL in the `<ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin\` folder. Your DLL file will have a name of the form `RaptorXMLServer_lc.dll`. The `_lc` part of the name contains the language code. For example, in `RaptorXMLServer_de.dll`, the `de` part is the language code for German (Deutsch).
5. Run the `setdeflang` command to set your localized DLL file as the RaptorXML application to use. For the argument of the `setdeflang` command, use the language code that is part of the DLL name.

Note: Altova RaptorXML Server is delivered with support for five languages: English, German, Spanish, French, and Japanese. So you do not need to create a localized version of these languages. To set any of these five languages as the default language, use the CLI's `setdeflang` command.

4.8.1 exportresourcestrings

Syntax and description

The `exportresourcestrings` command outputs an XML file containing the resource strings of the RaptorXML Server application in the specified language. Available export languages are English (`en`), German (`de`), Spanish (`es`), French (`fr`), and Japanese (`ja`).

```
raptorxml exportresourcestrings [options] LanguageCode XMLOutputFile
raptorxmlserver exportresourcestrings [options] LanguageCode XMLOutputFile
```

- The `LanguageCode` argument gives the language of the resource strings in the output XML file; this is the `export language`. Allowed export languages (with their language codes in parentheses) are: English (`en`), German (`de`), Spanish (`es`), French (`fr`), and Japanese (`ja`).
- The `XMLOutputFile` argument specifies the path and name of the output XML file.
- The `exportresourcestrings` command can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

How to create localizations is described below.
Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double- quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double- quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Examples

Examples of the exportresourcestrings command:

```
  raptorxml exportresourcestrings de c:\Strings.xml
  raptorxmlserver exportresourcestrings de c:\Strings.xml
```

- The first command above creates a file called Strings.xml at c:\ that contains the resource strings of RaptorXML Server in German.
- The second command calls the server-executable to do the same thing as the first example.

Creating localized versions of RaptorXML Server

You can create a localized version of RaptorXML Server for any language of your choice. Five localized versions (English, German, Spanish, French, and Japanese) are already available in the C:\Program Files (x86) \Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin folder, and therefore do not need to be created.

Create a localized version as follows:

1. Generate an XML file containing the resource strings by using the exportresourcestrings command (see command syntax above). The resource strings in this XML file will be one of the five supported languages: English (en), German (de), Spanish (es), French (fr), or Japanese (ja), according to the LanguageCode argument used with the command.
2. Translate the resource strings from one of the five supported languages into the target language. The resource strings are the contents of the <string> elements in the XML file. Do not translate variables in curly brackets, such as {option} or {product}.
3. Contact Altova Support to generate a localized RaptorXML Server DLL file from your translated XML file.
4. After you receive your localized DLL file from Altova Support, save the DLL in the C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin folder. Your DLL file will have a name of the form RaptorXML2021_lc.dll. The _lc part of the name contains the language code. For example, in
Localization Commands

4.8.2  

setdeflang

Syntax and description

The setdeflang command (short form is sdl) sets the default language of RaptorXML Server. Available languages are English (en), German (de), Spanish (es), French (fr), and Japanese (ja). The command takes a mandatory LanguageCode argument.

```
raptorxml setdeflang [options] LanguageCode
raptorxmlserver setdeflang [options] LanguageCode
```

- The LanguageCode argument is required and sets the default language of RaptorXML Server. The respective values to use are: en, de, es, fr, ja.
- The setdeflang command can be called from either executable: raptorxml or raptorxmlserver.
- Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Casing and slashes on the command line

- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Examples

Examples of the setdeflang (sdl) command:

```
raptorxml sdl de
raptorxml setdeflang es
raptorxmlserver setdeflang es
```

- The first command sets the default language of RaptorXML Server to German.
- The second command sets the default language of RaptorXML Server to Spanish.
- The third command is the same as the second command, but is executed by the server-executable.

Options

Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.
4.9 License Commands

This section describes commands that can be used for licensing RaptorXML Server:

- **licenseserver** to register RaptorXML Server with Altova LicenseServer on your network
- **assignlicense** to upload a license file to LicenseServer (Windows only)
- **verifylease** to verify whether RaptorXML Server is licensed (Windows only)

**Note:** These commands can also be executed via the server executable for administration commands.

For more information about licensing Altova products with Altova LicenseServer, see the [Altova LicenseServer documentation](https://www.altova.com/manual/AltovaLicenseServer/).

4.9.1 licenseserver

**Syntax and description**

The `licenseserver` command registers RaptorXML Server with the Altova LicenseServer specified by the `Server-Or-IP-Address` argument. For the `licenseserver` command to be executed successfully, the two servers (RaptorXML Server and LicenseServer) must be on the same network and LicenseServer must be running. You must also have administrator privileges in order to register RaptorXML Server with LicenseServer.

```
   raptorxml licenseserver [options] Server-Or-IP-Address
   raptorxmlserver licenseserver [options] Server-Or-IP-Address
```

- The `Server-Or-IP-Address` argument takes the name or IP address of the LicenseServer machine.
- The `licenseserver` command can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

Once RaptorXML Server has been successfully registered with LicenseServer, you will receive a message to this effect. The message will also display the URL of the LicenseServer. You can now go to LicenseServer to assign RaptorXML Server a license. For details about licensing, see the LicenseServer documentation (https://www.altova.com/manual/AltovaLicenseServer/).

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

- **RaptorXML** (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- **raptorxml** (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.

* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems**

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to
escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C: \My Directory \".

Examples
Examples of the licenseserver command:

    raptorxml licenseserver DOC.altova.com
    raptorxml licenseserver localhost
    raptorxml licenseserver 127.0.0.1
    raptorxmlserver licenseserver 127.0.0.1

The commands above specify, respectively, the machine named DOC.altova.com, and the user's machine (localhost and 127.0.0.1) as the machine running Altova LicenseServer. In each case, the command registers RaptorXML Server with the LicenseServer on the machine specified. The last command calls the server-executable to execute the command.

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

- json [j]
  --j, --json = true|false
  Values are true|false. If true, prints the result of the registration attempt as a machine-parsable JSON object.

4.9.2 assignlicense (Windows only)

Syntax and description
The assignlicense command is available on Windows only (not on Linux or Mac systems). It uploads a license file to the Altova LicenseServer with which RaptorXML Server is registered (see the licenseserver command), and assigns the license to RaptorXML Server. It takes the path of a license file as its argument. The command also allows you to test the validity of a license.

    raptorxml assignlicense [options] FILE
    raptorxmlserver assignlicense [options] FILE

- The FILE argument takes the path of the license file.
- The --test-only option uploads the license file to LicenseServer and validates the license, but does not assign the license to RaptorXML Server.
The `assignlicense` command can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

For details about licensing, see the LicenseServer documentation (https://www.altova.com/manual/AltovaLicenseServer/).

### Casing and slashes on the command line

- **RaptorXML** (and **RaptorXMLServer** for administration commands) on **Windows**
- **raptorxml** (and **raptorxmlserver** for administration commands) on **Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)**

* Note that lowercase (**raptorxml** and **raptorxmlserver**) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (**RaptorXML**) works only on Windows and Mac.

* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

### Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, “C:\My directory\”) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\\\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\\".

### Examples

Examples of the `assignlicense` command:

```
raptorxml assignlicense C:\licensepool\mylicensekey.altova_licenses
raptorxmlserver assignlicense C:\licensepool\mylicensekey.altova_licenses
raptorxml assignlicense --test-only=true C:\licensepool\mylicensekey.altova_licenses
```

- The first command above uploads the specified license to LicenseServer and assigns it to RaptorXML Server.
- The second command calls the server-executable to do the same thing as the first command.
- The last command uploads the specified license to LicenseServer and validates it, without assigning it to RaptorXML Server.

### Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the `--h, --help` option to display information about the command.

```
--test-only [t]
```

Values are `true|false`. If true, then the license file is uploaded to LicenseServer and validated, but not
assigned.

### 4.9.3 verifylicense (Windows only)

**Syntax and description**

The `verifylicense` command checks whether the current product is licensed. Additionally, the `--license-key` option enables you to check whether a specific license key is already assigned to the product. This command is supported only on Windows systems. It is not supported on Linux or Mac systems.

```
raptorxml verifylicense [options]
raptorxmlserver verifylicense [options]
```

- To check whether a specific license is assigned to RaptorXML Server, supply the license key as the value of the `--license-key` option.
- The `verifylicense` command can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

For details about licensing, see the LicenseServer documentation (https://www.altova.com/manual/AltovaLicenseServer/).

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

- **RaptorXML** (and **RaptorXMLServer** for administration commands) on **Windows**
- **raptorxml** (and **raptorxmlserver** for administration commands) on **Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)**

  * Note that lowercase (**raptorxml** and **raptorxmlserver**) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (**RaptorXML**) works only on Windows and Mac.
  * Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Examples**

Example of the `verifylicense` command:

```
raptorxml verifylicense
raptorxml verifylicense --license-key=ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123
raptorxmlserver verifylicense --license-key=ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123
```

- The first command checks whether RaptorXML Server is licensed.
- The second command checks whether RaptorXML Server is licensed with the license key specified with the `--license-key` option.
- The third command is the same as the second command, but is executed by the server-executable.

**Options**

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii)
when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean
value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is \texttt{TRUE}. Use the \texttt{--h, --help} option to display
information about the command.

\textbf{license-key [l]}

\texttt{--l, --license-key = Value}

Checks whether RaptorXML Server is licensed with the license key specified as the value of this option.
4.10 Administration Commands

Administration commands (such as installation-as-service and licensing commands) are issued to the server executable of RaptorXML Server (named RaptorXMLServer). This executable is located by default at:

**Windows**  
<ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin\RaptorXMLServer.exe

**Linux**  
/opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/raptorxmlserver

**Mac**  
/usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin/raptorxmlserver

Usage

The command line syntax is:

```
raptorxmlserver --h | --help | --version | <command> [options] [arguments]
```

- `--help` (short form `--h`) displays the help text of the given command. If no command is named, then all commands of the executable are listed, each with a brief description of the command.
- `--version` displays RaptorXML Server version number.
- `<command>` is the command to execute. Commands are displayed in the sub-sections of this section (see list below).
- `[options]` are the options of a command; they are listed and described with their respective commands.
- `[arguments]` are the arguments of a command; they are listed and described with their respective commands.

▼ Casing and slashes on the command line

- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Administration commands

Commands of the server executable provide administration functionality. They are listed below and described in the sub-sections of this section:

- install
- uninstall
- start
- setdeflang
- licenseserver
- assignlicense
- verifylicense
- createconfig
4.10.1 install

Syntax and description
The install command installs RaptorXML Server as a service on the server machine.

    raptorxmlserver install [options]

- Note that installing RaptorXML Server as a service does not automatically start the service. To start the service, use the start command.
- To uninstall RaptorXML Server as a service, use the uninstall command.
- Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Casing and slashes on the command line
RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Example
Example of the install command:

    raptorxmlserver install

4.10.2 uninstall

Syntax and description
The uninstall command uninstalls RaptorXML Server as a service on the server machine.

    raptorxmlserver uninstall [options]

To re-install RaptorXML Server as a service, use the install command.

Casing and slashes on the command line
RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and
Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Example
Example of the uninstall command:

    raptorxmlserver uninstall

4.10.3 start

Syntax and description
The start command starts RaptorXML Server as a service on the server machine.

    raptorxmlserver start [options]

- If RaptorXML Server is not installed as a service, install it first with the install command (before starting it).
- To uninstall RaptorXML Server as a service, use the uninstall command.
- Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Example
Example of the start command:

    raptorxmlserver start
Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

- config [c]
  --c, --config = File
  Specifies the path to a configuration file.

- fork
  --fork = true|false
  Provides the ability to fork when using classic init on Unix servers. The default is false.

- port
  --port = PortNumber
  The port number of the debug instance of RaptorXML Server.

4.10.4 setdeflang
Syntax and description
The setdeflang command (short form is sdl) sets the default language of RaptorXML Server. Available languages are English (en), German (de), Spanish (es), French (fr), and Japanese (ja). The command takes a mandatory LanguageCode argument.

```
raptorxml setdeflang [options] LanguageCode
raptorxmlserver setdeflang [options] LanguageCode
```

- The LanguageCode argument is required and sets the default language of RaptorXML Server. The respective values to use are: en, de, es, fr, ja.
- The setdeflang command can be called from either executable: raptorxml or raptorxmlserver.
- Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Casing and slashes on the command line
RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.
Examples

Examples of the `setdeflang` command:

```bash
raptorxml sdl de
raptorxml setdeflang es
raptorxmlserver setdeflang es
```

- The first command sets the default language of RaptorXML Server to German.
- The second command sets the default language of RaptorXML Server to Spanish.
- The third command is the same as the second command, but is executed by the server-executable.

Options

Use the `--h`, `--help` option to display information about the command.

4.10.5 licenseserver

Syntax and description

The `licenseserver` command registers RaptorXML Server with the Altova LicenseServer specified by the `Server-Or-IP-Address` argument. For the `licenseserver` command to be executed successfully, the two servers (RaptorXML Server and LicenseServer) must be on the same network and LicenseServer must be running. You must also have administrator privileges in order to register RaptorXML Server with LicenseServer.

```bash
raptorxml licenseserver [options] Server-Or-IP-Address
raptorxmlserver licenseserver [options] Server-Or-IP-Address
```

- The `Server-Or-IP-Address` argument takes the name or IP address of the LicenseServer machine.
- The `licenseserver` command can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

Once RaptorXML Server has been successfully registered with LicenseServer, you will receive a message to this effect. The message will also display the URL of the LicenseServer. You can now go to LicenseServer to assign RaptorXML Server a license. For details about licensing, see the LicenseServer documentation (https://www.altova.com/manual/AltovaLicenseServer/).

Casing and slashes on the command line

- RaptorXML and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands on Windows
- raptorxml and raptorxmlserver for administration commands on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that
a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, “C:\My directory\”) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence \" stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\ ".

Examples
Examples of the licenseserver command:

```bash
raptorxml licenseserver DOC.altova.com
raptorxml licenseserver localhost
raptorxml licenseserver 127.0.0.1
raptorxmlserver licenseserver 127.0.0.1
```

The commands above specify, respectively, the machine named DOC.altova.com, and the user's machine (localhost and 127.0.0.1) as the machine running Altova LicenseServer. In each case, the command registers RaptorXML Server with the LicenseServer on the machine specified. The last command calls the server-executable to execute the command.

Options
Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

```
\[ json [j] \]
--j, --json = true|false
Values are true|false. If true, prints the result of the registration attempt as a machine-parsable JSON object.
```

4.10.6 assignlicense (Windows only)

Syntax and description
The assignlicense command is available on Windows only (not on Linux or Mac systems). It uploads a license file to the Altova LicenseServer with which RaptorXML Server is registered (see the licenseserver command), and assigns the license to RaptorXML Server. It takes the path of a license file as its argument. The command also allows you to test the validity of a license.

```bash
raptorxml assignlicense [options] FILE
raptorxmlserver assignlicense [options] FILE
```
• The `FILE` argument takes the path of the license file.
• The `--test-only` option uploads the license file to LicenseServer and validates the license, but does not assign the license to RaptorXML Server.
• The `assignlicense` command can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

For details about licensing, see the LicenseServer documentation (https://www.altova.com/manual/AltovaLicenseServer/).

▼ Casing and slashes on the command line

*RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows*

*raptorxml* (and *raptorxmlserver* for administration commands) on *Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)*

* Note that lowercase (*raptorxml* and *raptorxmlserver*) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (*RaptorXML*) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

▼ Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, “My File”. Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotiation mark (for example, “C:\My directory\”) might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence " stands for the double-quotiation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \\". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Examples

Examples of the `assignlicense` command:

```
raptorxml assignlicense C:\licensepool\mylicensekey.altova_licenses
raptorxmlserver assignlicense C:\licensepool\mylicensekey.altova_licenses
raptorxml assignlicense --test-only=true C:\licensepool\mylicensekey.altova_licenses
```

• The first command above uploads the specified license to LicenseServer and assigns it to RaptorXML Server.
• The second command calls the server-executable to do the same thing as the first command.
• The last command uploads the specified license to LicenseServer and validates it, without assigning it to RaptorXML Server.

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=value`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is `TRUE`. Use the `--h, --help` option to display information about the command.
test-only [t]

\--t, \--test-only = true|false

Values are true|false. If true, then the license file is uploaded to LicenseServer and validated, but not assigned.

4.10.7 verifylicense (Windows only)

Syntax and description

The verifylicense command checks whether the current product is licensed. Additionally, the --license-key option enables you to check whether a specific license key is already assigned to the product. This command is supported only on Windows systems. It is not supported on Linux or Mac systems.

```
raptorxml verifylicense [options]
raptorxmlserver verifylicense [options]
```

- To check whether a specific license is assigned to RaptorXML Server, supply the license key as the value of the --license-key option.
- The verifylicense command can be called from either executable: raptorxml or raptorxmlserver.

For details about licensing, see the LicenseServer documentation (https://www.altova.com/manual/AltovaLicenseServer/).

Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Examples

Example of the verifylicense command:

```
raptorxml verifylicense
raptorxml verifylicense --license-key=ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123
raptorxmlserver verifylicense --license-key=ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123-ABCD123
```

- The first command checks whether RaptorXML Server is licensed.
- The second command checks whether RaptorXML Server is licensed with the license key specified with the --license-key option.
- The third command is the same as the second command, but is executed by the server-executable.
Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: `--option=values`. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is `TRUE`. Use the `--h, --help` option to display information about the command.

- **license-key [l]**
  - `--license-key = Value`
    - Checks whether RaptorXML Server is licensed with the license key specified as the value of this option.

### 4.10.8 createconfig

**Syntax and description**

The `createconfig` command overwrites the server configuration file with default values.

```
raptorxmlserver createconfig [options]
```

- The `--lang` option specifies the default language of the server configuration file.

For more information about server configuration files, see [Configuring the Server](#).

**Casing and slashes on the command line**

- **RaptorXML** (and **RaptorXMLServer** for administration commands) on **Windows**
- **raptorxml** (and **raptorxmlserver** for administration commands) on **Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)**

  * Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (`RaptorXML`) works only on Windows and Mac.
  * Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

**Examples**

Examples of the `createconfig` command:

```
raptorxml createconfig
raptorxml createconfig --lang=de
```

**Options**

- **lang**
  - `--lang = en|de|es|fr|ja`
Specifies the default language of the server configuration file. The following options are available: English (en), German (de), Spanish (es), French (fr), Japanese (ja). If the option is not specified, English is chosen as the default language.

Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

4.10.9 exportresourcestrings

Syntax and description

The exportresourcestrings command outputs an XML file containing the resource strings of the RaptorXML Server application in the specified language. Available export languages are English (en), German (de), Spanish (es), French (fr), and Japanese (ja).

raptorxml exportresourcestrings [options] LanguageCode XMLOutputFile
raptorxmlserver exportresourcestrings [options] LanguageCode XMLOutputFile

- The LanguageCode argument gives the language of the resource strings in the output XML file; this is the export language. Allowed export languages (with their language codes in parentheses) are: English (en), German (de), Spanish (es), French (fr), and Japanese (ja).
- The XMLOutputFile argument specifies the path and name of the output XML file.
- The exportresourcestrings command can be called from either executable: raptorxml or raptorxmlserver.

How to create localizations is described below.

Casing and slashes on the command line

- RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
- raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotiation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape
sequence, and the escape sequence " stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Examples
Examples of the exportresourcestrings command:

    raptorxml exportresourcestrings de c:\Strings.xml
    raptorxmlserver exportresourcestrings de c:\Strings.xml

- The first command above creates a file called Strings.xml at c:\ that contains the resource strings of RaptorXML Server in German.
- The second command calls the server-executable to do the same thing as the first example.

Creating localized versions of RaptorXML Server
You can create a localized version of RaptorXML Server for any language of your choice. Five localized versions (English, German, Spanish, French, and Japanese) are already available in the C:\Program Files (x86) \Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin folder, and therefore do not need to be created.

Create a localized version as follows:

1. Generate an XML file containing the resource strings by using the exportresourcestrings command (see command syntax above). The resource strings in this XML file will be one of the five supported languages: English (en), German (de), Spanish (es), French (fr), or Japanese (ja), according to the LanguageCode argument used with the command.
2. Translate the resource strings from one of the five supported languages into the target language. The resource strings are the contents of the <string> elements in the XML file. Do not translate variables in curly brackets, such as {option} or {product}.
3. Contact Altova Support to generate a localized RaptorXML Server DLL file from your translated XML file.
4. After you receive your localized DLL file from Altova Support, save the DLL in the C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin folder. Your DLL file will have a name of the form RaptorXML2021_lc.dll. The _lc part of the name contains the language code. For example, in RaptorXML2021_de.dll, the de part is the language code for German (Deutsch).
5. Run the setdeflang command to set your localized DLL file as the RaptorXML Server application to use. For the argument of the setdeflang command, use the language code that is part of the DLL name.

Note: Altova RaptorXML Server is delivered with support for five languages: English, German, Spanish, French, and Japanese. So you do not need to create a localized version of these languages. To set any of these languages as the default language, use RaptorXML Server's setdeflang command.

4.10.10  debug

Syntax and description
The debug command starts RaptorXML Server for debugging—not as a service. To stop RaptorXML Server in this mode, press Ctrl+C.
raptorxmlserver debug [options]

▼ Casing and slashes on the command line

RaptorXML (and RaptorXMLServer for administration commands) on Windows
raptorxml (and raptorxmlserver for administration commands) on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

▼ Backslashes, spaces, and special characters on Windows systems

On Windows systems: When spaces or special characters occur in strings (for example in file or folder names, or company, person or product names), use quotes: for example, "My File". Note, however, that a backslash followed by a double-quotation mark (for example, "C:\My directory\") might not be read correctly. This is because the backslash character is also used to indicate the start of an escape sequence, and the escape sequence " stands for the double-quotation mark character. If you want to escape this sequence of characters, use a preceding backslash, like this: \". To summarize: If you need to write a file path that contains spaces or an end backslash, write it like this: "C:\My Directory\".

Example

Example of the debug command:

raptorxmlserver debug

Options

Options are listed in short form (if available) and long form. You can use one or two dashes for both short and long forms. An option may or may not take a value. If it takes a value, it is written like this: --option=value. Values can be specified without quotes except in two cases: (i) when the value string contains spaces, or (ii) when explicitly stated in the description of the option that quotes are required. If an option takes a Boolean value and no value is specified, then the option's default value is TRUE. Use the --h, --help option to display information about the command.

▼ config [c]

--c, --config = File

Specifies the path to a configuration file.

▼ port

--port = PortNumber

The port number of the debug instance of RaptorXML Server
### 4.10.11 help

#### Syntax and description

The `help` command takes a single argument (*Command*), which is the name of the command for which help is required. It displays the command’s syntax, its options, and other relevant information. If the *Command* argument is not specified, then all commands of the executable are listed, with each having a brief text description. The `help` command can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

```
  raptorxml help Command
  raptorxmlserver help Command
```

▼ Casing and slashes on the command line

- *RaptorXML* (and *RaptorXMLServer* for administration commands) *on Windows*
- `raptorxml` (and `raptorxmlserver` for administration commands) *on Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)*

* Note that lowercase (`raptorxml` and `raptorxmlserver`) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (*RaptorXML*) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

---

#### Example

Examples of the `help` command to display information about the `licenseserver` command (this command is available in both executables):

```
  raptorxml help licenseserver
  raptorxmlserver help licenseserver
```

#### The `--help` option

Help information about a command is also available by using the `--help` option of the command for which help information is required. The two commands below produce the same results:

```
  raptorxml licenseserver --help
```

The command above uses the `--help` option of the `licenseserver` command.

```
  raptorxml help licenseserver
```

The `help` command takes `licenseserver` as its argument.

Both commands display help information about the `licenseserver` command.
4.10.12 version

Syntax and description

The `version` command displays the version number of RaptorXML Server. It can be called from either executable: `raptorxml` or `raptorxmlserver`.

```
  raptorxml version
  raptorxmlserver version
```

▼ Casing and slashes on the command line

- **RaptorXML** (and **RaptorXMLServer** for administration commands) on **Windows**
- **raptorxml** (and **raptorxmlserver** for administration commands) on **Windows and Unix (Linux, Mac)**

* Note that lowercase (raptorxml and raptorxmlserver) works on all platforms (Windows, Linux, and Mac), while upper-lower (RaptorXML) works only on Windows and Mac.
* Use forward slashes on Linux and Mac, backslashes on Windows.

Example

Examples of the `version` command:

```
  raptorxml version
  raptorxmlserver version
```
4.11 Options

This section contains a description of all CLI options, organized by functionality. To find out which options may be used with each command, see the description of the respective commands.

- Catalogs, Global Resources, ZIP Files
- Messages, Errors, Help
- Processing
- XML
- XSD
- XQuery
- XSLT
- JSON/Avro
- XML Signatures

4.11.1 Catalogs, Global Resources, ZIP Files

**catalog**

```
--catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to a root catalog file that is not the installed root catalog file. The default value is the absolute path to the installed root catalog file (`<installation-folder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\RootCatalog.xml`). See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**user-catalog**

```
--user-catalog = FILE
```

Specifies the absolute path to an XML catalog to be used in addition to the root catalog. See the section, XML Catalogs, for information about working with catalogs.

**enable-globalresources**

```
--enable-globalresources = true|false
```

Enables global resources. Default value is false.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

**globalresourceconfig** [gc]

```
--gc | --globalresourceconfig = VALUE
```

Specifies the active configuration of the global resource (and enables global resources).

**globalresourcefile** [gr]

```
--gr | --globalresourcefile = FILE
```

Specifies the global resource file (and enables global resources).

**recurse**

```
--recurse = true|false
```

Used to select files within sub-directories, including in ZIP archives. If true, the command's *InputFile*
argument will select the specified file also in subdirectories. For example: "test.zip|zip\test.xml" will select files named test.xml at all folder levels of the zip folder. References to ZIP files must be given in quotes. The wildcard characters * and ? may be used. So, *.xml will select all .xml files in the (zip) folder. The option's default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

4.11.2 Messages, Errors, Help, Timeout, Version

error-format

```
--error-format = text|shortxml|longxml
```

Specifies the format of the error output. Default value is text. The other options generate XML formats, with longxml generating more detail.

error-limit

```
--error-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the error limit with a value range of 1 to 9999 or unlimited. The default value is 100. Processing stops when the error limit is reached. Useful for limiting processor use during validation/transformation.

help

```
--help
```

Displays help text for the command. For example, valany --h. (Alternatively the help command can be used with an argument. For example: help valany.)

info-limit

```
--info-limit = N | unlimited
```

Specifies the information message limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if the specified info limit is reached, but further messages are not reported. The default value is 100.

log-output

```
--log-output = FILE
```

Writes the log output to the specified file URL. Ensure that the CLI has write permission to the output location.

network-timeout

```
--network-timeout = VALUE
```

Specifies the timeout in seconds for remote I/O operations. Default is 40.

verbose

```
--verbose = true|false
```

A value of true enables output of additional information during validation. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.
© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH

Command Line Interface (CLI)

Options 187

--- verbose-output = FILE
Writes verbose output to FILE.

version

--version
Displays the version of RaptorXML Server. If used with a command, place --version before the command.

warning-limit

--warning-limit = N | unlimited
Specifies the warning limit in the range 1-65535 or unlimited. Processing continues if this limit is reached, but further warnings are not reported. The default value is 100.

4.11.3 Processing

listfile

--listfile = true|false
If true, treats the command’s InputFile argument as a text file containing one filename per line. Default value is false. (An alternative is to list the files on the CLI with a space as separator. Note, however, that CLIs have a maximum-character limitation.) Note that the --listfile option applies only to arguments, and not to options.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

parallel-assessment [pa]

--pa | --parallel-assessment = true|false
If set to true, schema validity assessment is carried out in parallel. This means that if there are more than 128 elements at any level, these elements are processed in parallel using multiple threads. Very large XML files can therefore be processed faster if this option is enabled. Parallel assessment takes place on one hierarchical level at a time, but can occur at multiple levels within a single infoset. Note that parallel assessment does not work in streaming mode. For this reason, the --streaming option is ignored if --parallel-assessment is set to true. Also, memory usage is higher when the --parallel-assessment option is used. The default setting is false. Short form for the option is --pa.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

script

--script = FILE
Executes the Python script in the submitted file after validation has been completed. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script.

script-api-version

--api, --script-api-version = 1; 2; 2.1; 2.2; 2.3; 2.4; 2.4.1; 2.5; 2.6; 2.7; 2.8; 2.8.1; 2.8.2; 2.8.3
Specifies the Python API version to be used for the script. The default value is the latest version, currently 2.8.3. Instead of the values 1 and 2, you can also use the values 1.0 and 2.0, respectively.
script-param

```bash
--script-param = KEY:VALUE
```

Additional user-specified parameters that can be accessed during the execution of Python scripts. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one script parameter.

streaming

```bash
--streaming = true|false
```

Enables streaming validation. Default is `true`. In streaming mode, data stored in memory is minimized and processing is faster. The downside is that information that might be required subsequently—for example, a data model of the XML instance document—will not be available. In situations where this is significant, streaming mode will need to be turned off (by giving `--streaming` a value of `false`). When using the `--script` option with the `valxml-withxsd` command, disable streaming. Note that the `--streaming` option is ignored if `--parallel-assessment` is set to `true`.

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

xml-validation-error-as-warning

```bash
--xml-validation-error-as-warning = true|false
```

If `true`, treats validation errors as warnings. If errors are treated as warnings, additional processing, such as XSLT transformations, will continue regardless of errors. Default is `false`.

4.11.4 XML

assessment-mode

```bash
--assessment-mode = lax|strict
```

Specifies the schema-validity assessment mode as defined in the XSD specifications. Default value is `strict`. The XML instance document will be validated according to the mode specified with this option.

dtd

```bash
--dtd = FILE
```

Specifies the external DTD document to use for validation. If a reference to an external DTD is present in the XML document, then the CLI option overrides the external reference.

load-xml-with-psvi

```bash
--load-xml-with-psvi = true|false
```

Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation information for them. Default is `true`.

namespaces

```bash
--namespaces = true|false
```

Enables namespace-aware processing. This is useful for checking the XML instance for errors due to incorrect namespaces. Default value is `false`.

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

xinclude
--xinclude = true|false
Enables XML Inclusions (XInclude) support. Default value is false. When false, XInclude's include elements are ignored.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

xml-mode

--xml-mode = wf|id|valid
Specifies the XML processing mode to use for the XML instance document: wf=wellformed check; id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each instance document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

xml-validation-error-as-warning

--xml-validation-error-as-warning = true|false
If true, treats validation errors as warnings. If errors are treated as warnings, additional processing, such as XSLT transformations, will continue regardless of errors. Default is false.

taxd

--xsd = FILE
Specifies one or more XML Schema documents to use for the validation of XML instance documents. Add the option multiple times to specify more than one schema document.

4.11.5 XSD

assessment-mode

--assessment-mode = lax|strict
Specifies the schema-validity assessment mode as defined in the XSD specifications. Default value is strict. The XML instance document will be validated according to the mode specified with this option.

ct-restrict-mode

--ct-restrict-mode = 1.0|1.1|default
Specifies how to check complex type restrictions. A value of 1.0 checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD 1.0 specification—even in XSD 1.1 validation mode. A value of 1.1 checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD 1.1 specification—even in XSD 1.0 validation mode. A value of default checks complex type restrictions as defined in the XSD specification of the current validation mode (1.0 or 1.1). The default value is default.

namespaces

--namespaces = true|false
Enables namespace-aware processing. This is useful for checking the XML instance for errors due to incorrect namespaces. Default value is false.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

report-import-namespace-mismatch-as-warning
**--report-import-namespace-mismatch-as-warning = true|false**

Downgrades namespace or target-namespace mismatch errors when importing schemas with `xs:import` from errors to warnings. The default value is `false`.

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**schema-imports**

**--schema-imports =** load-by-schemalocation | load-preferring-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | license-namespace-only

Specifies the behaviour of `xs:import` elements, each of which has an optional `namespace` attribute and an optional `schemaLocation` attribute: `<import namespace="someNS" schemaLocation="someURL">`. The option specifies whether to load a schema document or just license a namespace, and, if a schema document is to be loaded, which information should be used to find it. Default: `load-preferring-schemalocation`. The behavior is as follows:

- **load-by-schemalocation:** The value of the `schemalocation` attribute is used to locate the schema, taking account of catalog mappings. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).
- **load-preferring-schemalocation:** If the `schemalocation` attribute is present, it is used, taking account of catalog mappings. If no `schemalocation` attribute is present, then the value of the namespace attribute is used via a catalog mapping. This is the default value.
- **load-by-namespace:** The value of the namespace attribute is used to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.
- **load-combining-both:** If either the namespace or `schemalocation` attribute has a catalog mapping, then the mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the `--schema-mapping` option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- **license-namespace-only:** The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

**schemalocation-hints**

**--schemalocation-hints =** load-by-schemalocation | load-by-namespace | load-combining-both | ignore

Specifies the behavior of the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes: Whether to load a schema document, and, if yes, which information should be used to find it. Default: `load-by-schemalocation`.

- The `load-by-schemalocation` value uses the URL of the schema location in the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes in XML instance documents. This is the default value.
- The `load-by-namespace` value takes the namespace part of `xsi:schemaLocation` and an empty string in the case of `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` and locates the schema via a catalog mapping.
- If `load-combining-both` is used and if either the namespace part or the URL part has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of the `--schema-mapping` option (XML/XSD option) decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor URL has a catalog mapping, the URL is used.
- If the option's value is `ignore`, then the `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes are both ignored.
--schema-mapping = prefer-schemalocation | prefer-namespace
If schema location and namespace are both used to find a schema document, specifies which of them should be preferred during catalog lookup. (If either the --schemalocation-hints or the --schema-imports option has a value of load-combining-both, and if the namespace and URL parts involved both have catalog mappings, then the value of this option specifies which of the two mappings to use (namespace mapping or URL mapping; the prefer-schemalocation value refers to the URL mapping).) Default is prefer-schemalocation.

xml-mode-for-schemas
--xml-mode-for-schemas = wf|id|valid
Specifies the XML processing mode to use for XML schema documents: wf=wellformed check; id=wellformed with ID/IDREF checks; valid=validation. Default value is wf. Note that a value of valid requires that each schema document loaded during processing references a DTD. If no DTD exists, an error is reported.

xsd-version
--xsd-version = 1.0|1.1|detect
Specifies the W3C Schema Definition Language (XSD) version to use. Default is 1.0. This option can also be useful to find out in what ways a schema which is 1.0-compatible is not 1.1-compatible. The detect option is an Altova-specific feature. It enables the version of the XML Schema document (1.0 or 1.1) to be detected by reading the value of the @vc:minVersion attribute of the document's <xs:element> element. If the value of the @vc:minVersion attribute is 1.1, the schema is detected as being version 1.1. For any other value, or if the @vc:minVersion attribute is absent, the schema is detected as being version 1.0.

4.11.6 XQuery

indent-characters
--indent-characters = VALUE
Specifies the character string to be used as indentation.

input
--input = FILE
The URL of the XML file to be transformed.

keep-formatting
--keep-formatting = true|false
Keeps the formatting of the target document to the maximum extent that this is possible. Default is: true.

omit-xml-declaration
--omit-xml-declaration = true|false
Serialization option to specify whether the XML declaration should be omitted from the output or not. If true, there will be no XML declaration in the output document. If false, an XML declaration will be included. Default value is false.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.
output, xsltoutput

```plaintext
output = FILE, xsltoutput = FILE
```

The URL of the primary-output file. For example, in the case of multiple-file HTML output, the primary-output file will be the location of the entry point HTML file. Additional output files, such as generated image files, are reported as xslt-additional-output-files. If no --output or --xsltoutput option is specified, output is written to standard output.

output-encoding

```plaintext
--output-encoding = VALUE
```

The value of the encoding attribute in the output document. Valid values are names in the IANA character set registry. Default value is UTF-8.

output-indent

```plaintext
--output-indent = true|false
```

If true, the output will be indented according to its hierarchic structure. If false, there will be no hierarchical indentation. Default is false.

**Note:** Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

output-method

```plaintext
--output-method = xml|html|xhtml|text
```

Specifies the output format. Default value is xml.

param [p]

```plaintext
--p | --param = KEY:VALUE
```

**XQuery**

Specifies the value of an external parameter. An external parameter is declared in the XQuery document with the declare variable declaration followed by a variable name and then the external keyword followed by the trailing semi-colon. For example:

```
declare variable $foo as xs:string external;
```

The external keyword $foo becomes an external parameter, the value of which is passed at runtime from an external source. The external parameter is given a value with the CLI command. For example:

```
--param=foo:'MyName'
```

In the description statement above, KEY is the external parameter name, VALUE is the value of the external parameter, given as an XPath expression. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the XQuery document. If multiple external parameters are passed values on the CLI, each must be given a separate --param option. Double quotes must be used if the XPath expression contains spaces.

**XSLT**

Specifies a global stylesheet parameter. KEY is the parameter name, VALUE is an XPath expression that provides the parameter value. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the stylesheet. If multiple parameters are used, the --param switch must be used before each parameter. Double quotes must be used around the XPath expression if it contains a space—whether the space is in the XPath expression itself or in a string literal in the expression. For example:

```
raptorxml xslt --input=c:\Test.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --
param=date://node[1]/@att1 --p=title:'stringwithoutspace' --param=title:"'string
with spaces" --p=amount:456 c:\Test.xslt

- `updated-xml`
  
  `--updated-xml = discard|writeback|asmainresult`

  Specifies how the updated XML file should be handled. The updates can be either:
  
  - discarded and not written to file (`discard`)
  - written back to the input XML file that is specified with the `--input` option (`writeback`)
  - saved either to standard output or to the location specified in the `--output` option (if this is defined)

  Default is: `discard`.

- `xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings`
  
  `--xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false`

  If `true`, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is `false`.

- `xquery-update-version`
  
  `--xquery-update-version = 1|1.0|3|3.0`

  Specifies whether the XQuery processor should use XQuery Update Facility 1.0 or XQuery Update Facility 3.0. Default value is `3`.

- `xquery-version`
  
  `--xquery-version = 1|1.0|3|3.0|3.1`

  Specifies whether the XQuery processor should use XQuery 1.0 or XQuery 3.0. Default value is `3.1`.

### 4.11.7 XSLT

- `chartext-disable`
  
  `--chartext-disable = true|false`

  Disables chart extensions. Default value is `false`.

  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- `dotnetext-disable`
  
  `--dotnetext-disable = true|false`

  Disables .NET extensions. Default value is `false`.

  **Note**: Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

- `indent-characters`
  
  `--indent-characters = VALUE`

  Specifies the character string to be used as indentation.
input

--input = FILE
The URL of the XML file to be transformed.

javaext-barcode-location

--javaext-barcode-location = FILE
Specifies the path to the folder that contains the barcode extension file AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar. The path must be given in one of the following forms:

- A file URI, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="file:///C:/Program Files/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/jar/"
- A Windows path with backslashes escaped, for example: --javaext-barcode-location="C:\Program Files\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\jar\"

javaext-disable

--javaext-disable = true|false
Disables Java extensions. Default value is false.

Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

output, xsltoutput

output = FILE, xsltoutput = FILE
The URL of the primary-output file. For example, in the case of multiple-file HTML output, the primary-output file will be the location of the entry point HTML file. Additional output files, such as generated image files, are reported as xslt-additional-output-files. If no --output or --xsltoutput option is specified, output is written to standard output.

param [p]

--p | --param = KEY:VALUE

**XQuery**

Specifies the value of an external parameter. An external parameter is declared in the XQuery document with the `declare variable` declaration followed by a variable name and then the `external` keyword followed by the trailing semi-colon. For example:

```xml
declare variable $foo as xs:string external;
```

The `external` keyword `$foo` becomes an external parameter, the value of which is passed at runtime from an external source. The external parameter is given a value with the CLI command. For example:

```
--param=foo:'MyName'
```

In the description statement above, KEY is the external parameter name, VALUE is the value of the external parameter, given as an XPath expression. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the XQuery document. If multiple external parameters are passed values on the CLI, each must be given a separate --param option. Double quotes must be used if the XPath expression contains spaces.

**XSLT**

Specifies a global stylesheet parameter. KEY is the parameter name, VALUE is an XPath expression that provides the parameter value. Parameter names used on the CLI must be declared in the stylesheet. If multiple parameters are used, the --param switch must be used before each parameter. Double quotes must be used around the XPath expression if it contains a space—whether
the space is in the XPath expression itself or in a string literal in the expression. For example:

```
  raptorxml xslt --input=c:\Test.xml --output=c:\Output.xml --
  param=date://node[1]/@att1 --p=title:'stringwithoutspace' --param=title:'string
  with spaces' --p=amount:456 c:\Test.xslt
```

**streaming**

`--streaming = true|false`

Enables streaming validation. Default is `true`. In streaming mode, data stored in memory is minimized and processing is faster. The downside is that information that might be required subsequently—for example, a data model of the XML instance document—will not be available. In situations where this is significant, streaming mode will need to be turned off (by giving `--streaming a value of false`). When using the `--script` option with the `valxml-withxsd` command, disable streaming. Note that the `--streaming option is ignored if `--parallel-assessment` is set to `true`.

*Note:* Boolean option values are set to `true` if the option is specified without a value.

**initial-template, template-entry-point**

`--initial-template, --template-entry-point = VALUE`

Gives the name of a named template in the XSLT stylesheet that is the entry point of the transformation.

**initial-mode, template-mode**

`--initial-mode, --template-mode = VALUE`

Specifies the template mode to use for the transformation.

**xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings**

`--xpath-static-type-errors-as-warnings = true|false`

If `true`, degrades to warnings any type errors that are detected in the XPath static context. Whereas an error would cause the execution to fail, a warning would enable processing to continue. Default is `false`.

**xslt-version**

`--xslt-version = 1|1.0|2.0|3.0|3.1`

Specifies whether the XSLT processor should use XSLT 1.0, XSLT 2.0, or XSLT 3.0. Default value is `3`.

### 4.11.8 JSON/Avro

**additional-schema**

`--additional-schema = FILE`

Specifies URIs of an additional schema document. The additional schema will be loaded by the main schema and can be referenced from the main schema by the additional schemas `id` or `$id` property.

**disable-format-checks**

`--disable-format-checks = true|false`

Disables the semantic validation imposed by the format attribute. Default value is `false`.
Note: Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

\[\text{jsonc}\]

\[--\text{jsonc} = \text{true}|\text{false}\]
Enables support for comments in JSON. Default value is false.
*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

\[\text{json-lines}\]

\[--\text{json-lines} = \text{true}|\text{false}\]
Enables support for JSON Lines (that is, one JSON value per line). Default value is false.
*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

4.11.9 XML Signatures

\[\text{absolute-reference-uri}\]

\[--\text{absolute-reference-uri} = \text{true}|\text{false}\]
Specifies whether the URI of the signed document is to be read as absolute (true) or relative (false).
Default is false.
*Note:* Boolean option values are set to true if the option is specified without a value.

\[\text{certname}, \text{certificate-name}\]

\[--\text{certname}, --\text{certificate-name} = \text{VALUE}\]
The name of the certificate used for signing.

*Windows*
This is the Subject name of a certificate from the selected --certificate-store.

*Example to list the certificates (under PowerShell)*
% ls cert://CurrentUser/My
PSParentPath: Microsoft.PowerShell.Security\Certificate::CurrentUser\My
Thumbprint Subject
---------- -------
C9DF64BB0AAF5FA73474D78B7CCFFC37C95BFC6C  CN=certificate1
...  CN=...

*Example:* --certificate-name==certificate1

*Linux/MacOS*
--certname specifies the file name of a PEM encoded X.509v3 certificate with the private key. Such files usually have the extension .pem.

*Example:* --certificate-name==/path/to/certificate1.pem

\[\text{certstore}, \text{certificate-store}\]
Options

Command Line Interface (CLI)

--certstore, --certificate-store = VALUE
The location where the certificate specified with --certificate-name is stored.

Windows
The name of a certificate store under cert://CurrentUser. The available certificate stores can be listed (under PowerShell) by using ls cert://CurrentUser/*. Certificates would then be listed as follows:

Name : TrustedPublisher
Name : ClientAuthIssuer
Name : Root
Name : UserDS
Name : CA
Name : ACRS
Name : REQUEST
Name : AuthRoot
Name : MSIEHistoryJournal
Name : TrustedPeople
Name : MyCertStore
Name : Local NonRemovable Certificates
Name : SmartCardRoot
Name : Trust
Name : Disallowed

Example: --certificate-store=MyCertStore

Linux/MacOS
The --certstore option is currently not supported.

▼ digest, digest-method
--digest, --digest-method = sha1|sha256|sha384|sha512
The algorithm that is used to compute the digest value over the input XML file. Available values are: sha1|sha256|sha384|sha512.

▼ hmackey, hmac-secret-key
--hmackey, --hmac-secret-key = VALUE
The HMAC shared secret key; must have a minimum length of six characters.

Example: --hmackey=secretpassword

▼ hmaclen, hmac-output-length
--hmaclen, --hmac-output-length = LENGTH
Truncates the output of the HMAC algorithm to length bits. If specified, this value must be
- a multiple of 8
- larger than 80
- larger than half of the underlying hash algorithm's output length

▼ keyinfo, append-keyinfo
--keyinfo, --append-keyinfo = true|false
Specifies whether to include the KeyInfo element in the signature or not. The default is false.

**sigc14nmeth, signature-canonicalization-method**

```
--sigc14nmeth, --signature-canonicalization-method = VALUE
```

Specifies the canonicalization algorithm to apply to the SignedInfo element. The value must be one of:

- REC-xml-c14n-20010315
- xml-c14n11
- xml-exc-c14n#

**sigheth, signature-method**

```
--sigheth, --signature-method = VALUE
```

Specifies the algorithm to use for generating the signature.

*When a certificate is used*

If a certificate is specified, then SignatureMethod is optional and the value for this parameter is derived from the certificate. If specified, it must match the algorithm used by the certificate. Example: rsa-sha256.

*When –hmac-secret-key is used*

When HMACSecretKey is used, then SignatureMethod is mandatory. The value must be one of the supported HMAC algorithms:

- hmac-sha256
- hmac-sha386
- hmac-sha512
- hmac-sha1 (discouraged by the specification)

*Example:* hmac-sha256

**sigtype, signature-type**

```
--sigtype, --signature-type = detached | enveloping | enveloped
```

Specifies the type of signature to be generated.

**transforms**

```
--transforms = VALUE
```

Specifies the XML Signature transformations applied to the input document. The supported values are:

- REC-xml-c14n-20010315 for Canonical XML 1.0 (omit comments)
- xml-c14n11 for Canonical XML 1.1 (omit comments)
- xml-exc-c14n# for Exclusive XML Canonicalization 1.0 (omit comments)
- REC-xml-c14n-20010315#WithComments for Canonical XML 1.0 (with comments)
- xml-c14n11#WithComments for Canonical XML 1.1 (with comments)
- xml-exc-c14n#WithComments for Exclusive XML Canonicalization 1.0 (with comments)
- base64
- strip-whitespaces Altova extension

*Example:* --transforms=xml-c14n11
Note: This option can be specified multiple times. If specified multiple times, then the order of specification is significant. The first specified transformation receives the input document. The last specified transformation is used immediately before calculation of the digest value.

```
write-default-attributes
   --write-default-attributes = true|false
```
Specifies whether to include default attribute values from the DTD in the signed document.
5 Server APIs: HTTP REST, COM/.NET, Java

RaptorXML Server defines an HTTP REST interface, which is used by clients to dispatch validation jobs to the server. Clients can either access the HTTP REST interface directly or use the high-level COM/.NET and Java Server APIs. These APIs provide easy-to-use COM/.NET and Java classes which manage the creation and dispatch of the HTTP REST requests. The figure below shows a summary of the available HTTP REST client methods to communicate with the RaptorXML server.

There are three server APIs that can be used to communicate with RaptorXML via the HTTP REST interface (also see figure above).

- **HTTP REST client interface**
- **COM/.NET API**
- **Java API**

**Note:** The server APIs offer similar functionality as the command line interface (CLI). This includes validation and document transformations. If you wish to use advanced functionality, such as reading, extracting, and analysing data, then use the Engine APIs. The Engine APIs can provide additional information such as the count of elements, their positions in the document, and complex XBRL data access and manipulation.

**Usage**

RaptorXML Server should be installed on a machine that is accessible by clients over the local network. Once the RaptorXML Server service has been started, clients can connect to the server and issue commands. The following access methods are labeled as Server APIs because they provide a way to communicate with a remote RaptorXML server.

- **HTTP REST client interface**: Client requests are made in JSON format as described in the section **HTTP REST Client Interface**. Each request is assigned a job directory on the server, in which output files are saved. The server responds to the client with all the information relevant to the job.
- **COM/.NET API** and **Java API**: Applications and scripts in COM/.NET programming languages and Java applications use objects of the RaptorXML Server API to access...
functionality of RaptorXML Server. The RaptorXML Server API \(^\text{[56]}\) will issue the corresponding HTTP REST requests on behalf of the client. See the respective sub-sections for more information.

**Licensing**

RaptorXML Server is licensed on the machine on which it is installed. Connections to RaptorXML Server are made via HTTP.
5.1 HTTP REST Client Interface

RaptorXML Server accepts validation jobs submitted via HTTP (or HTTPS). The job description as well as the results are exchanged in JSON format. The basic workflow is as shown in the diagram below.

Security concerns related to the HTTP REST interface
The HTTP REST interface, by default, allows result documents to be written to...
any location specified by the client (that is accessible with the HTTP protocol). It is important therefore to consider this security aspect when configuring RaptorXML Server.

If there is a concern that security might be compromised or that the interface might be misused, the server can be configured to write result documents to a dedicated output directory on the server itself. This is specified by setting the `server.unrestricted-filesystem-access` option of the server configuration file to `false`. When access is restricted in this way, the client can download result documents from the dedicated output directory with `GET` requests. Alternatively, an administrator can copy/upload result document files from the server to the target location.

In this section

Before sending a client request, RaptorXML Server must be started and properly configured. How to do this is described in the section Server Setup. How to send client requests is described in the section Client Requests.

5.1.1 Server Setup

RaptorXML must be licensed on the machine on which it is installed. This installation can then be accessed via an HTTP REST Interface. To correctly set up RaptorXML Server, do the following. We assume that RaptorXML Server has already been correctly installed and licensed.

1. RaptorXML Server must be either started as a service or an application in order for it to be correctly accessed via HTTP or HTTPS. How to do this differs according to operating system and is described here: on Windows, on Linux, on macOS.
2. Use the initial server configuration to test the connection to the server. (The initial server configuration is the default configuration you get on installation.) You can use a simple HTTP GET request like `http://localhost:8087/v1/version` to test the connection. (The request can also be typed in the address bar of a browser window.) If the service is running you must get a response to an HTTP test request such as the version request above.
3. Look at the server configuration file, `server_config.xml`. If you wish to change any settings in the file, edit the server configuration file and save the changes. HTTPS is disabled by default, and will need to be enabled in the configuration file.
4. If you have edited the server configuration file, then restart RaptorXML Server as a service so that the new configuration settings are applied. Test the connection again to make sure that the service is running and accessible.

Note: Server startup errors, the server configuration file that is used, and license errors are reported in the system log. So, refer to the system log if there are problems with the server.

For more information about HTTPS, see the section HTTPS Settings.
5.1.1.1 Starting the Server

This section:

- Location of the Server executable
- Starting RaptorXML as a service on Windows
- Starting RaptorXML as a service on Linux
- Starting RaptorXML as a service on macOS

Location of the Server executable file
The RaptorXML Server executable is installed by default in the folder:

```
<ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin\RaptorXML.exe
```

The executable can be used to start RaptorXML Server as a service.

Starting as a service on Windows
The installation process will have registered RaptorXML Server as a service on Windows. You must, however, start RaptorXML Server as a service. You can do this in the following ways:

- Via the Altova ServiceController, which is available as an icon in the system tray. If the icon is not available, you can start Altova ServiceController and add its icon to the system tray by going to the Start menu, then selecting All Programs | Altova | Altova LicenseServer | Altova ServiceController.
- Via the Windows Services Management Console: Control Panel | All Control Panel Items | Administrative Tools | Services.
- Via the command prompt started with administrator rights. Use the following command under any directory: `net start "AltovaRaptorXMLServer"`
- Via the RaptorXML Server executable in a command prompt window: `RaptorXMLServer.exe debug`.

This starts the server, with server activity information going directly to the command prompt window. The display of server activity information can be turned on and off with the `http.log-screen` setting of the server configuration file. To stop the server, press `Ctrl+Break` (or `Ctrl+Pause`). When the server is started this way—rather than as a service as described in the three previous steps—the server will stop when the command line console is closed or when the user logs off.

Starting as a service on Linux
Start RaptorXML Server as a service with the following command:

```
[< Debian 8]  sudo /etc/init.d/raptorxmlserver start
[≥ Debian 8]  sudo systemctl start raptorxmlserver
[< CentOS 7]  sudo initctl start raptorxmlserver
[≥ CentOS 7]  sudo systemctl start raptorxmlserver
[< Ubuntu 15] sudo initctl start raptorxmlserver
[≥ Ubuntu 15] sudo systemctl start raptorxmlserver
[RedHat]      sudo initctl start raptorxmlserver
```
If at any time you need to stop RaptorXML Server, use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating System</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Debian 8</td>
<td><code>sudo /etc/init.d/raptorxmlserver stop</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ Debian 8</td>
<td><code>sudo systemctl stop raptorxmlserver</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CentOS 7</td>
<td><code>sudo initctl stop raptorxmlserver</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ CentOS 7</td>
<td><code>sudo systemctl stop raptorxmlserver</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 15</td>
<td><code>sudo initctl stop raptorxmlserver</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ Ubuntu 15</td>
<td><code>sudo systemctl stop raptorxmlserver</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RedHat</td>
<td><code>sudo initctl stop raptorxmlserver</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Starting as a service on macOS
Start RaptorXML Server as a service with the following command:

```
sudo launchctl load /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.RaptorXMLServer2021.plist
```

If at any time you need to stop RaptorXML Server, use:

```
sudo launchctl unload /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.altova.RaptorXMLServer2021.plist
```

5.1.1.2 Testing the Connection

This section:
- GET request to test the connection
- Server response and JSON data structure listing

GET request to test the connection
After RaptorXML Server has been started, test the connection using a GET request. (You can also type this request in the address bar of a browser window.)

```
http://localhost:8087/v1/version
```

Note: The interface and port number of RaptorXML Server is specified in the server configuration file, `server_config.xml`, which is described in the next section, Server Configuration.

Server response and JSON data structure listing
If the service is running and the server is correctly configured, the request should never fail. RaptorXML Server will return its version information as a JSON data structure (listing below).
5.1.1.3 Configuring the Server

This section:

- Server configuration file: initial settings
- Server configuration file: modifying the initial settings, reverting to initial settings
- Server configuration file: listing and settings
- Server configuration file: description of settings
- Configuring the server address

Server configuration file: initial settings

RaptorXML Server is configured by means of a configuration file called `server_config.xml`, which is located by default at:

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\server_config.xml
```

The initial configuration for RaptorXML Server defines the following:

- A port number of 8087 as the server’s port.
- That the server listens only for local connections (`localhost`).
- That the server writes output to `C:\ProgramData\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\Output\`.

Other default settings are shown in the listing of `server_config.xml` below.

Server configuration file: modifying the initial settings, reverting to initial settings

If you wish to change the initial settings, you must edit the server configuration file, `server_config.xml`, save it, and then restart RaptorXML Server as a service.

If you wish to recreate the original server configuration file (so that the server is configured with the initial settings again), run the command `createconfig`:

```
RaptorXMLServer.exe createconfig
```

On running this command, the initial settings file will be recreated and will overwrite the file `server_config.xml`. The `createconfig` command is useful if you wish to reset server configuration to the initial settings.

Note: If you modify the server configuration—by editing the server configuration file—you should test the connection again.
Server configuration file: listing and settings
The server configuration file, server_config.xml, is listed below with initial settings. Settings available in it are explained below the listing.

```
<config xmlns="http://www.altova.com/schemas/altova/raptorxml/config"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.altova.com/schemas/altova/raptorxml/config
  http://www.altova.com/schemas/altova/raptorxml/config.xsd"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
  <language>en</language>
  <server.unrestricted-filesystem-access>true</server.unrestricted-filesystem-access>
  <server.output-root-dir>C:\ProgramData\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\output\</server.output-root-dir>
  <server.script-root-dir>C:\ProgramFiles\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc\scripts\</server.script-root-dir>
  <http.enable>true</http.enable>
  <http.environment>production</http.environment>
  <http.socket-host>127.0.0.1</http.socket-host>
  <http.socket-port>8087</http.socket-port>
  <http.log-screen>true</http.log-screen>
  <http.access-file>C:\ProgramData\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\Log\access.log</http.access-file>
  <http.error-file>C:\ProgramData\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\Log\error.log</http.error-file>
</config>
```

Settings

**language**
Sets the language of server messages, in an optional language element. The default value is en (English). Allowed values are en|de|es|fr|ja (English, German, Spanish, French, and Japanese, respectively). See Localization Commands for an overview of how to localize RaptorXML.
server.unrestricted-filesystem-access

- When set to true (the default value), output files will be written directly to the location specified by the user and in Python scripts (possibly overwriting existing files of the same name). Note, however, that local file paths cannot be used to access files from a remote machine via HTTP. So, if RaptorXML Server is running on a remote machine, set the value of this option to false. Setting the value to true is only viable if the client and server are on the same machine and you want to write the output files to a directory on that machine.
- When set to false, files will be written to the job's directory in the output directory, and the URIs of these files will be included in the result document. Setting the value to false provides a layer of security, since files can be written to disk only in a dedicated and known job directory on the server. Job output files can subsequently be copied by trusted means to other locations.

server.output-root-dir
Directory in which the output of all submitted jobs is saved.

server.script-root-dir
Directory in which trusted Python scripts are to be saved. The script option, when used via the HTTP interface, will only work when scripts from this trusted directory are used. Specifying a Python script from any other directory will result in an error. See 'Making Python Scripts Safe'.

server.default-script-api-version
Default Python API version used to run Python scripts. By default the newest version of the Python API is used. Currently supported values are 1 and 2.

server.catalog-file
URL of the XML catalog file to use. By default, the catalog file RootCatalog.xml, which is located in the folder <ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\etc, will be used. Use the server.catalog-file setting only if you wish to change the default catalog file.

server.log-file
Name and location of the server log file. Events on the server, like Server started/stopped, are logged continuously in the system's event log and displayed in a system event viewer such as Windows Event Viewer. In addition to the viewer display, log messages can also be written to the file specified with the server.log-file option. The server log file will contain information about all activities on the server, including server startup errors, the configuration file used, and license errors.

http.enable
A boolean value to enable or disable HTTP: true | false. HTTP can be enabled/disabled independently of HTTPS, and both can be active concurrently.

http.environment
Internal environments of raptorxml: production | development. The Development environment will be more geared to the needs of developers, allowing easier debugging than when the Production environment is used.
http.socket-host
The interface via which RaptorXML Server is accessed. If you wish RaptorXML Server to accept connections from remote machines, uncomment the element and set its content to: `0.0.0.0`, like this: `<http.socket-host>0.0.0.0</http.socket-host>`. This hosts the service on every addressable interface of the server machine. In this case, ensure that firewall settings are suitably configured. Inbound firewall exceptions for Altova products must be registered as follows: Altova LicenseServer: port 8088; Altova RaptorXML Server: port 8087; Altova FlowForce Server: port 8082.

http.socket-port
The port via which the service is accessed. The port must be fixed and known so that HTTP requests can be correctly addressed to the service.

http.log-screen
If RaptorXML Server is started with the command `RaptorXMLServer.exe debug`, (see Starting the Server) and if `http.log-screen` is set to `true`, then server activity is displayed in the command line console. Otherwise server activity is not displayed. The log screen is displayed in addition to the writing of log files.

http.access-file
Name and location of the HTTP access file. The access file contains information about access-related activity. It contains information that is useful for resolving connection issues.

http.error-file
Name and location of the HTTP error file. The error file contains errors related to traffic to and from the server. If there are connection problems, this file can provide useful information towards resolving them.

http.max_request_body_size
This option specifies the maximum size of the request body that RaptorXML Server accepts. The default value is 100MB. If the size of a request body is larger than the value specified for this option, then the server responds with HTTP Error 413: Request entity too large. The option's value must be greater than or equal to zero. The limit can be disabled with `http.max_request_body_size=0`.

https.enable
A boolean value to enable or disable HTTPS: `true` | `false`. HTTPS can be enabled/disabled independently of HTTP, and both can be active concurrently. HTTPS support is disabled by default and must be enabled by changing the value of this setting to `true`.

https.socket-host
Takes a string value which is the host address on which HTTPS connections are accepted. To accept connections from the local host only, set `localhost` or `127.0.0.1`. If you wish RaptorXML Server to accept connections from all remote machines, set the value to: `0.0.0.0`, like this: `<https.socket-host>0.0.0.0</https.socket-host>`. This hosts the service on every addressable interface of the server machine. In this case, ensure that firewall settings are suitably configured. Inbound firewall exceptions for

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
The RaptorXML Server address

The HTTP address of the server consists of the socket-host and socket-port:
http://{socket-host}:{socket-port}/

The address as set up with the initial configuration will be:
http://localhost:8087/

To change the address, modify the http.socket-host and http.socket-port settings in the server configuration file, server_config.xml. For example, say the server machine has an IP address of 123.12.123.1, and that the following server configuration settings have been made:

`<http.socket-host>0.0.0.0</http.socket-host>`
`<http.socket-port>8087</http.socket-port>`

RaptorXML Server can then be addressed with:
http://123.12.123.1:8087/

**Note:** After `server_config.xml` has been modified, RaptorXML Server must be restarted for the new values to be applied.

**Note:** If there are problems connecting to RaptorXML Server, information in the files named in `http.access-file` and `http.error-file` can help resolve issues.

**Note:** Messages submitted to RaptorXML Server must contain path names that are valid on the server machine. Documents on the server machine can be accessed either locally or remotely (in the latter case with HTTP URIs, for example).
5.1.1.4 HTTPS Settings

RaptorXML Server supports startup not only as an HTTP server, but also as an HTTPS server. Both types of connection may be active concurrently.

Enabling HTTPS

HTTPS support is disabled by default. To enable HTTPS, in the server configuration file, *server_config.xml*, change the *https.enable* setting to *true*. Modify the various HTTPS settings of the configuration file according to your server requirements.

Private key and certificate

You can obtain a private key and certificate files in one of the following ways:

- From a certificate authority: Follow the steps described in the section Setting Up SSL Encryption.
- Create a self-signed certificate by using the following OpenSSL command (suitably modified for your environment):

  ```bash
  openssl req -x509 -newkey rsa:4096 -nodes -keyout key.pem -out cert.pem -days 365 -subj "/C=AT/ST=vienna/L=vienna/O=Altova Gmbh/OU=dev/CN=www.altova.com"
  ```

Testing the connection

A good way to test your connection is via the curl command line tool for transferring data with URLs. You can use the following command:

```bash
curl.exe https://localhost:443/v1/version
```

If the certificate is not trusted, use the -k option, like this:

```bash
curl.exe -k https://localhost:443/v1/version
```

The following command executes the HTTP Python example that is distributed with RaptorXML Server:

```bash
python3.exe examples\ServerAPI\python\RunRaptorXML.py --host localhost -p 443 -s
```

5.1.1.5 Setting Up SSL Encryption

If you wish to encrypt your RaptorXML Server data transfers using the SSL protocol, you will need to:

- Generate an SSL private key and create an SSL public key certificate file
- Set up RaptorXML Server for SSL communication.

The steps to do this are listed below.

This method uses the open-source OpenSSL toolkit to manage SSL encryption. The steps listed below, therefore, need to be carried out on a computer on which OpenSSL is available. OpenSSL typically comes pre-
installed on most Linux distributions and on macOS machines. It can also be installed on Windows computers. For download links to installer binaries, see the OpenSSL Wiki.

To generate a private key and obtain a certificate from a certificate authority, do the following:

1. Generate a private key

SSL requires that a **private key** is installed on RaptorXML Server. This private key will be used to encrypt all RaptorXML Server data. To create the private key, use the following OpenSSL command:

```
openssl genrsa -out private.key 2048
```

This creates a file called `private.key`, which contains your private key. Note where you save the file. You will need the private key to (i) generate the Certificate Signing Request (CSR), and (ii) be installed on RaptorXML Server.

2. Certificate Signing Requests (CSRs)

A Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is sent to a certificate authority (CA), such as VeriSign or Thawte, to request a public key certificate. The CSR is based on your private key and contains information about your organization. Create a CSR with the following OpenSSL command (which provides the private-key file, `private.key`, that was created in Step 1, as one of its parameters):

```
openssl req -new -nodes -key private.key -out my.csr
```

During generation of the CSR you will need to give information about your organization, such as that listed below. This information will be used by the certificate authority to verify your company’s identity.

- **Country**
- **Locality** (the city where your business is located)
- **Organization** (your company name). **Do not use special characters; these will invalidate your certificate**
- **Common Name** (the DNS name of your server). This must exactly match your server’s official name, that is, the DNS name client apps will use to connect to the server
- **A challenge password. Keep this entry blank!**

3. Buy an SSL certificate

Purchase an SSL certificate from a recognized certificate authority (CA), such as VeriSign or Thawte. For the rest of these instructions, we follow the VeriSign procedure. The procedure with other CAs is similar.

- Go to the [VeriSign website](https://www.verisign.com).
- Click [Buy SSL Certificates](https://www.verisign.com/ssl-certificates).
- Different types of SSL certificates are available. For RaptorXML Server, Secure Site or Secure Site Pro certificates should be sufficient. EV (extended verification) is not necessary, since there is no “green address bar” for users to see.
- Proceed through the sign-up process, and fill in the information required to place your order.
- When prompted for the CSR (created in Step 2), copy and paste the content of the `my.csr` file into the order form.
Pay for the certificate with your credit card.

**Allow time for obtaining a certificate**

Obtaining public key certificates from an SSL certificate authority (CA) typically takes **two to three business days**. Please take this into account when setting up your RaptorXML Server.

4. **Receive public key from CA**

   Your certificate authority will complete the enrollment process over the next two to three business days. During this time you might get emails or phone calls to check whether you are authorized to request an SSL certificate for your DNS domain. Please work with the authority to complete the process.

   After the authorization and enrollment process has been completed, you will get an email containing the **public key** of your SSL certificate. The public key will be in plain text form or attached as a .cer file.

5. **Save public key to file**

   For use with RaptorXML Server, the public key must be saved in a .cer file. If the public key was supplied as text, copy-paste all the lines from

   ```
   --BEGIN CERTIFICATE--
   ...
   --END CERTIFICATE--
   ```

   into a text file that we will call `mycertificate.cer`.

6. **Save CA's intermediate certificates to file**

   To complete your SSL certificate, you will need two additional certificates: the **primary and secondary intermediate certificates**. Your certificate authority (CA) will list content of intermediate certificates on its website.

   - Verisign's intermediate certificates for its Secure Site product: [https://knowledge.verisign.com/support/ssl-certificates-support/index?page=content&id=AR1735](https://knowledge.verisign.com/support/ssl-certificates-support/index?page=content&id=AR1735)

   Copy-paste both intermediate certificates (primary and secondary) into separate text files and save them on your computer.

7. **Optionally combine certificates in one public key certificate file**

   You now have three certificate files:
• Public key (mycertificate.cer)
• Secondary intermediate certificate
• Primary intermediate certificate

You can integrate your intermediate certificates into your public key certificate if you like. How to do this is described below. (Alternatively, you can use the https.certificate-chain configuration file setting to specify the location of intermediate certificates.)

Each contains text blocks bracketed by lines that look like this:

```
--BEGIN CERTIFICATE--
...
--END CERTIFICATE--
```

Now copy-paste all three certificates into one file so that they are in sequence. The order of the sequence is important: (i) public key, (ii) secondary intermediate certificate, (iii) primary intermediate certificate. Ensure that there are no lines between certificates.

```
--BEGIN CERTIFICATE--
 public key from mycertificate.cer (see Step 5)
--END CERTIFICATE--
--BEGIN CERTIFICATE--
 secondary intermediate certificate (see Step 6)
--END CERTIFICATE--
--BEGIN CERTIFICATE--
 primary intermediate certificate (see Step 6)
--END CERTIFICATE--
```

Save the resulting combined certificate text to a file named publickey.cer. This is the public key certificate file of your SSL certificate. It includes your public key certificate as well as the complete chain of trust in the form of the intermediate certificates that were used by the CA to sign your certificate.

### 5.1.2 Client Requests

After RaptorXML Server has been started as a service, its functionality can be accessed by any HTTP client which can:

- use the HTTP methods **GET, PUT, POST, and DELETE**
- set the **Content-Type** header field

An easy-to-use HTTP client

There are a number of web clients available for download from the Internet. An easy-to-use and reliable web client we found was Mozilla's [RESTClient](https://addons.mozilla.org/firefox/addon/restclient), which can be added as a Firefox plugin. It's easy to install, supports the HTTP methods required by RaptorXML, and provides sufficiently good JSON syntax coloring. If you have no previous experience with HTTP clients, you might want to try RESTClient. Note, however, that installation and usage of RESTClient is at your own risk.
A typical client request would consist of a series of steps as shown in the diagram below.

The important points about each step are noted below. Key terms are in bold.

1. An HTTP POST method is used to make a request, with the body of the request being in JSON format. The request could be for any functionality of RaptorXML Server. For example, the request could be for a validation, or for an XSLT transformation. The commands, arguments, and options used in the request are the same as those used on the command line. The request is posted to: http://localhost:8087/v1/queue, assuming localhost:8087 is the address of RaptorXML Server (the initial address of the server). Such a request is termed a RaptorXML Server job.
2. If the request is received and accepted for processing by RaptorXML Server, a **result document** containing the results of the server action will be created after the job has been processed. The **URI of this result document** (the Result-Doc-URI in the diagram above), is returned to the client. Note that the URI will be returned immediately after the job has been accepted (queued) for processing and even if processing has not been completed.

3. The client sends a request for the result document (using the result document URI) in a **GET** method to the server. If processing of the job has not yet started or has not yet been completed at the time the request is received, the server returns a status of **Running**. The GET request must be repeated till such time that job processing has been completed and the result document been created.

4. RaptorXML Server returns the result document in **JSON format**. The result document might contain the **URLs of error or output documents** produced by RaptorXML Server processing the original request. Error logs are returned, for example, if a validation returned errors. Primary output documents, such as the result of an XSLT transformation, are returned if an output-producing job is completed successfully.

5. The client sends the **URLs of the output documents** received in Step 4 via an HTTP GET method to the server. Each request is sent in a separate GET method.

6. RaptorXML Server returns the requested documents in response to the GET requests made in Step 5.

7. The client can delete unwanted documents on the server that were generated as a result of a job request. This is done by submitting, in an HTTP DELETE method, the URI of the result document in question. All files on disk related to that job are deleted. This includes the result document file, any temporary files, and error and output document files. This step is useful for freeing up space on the server's hard disk.

The details of each step are described in the sub-sections of this section.

### 5.1.2.1 Initiating Jobs with POST

**This section:**

- Sending the request
- JSON syntax for POST requests
- Uploading files with the POST request
- Uploading ZIP archives

**Sending the request**

A RaptorXML Server job is initiated with the HTTP **POST** method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HTTP Method</th>
<th>URI</th>
<th>Content-Type</th>
<th>Body</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POST</td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8087/v1/queue/">http://localhost:8087/v1/queue/</a></td>
<td>application/json</td>
<td>JSON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note the following points:

- The URI above has a server address that uses the settings of the initial configuration.
- The URI has a /v1/queue/ path, which must be present in the URI. It can be considered to be an abstract folder in memory into which the job is placed.
- The correct version number /vN is the one that the server returns (and not necessarily the one in this documentation). The number that the server returns is the version number of the current HTTP interface. Previous version numbers indicate older versions of the HTTP interface, which are still supported for backward compatibility.
- The header must contain the field: Content-Type: application/json. However, if you wish to upload files within the body of the POST request, then the message header must have its content type set to multipart/form-data (i.e. Content-Type: multipart/form-data). See the section Uploading files with the POST request for details.
- The body of the request must be in JSON format.
- Files to be processed must be on the server. So files must either be copied to the server before a request is made, or be uploaded along with the POST request. In this case the message header must have its content type set to multipart/form-data. See the section Uploading files with the POST request below for details.

To check the well-formedness of an XML file, the request in JSON format would look something like this:

```
{
    "command": "wfxml", "args": [ "file:///c:/Test/Report.xml" ]
}
```

Valid commands, and their arguments and options, are as documented in the Command Line section.

**JSON syntax for HTTP POST requests**

```
{
    "command": "Command-Name",
    "options": {"opt1": "opt1-value", "opt2": "opt2-value"},
    "args"   : ["file:///c:/filename1", "file:///c:/filename2"]
}
```

- All black text is fixed and must be included. This includes all braces, double quotes, colons, commas, and square brackets. Whitespace can be normalized.
- Blue italics are placeholders and stand for command names, options and option values, and argument values. Refer to the command line section for a description of the commands.
- The command and args keys are mandatory. The options key is optional. Some options keys have default values, so, of these options, only those for which the default values need to be changed need be specified.
- All strings must be enclosed in double quotes. Boolean values and numbers must not have quotes. So: {"error-limit": "unlimited"} and {"error-limit": 1} is correct usage.
Notice that file URIs—rather than file paths—are recommended and that they use forward slashes. Windows file paths, if used, take backslashes. Furthermore, Windows file-path backslashes must be escaped in JSON (with backslash escapes; so "c:\dir\filename"). Note that file URIs and file paths are strings and, therefore, must be in quotes.

Here is an example with options. Notice that some options (like input or xslt-version) take a straight option value, while others (like param) take a key-value pair as their value, and therefore require a different syntax.

```json
{
   "command": "xslt",
   "args": [
      "file:///C:/Work/Test.xslt"
   ],
   "options": {
      "input": "file:///C:/Work/Test.xml",
      "xslt-version": "1",
      "param": {
         "key": "myTestParam",
         "value": "SomeParamValue"
      },
      "output": "file:///C:/temp/out2.xml"
   }
}
```

The example below shows a third type of option: that of an array of values (as for the xsi option below). In this case, the syntax to be used is that of a JSON Array.

```json
{
   "command": "xsi",
   "args": [
      "file:///C:/Work/Test.xml"
   ],
   "options": {
      "xsd": [
         "file:///C:/Work/File1.xsd",
         "file:///C:/Work/File2.xsd"
      ]
   }
}
```

Uploading files with the POST request

Files to be processed can be uploaded within the body of the POST request. In this case, the POST request must be made as follows.

**Request header**

In the request header, set `Content-Type: multipart/form-data` and specify any arbitrary string as the boundary. Here is an example header:

```
Content-Type: multipart/form-data; boundary=----PartBoundary
```
The purpose of the boundary is to set the boundaries of the different form-data parts in the request body (see below).

**Request body: Message part**
The body of the request has the following form-data parts, separated by the boundary string specified in the request header (see above):

- **Mandatory form-data parts:** `msg`, which specifies the processing action requested, and `args`, which contains the files to be uploaded as the argument/s of the command specified in the `msg` form-data part. See the listing below.
- **Optional form-data part:** A form-data part name `additional-files`, which contains files referenced from files in the `msg` of `args` form-data parts. Additionally form-data parts named after an option of the command can also contain files to be uploaded.

**Note:** All uploaded files are created in a single virtual directory.

See [Example-1 (with Callouts): Validate XML](#) for a detailed explanation of the code, and [Example-2: Using a Catalog to Find the Schema](#).

### Testing with CURL
You can use a third-party data-transfer application such as CURL (http://curl.haxx.se/) to test the POST request. CURL provides a helpful trace option that generates and lists the part boundaries of the requests. This will save you the task of manually creating the part boundaries. How you can use CURL is described in the section, Testing with CURL.

### Uploading ZIP archives
ZIP archives can also be uploaded, and files within a ZIP can be referenced by using the `additional-files` scheme. For example:

```
additional-files:///mybigarchive.zip?Czip/binstance.xml
```

**Note:** The `|zip/` part needs to be URI-escaped as `%7Czip/` in order to conform to the URI RFC since the pipe `|` symbol is not directly allowed. The use of glob patterns (*) and ?) is also allowed. So you can use something like this to validate all XML files within the ZIP archive:

```
"command": "xsi", "args": ["additional-files:///mybigarchive.zip?Czip/*/xml"],
"options": {...}
```

See [Example-3: Using ZIP Archives](#) for a listing of example code.
5.1.2.1.1 Example-1 (with Callouts): Validate XML

Given below is a listing of the body of a POST request. It has numbered callouts that are explained below. The command submitted in the listing request would have the following CLI equivalent:

```
raptorxml xsi First.xml Second.xml --xsd=Demo.xsd
```

The request is for the validation of two XML files according to a schema. The body of the request would look something like this, assuming that `---PartBoundary` has been specified in the header as the boundary string (see Request Header above).

```
-----PartBoundary
Content-Disposition: form-data; name="msg"
Content-Type: application/json

{"command": "xsi", "options": {}, "args": []}

-----PartBoundary
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="First.xml"; name="args"
Content-Type: application/octet-stream

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><test xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="Demo.xsd"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">42</test>

-----PartBoundary
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="Second.xml"; name="args"
Content-Type: application/octet-stream

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><test xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="Demo.xsd"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">35</test>

-----PartBoundary
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="Demo.xsd"; name="additional-files"
Content-Type: application/octet-stream

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
elementFormDefault="qualified" attributeFormDefault="unqualified">
  <xs:element name="test" type="xs:int"/>
</xs:schema>

-----PartBoundary--
```

The name of the main form-data part boundaries are declared in the request header. The part boundary separator must be a unique string that will not occur anywhere in the body of the request.
embedded documents. It is prefixed with two dashes and is used to separate the multiple parts. The first form-data part in this example is `msg`. Note that the content type is `application/json`.

2 This is the standard syntax for HTTP POST requests. If `args` contains a reference to a file and if additional files are uploaded, both sets of files will be passed to the server.

3 The first member of the `args` array is a file attachment called `First.xml`.

4 The text of the file `First.xml`. It contains a reference to a schema called `Demo.xsd`, which will also be uploaded—in the `additional-files` form-data part.

5 The second member of the `args` array is an attachment called `Second.xml`.

6 The text of the file `Second.xml`. It too contains a reference to the schema `Demo.xsd` See callout 7.

7 The first additional files part contains the `Demo.xsd` attachment metadata.

8 The text of the file `Demo.xsd`.

9 The end of the `Demo.xsd` additional files part, and the `additional-files` form-data part. Note that the last part boundary separator is both prefixed and postfixed with two dashes.

### 5.1.2.1.2 Example-2: Using a Catalog to Find the Schema

In this example, a catalog file is used to find the XML schema that is referenced by the XML files to be validated.

```text
-----PartBoundary
Content-Disposition: form-data; name="msg"
Content-Type: application/json

{"command": "xsi", "args": ["additional-files:///First.xml", "additional-files:///Second.xml"], "options": {"user-catalog": "additional-files:///catalog.xml"}}

-----PartBoundary
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="First.xml"; name="additional-files"
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<test xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="http://example.com/Demo.xsd"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">42</test>

-----PartBoundary
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="Second.xml"; name="additional-files"
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<test xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="http://example.com/Demo.xsd"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">35</test>

-----PartBoundary
```
5.1.2.1.3  Example-3: Using ZIP Archives

ZIP archives can also be uploaded, and files within a ZIP can be referenced by using the additional-files scheme. For example:

```
additional-files:///mybigarchive.zip%7Czip/biginstance.xml
```

**Note:** The `zip` part needs to be URI-escaped as `%7Czip` in order to conform to the URI RFC since the `|` symbol is not directly allowed. The use of glob patterns (`*` and `?`) is also allowed. So you can use something like this to validate all XML files within the ZIP archive:

```
{"command": "xsi", "args": ["additional-files:///mybigarchive.zip%7Czip/*.*.xml"], "options": {}}
```

**Note:** 'Content-Disposition: form-data' is also valid, in addition to 'Content-Disposition: attachment'. Since several tools generate form-data as content-disposition, the value form-data is accepted as valid.

Example: Validating all XML files in a ZIP archive

In this example, it is assumed that all schema references are relative paths and that all schemas are contained within the zip.
Example: Validating XML files in a ZIP archive containing references to external schemas

In this example, the XML files in a ZIP archive are validated using references to an external schema, which is provided in a second ZIP archive.

```json
{"command": "xsi", "args": ["additional-files:///Instances.zip\%7Czip/*.xml"], "options": {"user-catalog": "additional-files:///Schemas.zip\%7Czip/catalog.xml"}}
```

5.1.2.1.4 Testing with CURL

The third-party application CURL (http://curl.haxx.se/) is a command line utility that you can use to test the POST request. CURL provides a very useful trace option that generates and lists the part boundaries of requests, which you can use directly in your requests or as a reference.

Given below is a sample test scenario in which an XML file is validated against an XML Schema. We assume the following:

- the commands below are executed from the folder in which the files to be submitted for validation are located; (this enables us to write simple relative paths to these files). If you have installed Altova’s XMLSpy application, the files used in this example can be found in the application’s Examples folder, which is located by default at: `C:\Users\<username>\Documents\Altova\XMLSpy2021\Examples`
- RaptorXML Server is running locally on port 8087
For more information about the CURL command line options, see the CURL Help.

Call CURL with the validation command on Windows

[input: powershell]
```powershell
\path\to\curl.exe -F "msg={"command": "xsi", "args": [{"additional-files:///PurchaseOrder.zip\7Czip/ipo.xml"}, "options":{}};type=application/json" -F "additional-files=@PurchaseOrder.zip;type=application/octet-stream"
http://localhost:8087/v1/queue
```

[output]
```json
{"jobid": "058F9E97-CB95-43EF-AC0A-496CD3AC43A3", "result": "/v1/results/058F9E97-CB95-43EF-AC0A-496CD3AC43A3"}
```

Use the URL of "result" to fetch the result

[input]
```powershell
\path\to\curl.exe http://localhost:8087/v1/results/058F9E97-CB95-43EF-AC0A-496CD3AC43A3
```

[output]
```json
{"jobid":"058F9E97-CB95-43EF-AC0A-496CD3AC43A3","state":"OK","error":{},"jobs": [{"file":"additional-files:///PurchaseOrder.zip\7Czip/ipo.xml","jobid":"D4B91CB0-CF03-4D29-B563-B6506E123A06","output":{},"state":"OK","error":{}}]}
```

CURL’s trace option

CURL has a trace option (`--trace-ascii`), which traces the HTTP traffic sent to and from the server. The option is very useful since it lists the part boundaries that are required for initiating jobs with POST. You can use the information in the trace, either directly or as a reference, to create the part boundaries. The listing below shows the trace obtained by running the command given above.

```
== Info: Trying ::1...
== Info: Connected to localhost (::1) port 8087 (#0)
=> Send header, 217 bytes (0xd9)
0000: POST /v1/queue HTTP/1.1
0019: Host: localhost:8087
002f: User-Agent: curl/7.42.1
0048: Accept: */*
0055: Content-Length: 2939
```
HTTP REST Client Interface

Server APIs: HTTP REST, COM/.NET, Java

006b: Expect: 100-continue
0081: Content-Type: multipart/form-data; boundary=------------------------
00c1: ----d887ed58324015c3
00d7:
<= Recv header, 23 bytes (0x17)
0000: HTTP/1.1 100 Continue
=> Send data, 393 bytes (0x189)
0000: ------------------------d887ed58324015c3
002c: Content-Disposition: form-data; name="msg"
0058: Content-Type: application/json
007a: {"command": "xsi", "args": ["additional-files:///PurchaseOrder.zip"]
00ba: p%7Czip/ipo.xml"], "options":{}}
00d7: 
0000: Content-Disposition: form-data; name="additional-files"; filename="PurchaseOrder.zip"
0148: e="PurchaseOrder.zip"
015f: Content-Type: application/octet-stream
0177: => Send data, 2498 bytes (0x9c2)
0000: PK........".6}.c.....M.....ipo.xsd.T.N.8}N....O 5v.}..S....{.
0040: .JU/...$Y..5{.E. ....I*...g...Y...\....Z..~......P.A.ct....y. ...
0940: ....".6]g........l.1........ ......address.xsdPK....... 
0980: ".6I................. ....ipo.xmlPK.................. 
09c0: ...
0000: 
0002: ------------------------d887ed58324015c3--
<= Recv header, 22 bytes (0x16)
0000: HTTP/1.1 201 Created
<= Recv header, 13 bytes (0xd)
0000: Allow: POST
<= Recv header, 32 bytes (0x20)
0000: Content-Type: application/json
<= Recv header, 37 bytes (0x25)
0000: Date: Fri, 24 Jul 2015 16:58:08 GMT
<= Recv header, 24 bytes (0x18)
0000: Server: CherryPy/3.6.0
<= Recv header, 21 bytes (0x15)
0000: Content-Length: 111
<= Recv header, 2 bytes (0x2)
0000: 
<= Recv data, 111 bytes (0x6f)
0000: {"jobid": "058F9E97-CB95-43EF-AC0A-496CD3AC43A3", "result": "/v1 
0040: /results/058F9E97-CB95-43EF-AC0A-496CD3AC43A3"}
== Info: Connection #0 to host localhost left intact

Note: Notice from the above listing that 'Content-Disposition: form-data' is also valid, in addition to 'Content-Disposition: attachment'.
Call CURL with the well-formed-check command on Linux

```
/path/to/curl -F 'msg={"command": "wfxml", "args":[]};type=application/json' -F "args=@ipo.xml;type=application/octet-stream" http://localhost:8087/v1/queue
```

```
/path/to/curl -F 'msg={"command": "wfxml", "args":['"additional-files:///ipo.zip%7Czip/ipo.xml""];type=application/json' -F "additional-files=@ipo.zip;type=application/octet-stream" http://localhost:8087/v1/queue
```

5.1.2.2 Server Response to POST Request

**This section:**

- Overview of possible server responses
- Response: Request failed, no response from server
- Response: Request communicated, but job rejected by server
- Response: Job executed (with positive or negative result)

When a POST request is made successfully to the server, the job is placed in the server queue. A 201 Created message and a result document URI are returned. The job will be processed at the earliest. In the meantime, if the result document is requested, a "status": "Running" message is returned if the job has not been completed; the client should try again at a later time. A Dispatched state indicates that the job is in the server queue but has not yet been started.

The result of the job (for example, a validation request) may be negative (validation failed) or positive (validation successful). In either case a 201 Created message is returned and a result document is generated. It is also possible that the POST request was not communicated to the server (Request failed), or the request was communicated but the job was rejected by the server (Request communicated, but job rejected). The various possible outcomes are shown in the diagram below.
The possible outcomes to the client's POST request are as follows:

**Request failed, no response from server**
When requests cannot be made successfully to the server, the most common errors are those listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>404 Not Found</td>
<td>The correct path is: <a href="http://localhost:8087/v1/queue/">http://localhost:8087/v1/queue/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405 Method Not Allowed</td>
<td>Specified method is invalid for this resource. Use the POST method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>415 Unsupported Media Type</td>
<td>The message header should be Content-Type:application/json.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Request communicated, but job rejected by server**
When requests are made successfully to the server, the server could reject them for the following reasons:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400 Bad Request (bad cmd)</td>
<td>The RaptorXML command[^45] is incorrect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 Bad Request (json error)</td>
<td>The request body has a JSON syntax[^47] error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Job executed (with positive or negative result)
When a job (for example, a validation job) is executed, its result can be positive (OK) or negative (Failed). For example, the result of a validation job is positive (OK) when the document to be validated is valid, negative (Failed) if the document is invalid.

In both cases, the job is executed, but with different results. A 201 Created message is returned in both cases as soon as the job is successfully placed in the queue. Also, in both cases a result document URI is returned to the HTTP client that made the request. (The result document itself might not yet have been created if processing of the job has not yet started or completed.) After the result document has been created, it can be fetched with an HTTP GET request. In addition to the result document, other documents may be generated also, as follows:

- **Job executed with result 'Failed'**: An error log is created in three formats: text, long XML, and short XML. The URIs of these three documents are sent in the result document (which is in JSON format). The URIs can be used in an HTTP GET request to fetch the error documents.
- **Job executed with result 'OK'**: The job is processed successfully and output documents—such as the output produced by an XSLT transformation—are created. If output files have been generated, their URIs are sent in the JSON-format result document. The URIs can then be used in an HTTP GET request to fetch the output documents. Note that not all jobs will have output files; for example, a validation job. Also a job can finish with a state of 'OK', but there might have been warnings and/or other messages that were written to error files. In this case, error file URIs are also sent in the result document (that is, in addition to output documents).

See [Getting the Result Document](#) and [Getting Error/Output Documents](#) for a description of these documents and how to access them.

### 5.1.2.3 Getting the Result Document

**This section:**

- **The Result Document URI**
- **Fetching the Result Document**
  - Result Document containing URIs of error documents
  - Result Document containing URIs of output documents
  - Result Document containing no URI
- **Accessing error and output documents listed in the Result Document**

**The Result Document URI**
A result document will be created every time a job is created, no matter whether the result of a job (for example, a validation) is positive (document valid) or negative (document invalid). In both cases a 201 Created message is returned. This message will be in JSON format and will contain a relative URI of the result document. The JSON fragment will look something like this:

```json
{
  "result": "/v1/results/E6C4262D-8ADB-49CB-8693-990DF79EABEB",
}
```
The result object contains the relative URI of the result document. The URI is relative to the server address. For example, if the server address is http://localhost:8087/ (the initial configuration address), then the expanded URI of the result document specified in the listing above will be:

http://localhost:8087/v1/results/E6C4262D-8ADB-49CB-8693-990DF79EABEB

Note: The correct version number /vN is the one that the server returns (and is not necessarily the one in this documentation). The number that the server returns is the version number of the current HTTP interface. Previous version numbers indicate older versions of the HTTP interface, which, however, are still supported for backward compatibility.

Fetching the Result Document

To get the result document submit the document's expanded URI (see above), in an HTTP GET request. The result document is returned and could be one of the generic types described below.

Note: When a job is successfully placed in the server queue, the server returns the URI of the result document. If the client requests the result before the job has been started (it is still in the queue), a "status": "Dispatched" message will be returned. If the job has been started but not completed (say, because it is a large job), a "status": "Running" message will be returned. In these two situations, the client should wait for some time before making a fresh request for the result document.

Note: The example documents below all assume restricted client access. So error documents, message documents, and output documents are all assumed to be saved in the relevant job directory on the server. The URIs for them in the result document are therefore all relative URIs. None is a file URI (which would be the kind of URI generated in cases of unrestricted client access). For the details of these URIs, see the section Getting Error/Message/Output Documents.

Result document containing URIs of error documents

If the requested job finished with a state of Failed, then the job returned a negative result. For example, a validation job returned a document-invalid result. The errors encountered while executing the job are stored in error logs, created in three file formats: (i) text, (ii) long-XML (detailed error log), and (iii) short-XML (less-detailed error log). See the JSON listing below.

```
{
    "jobid": "6B4EE31B-FAC9-4834-B50A-582FABF47B58",
    "state": "Failed",
    "error": {
        "text": "/v1/results/6B4EE31B-FAC9-4834-B50A-582FABF47B58/error/error.txt",
        "longxml": "/v1/results/6B4EE31B-FAC9-4834-B50A-582FABF47B58/error/long.xml",
        "shortxml": "/v1/results/6B4EE31B-FAC9-4834-B50A-582FABF47B58/error/short.xml"
    },
    "jobs": [
        {
            "file": "file://c:/Test/ExpReport.xml",
            "jobid": "20008201-219F-4790-BB59-C091C276FED2",
            "output":
```
Note the following:

- Jobs have sub-jobs.
- Errors at sub-job level propagate up to the top-level job. The state of the top-level job will be OK only if all of its sub-jobs have a state of OK.
- Each job or sub-job has its own error log.
- Error logs include warning logs. So, even though a job finishes with a state of OK, it might have URIs of error files.
- The URIs of the error files are relative to the server address (see above).

Result document containing URIs of output documents

If the requested job finished with a state of OK, then the job returned a positive result. For example, a validation job returned a document-valid result. If the job produced an output document—for example, the result of an XSLT transformation—then the URI of the output document is returned. See the JSON listing below.

```json
{
  "jobid": "5E47A3E9-D229-42F9-83B4-CC11F8366466",
  "state": "OK",
  "error":
    {
    
    
    
    
    
    }

  "jobs":
  [
    {
      "file": "file:///c:/Test/SimpleExample.xml",
      "jobid": "D34B5684-C6FF-4A7A-BF35-EBB9A8A8C2C8",
      "output":
      {
        "xslt-output-file":
        [
          "/v1/results/D34B5684-C6FF-4A7A-BF35-EBB9A8A8C2C8/output/1"
        ],
      }
    },
    {
      "state": "OK",
      "output-mapping":
      {
        "/v1/results/D34B5684-C6FF-4A7A-BF35-EBB9A8A8C2C8/output/1": "file:///c:/temp/test.html"
      }
    },
    {
      "error":
      {
      
      
      
      
      
      }
    }
  ]
}
```
Note the following:

- The output file is created in the output folder of the job. You can use its relative URI to access the file.
- The URIs of the output files are relative to the server address (see above).
- The output-mapping item maps the output document in the job directory on the server to the file location specified by the client in the job request. Notice that only output documents specified by the client in the job request have a mapping; job-related files generated by the server (such as error files) have no mapping.
- Alternatively, it is possible to retrieve all the generated result documents for a specific job as a zip archive using the URL "/v1/results/JOBID/output/zip". This feature is not available in unrestricted filesystem mode. Please note that the zip archive will contain mangled file names, which need to be mapped back to the actual names using the output-mapping object.

**Result document containing no URI**

If the requested job finished with a state of OK, then the job returned a positive result. For example, a validation job returned a document-valid result. Some jobs—such as a validation or well-formed-test—produce no output document. If a job of this type finishes with a state of OK, then the result document will have neither the URI of an output document nor the URI of an error log. See the JSON listing below.

```json
{
  "jobid": "3FC8B90E-A2E5-427B-B9E9-27CB7BB6B405",
  "state": "OK",
  "error": {},
  "jobs": [
    {
      "file": "file:///c:/Test/SimpleExample.xml",
      "jobid": "532F14A9-F9F8-4FED-BCDA-16A17A84BFEA",
      "output": {},
      "state": "OK",
      "error": {}
    }
  ]
}
```

Note the following:

- Both the output and error components of the sub-job in the listing above are empty.
- A job could finish with a state of OK but still contain warnings or other messages, which are logged in error files. In such cases, the result document will contain URIs of error files even though the job finished with a state of OK.

**Accessing error and output documents listed in the Result Document**

Error and output documents can be accessed with HTTP GET requests. These are described in the next section, [Getting Error/Output Documents](#).
5.1.2.4 Getting Error/Message/Output Documents

A result document can contain the file URIs or relative URIs of error documents, message documents (such as logs), and/or output documents. (There are some situations in which a result document might not contain any URI.) The various kinds of URIs are described below.

To access these documents via HTTP, do the following:

1. Expand the relative URI of the file in the result document to its absolute URI
2. Use the expanded URI in an HTTP GET request to access the file

URIs (in the result document) of error/message/output documents

The result document contains URIs of error, message, and/or output documents. Error and message documents are job-related documents that are generated by the server; they are always saved in the job directory on the server. Output documents (such as the output of XSLT transformations) can be saved to one of the following locations:

- To any file location accessible to the server. For output files to be saved to any location, the server must be configured to allow the client unrestricted access (the default setting).
- To the job directory on the server. The server is configured to restrict client access.

If a client specifies that an output file be created, the location to which the output file is saved will be determined by the server.unrestricted-filesystem-access option of the server configuration file.

- If access is unrestricted, the file will be saved to the location specified by the client and the URI returned for the document will be a file URI.
- If access is restricted, the file will be saved to the job directory and its URI will be a relative URI. Additionally, there will be a mapping of this relative URI to the file URL specified by the client. (See the listing of Result document containing URIs of output documents.)

In summary, therefore, the following kinds of URIs will be encountered:

**File URI of error/message documents**
These documents are saved in the job directory on the server. File URIs will have this form:

```
file:///<output-root-dir>/JOBID/message.doc
```

**File URI of output documents**
These documents are saved at any location. File URIs will have this form:

```
file:///<path-to-file>/output.doc
```

**HTTP URI of error/message/output documents**
These documents are saved in the job directory on the server. URIs are relative to the server address and must be expanded to the full HTTP URI. The relative will have this form:

```
/vN/results/JOBID/error/error.txt for error documents
/vN/results/JOBID/output/verbose.log for message documents
/vN/results/JOBID/output/1 for output documents
```

In the case of output documents, output mappings are given (see example listing). These mappings map each output document URI in the result document to the corresponding document in the client request.
Expand the relative URI

Expand the relative URI in the result document to an absolute HTTP URI by prefixing the relative URI with the server address. For example, if the server address is:

http://localhost:8087/ (the initial configuration address)

and the relative URI of an error file in the result document is:

/v1/results/20008201-219F-4790-BB59-C091C276FED2/error/error.txt

then the expanded absolute address will be


For more related information, see the sections: Configuring the Server and Getting the Result Document.

Use an HTTP GET request to access the file

Use the expanded URI in an HTTP GET request to obtain the required file. RaptorXML Server returns the requested document.

5.1.2.5 Freeing Server Resources after Processing

RaptorXML Server keeps the result document file, temporary files, and error and output document files related to a processed job on hard disk. These files can be deleted in one of two ways:

- By providing the URI of the result document with the HTTP DELETE method. This deletes all files related to the job indicated by the submitted result-document URI, including error and output documents.
- Manual deletion of individual files on the server by an administrator.

The structure of the URI to use with the HTTP DELETE method is as shown below. Notice that the full URI consists of the server address plus the relative URI of the result document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HTTP Method</th>
<th>URI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8087/v1/result/D405A84A-AB96-482A-96E7-4399885FAB0F">http://localhost:8087/v1/result/D405A84A-AB96-482A-96E7-4399885FAB0F</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To locate the output directory of a job on disk, construct the URI as follows:

[<server.output-root-dir> see server configuration file] + [jobid]

Note: Since a large number of error and output document files can be created, it is advisable to monitor hard disk usage and schedule deletions according to your environment and requirements.
5.2 COM/.NET API

RaptorXML Server is licensed on the machine on which it is installed. The .NET interface is built as a wrapper around the COM interface. The COM and .NET interfaces of RaptorXML Server use a single API: the COM/.NET API of RaptorXML Server (object reference here).

You can use RaptorXML Server with:

- Scripting languages, such as JavaScript, via the COM interface
- Programming languages, such as C#, via the .NET interface

5.2.1 COM Interface

RaptorXML Server is automatically registered as a COM server object when RaptorXML Server is installed. So it can be invoked from within applications and scripting languages that have programming support for COM calls. If you wish to change the location of the RaptorXML Server installation package, it is best to de-install RaptorXML Server and then re-install it at the required location. In this way the necessary de-registration and registration are carried out by the installer process.

Check the success of the registration

If the registration was successful, the Registry will contain the RaptorXML.Server classes. These classes will typically be found under HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes.

Code examples

- A VBScript example showing how the RaptorXML API can be used via its COM interface is listed in the following topic.
- An example file corresponding to this listing is available in the examples/API folder of the RaptorXML application folder.

5.2.2 COM Example: VBScript

The VBScript example below is structured into the following parts:

- Set up and initialize the RaptorXML COM object
- Validate an XML file
- Perform an XSLT transformation, return the result as a string
- Process an XQuery document, save the result in a file
- Set up the execution sequence of the script and its entry point

' The RaptorXML COM object
dim objRaptor

' Initialize the RaptorXML COM object
sub Init
    objRaptor = Null
    On Error Resume Next
    ' Try to load the 32-bit COM object; do not throw exceptions if object is not found
    Set objRaptor = WScript.GetObject( "", "RaptorXML.Server" )
    On Error Goto 0
    if ( IsNull( objRaptor ) ) then
        ' Try to load the 64-bit object (exception will be thrown if not found)
        Set objRaptor = WScript.GetObject( "", "RaptorXML_x64.Server" )
    end if
    ' Configure the server: error reporting, HTTP server name and port (IPv6 localhost in this example)
    objRaptor.ErrorLimit = 1
    objRaptor.ReportOptionalWarnings = true
    objRaptor.ServerName = "::1"
    objRaptor.ServerPort = 8087
end sub

' Validate one file
sub ValidateXML
    ' Get a validator instance from the Server object
    dim objXMLValidator
    Set objXMLValidator = objRaptor.GetXMLValidator()
    ' Configure input data
    objXMLValidator.InputFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml"
    ' Validate; in case of invalid file report the problem returned by RaptorXML
    if ( objXMLValidator.IsValid() ) then
        MsgBox( "Input string is valid" )
    else
        MsgBox( objXMLValidator.LastErrorMessage )
    end if
end sub

' Perform a transformation; return the result as a string
sub RunXSLT
    ' Get an XSLT engine instance from the Server object
    dim objXSLT
    set objXSLT = objRaptor.GetXSLT
    ' Configure input data
    objXSLT.InputXMLFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml"
    objXSLT.XSLFileName = "MyTransformation.xsl"
    ' Run the transformation; in case of success the result will be returned, in case of errors the engine returns an error listing
    MsgBox( objXSLT.ExecuteAndGetResultAsString() )
end sub

' Execute an XQuery; save the result in a file
sub RunXQuery
    ' Get an XQuery engine instance from the Server object
    dim objXQ
    set objXQ = objRaptor.GetXQuery()

    ' Configure input data
    objXQ.InputXMLFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml"
    objXQ.XQueryFileName = "MyQuery.xq"

    ' Configure serialization (optional - for fine-tuning the result's formatting)
    objXQ.OutputEncoding = "UTF8"
    objXQ.OutputIndent = true
    objXQ.OutputMethod = "xml"
    objXQ.OutputOmitXMLDeclaration = false

    ' Run the query; the result will be serialized to the given path
    call objXQ.Execute( "MyQueryResult.xml" )
end sub

' Perform all sample functions
sub main
    Init
    ValidateXML
    RunXSLT
    RunXQuery
end sub

' Script entry point; run the main function
main

5.2.3 .NET Interface

The .NET interface is built as a wrapper around the RaptorXML Server COM interface. It is provided as a primary interop assembly signed by Altova; it uses the namespace Altova.RaptorXMLServer.

Adding the RaptorXML DLL as a reference to a Visual Studio .NET project

In order to use RaptorXML Server in your .NET project, add a reference to the RaptorXML DLL (Altova.RaptorXMLServer.dll) in your project. Your RaptorXML Server installation contains a signed DLL file, named Altova.RaptorXMLServer.dll. This DLL file will automatically be added to the global assembly cache (GAC) when RaptorXML Server is installed using the RaptorXML Server installer. The GAC is typically in the folder: C:\WINDOWS\assembly.

To add the RaptorXML DLL as a reference in a .NET project, do the following:

1. With the .NET project open, click Project | Add Reference. The Add Reference dialog (screenshot below) pops up.
2. In the Browse tab, go to the folder: `<RaptorXML application folder>/bin`, select the RaptorXML DLL `Altova.RaptorXMLServer.dll`, and click OK.
3. Select the command View | Object Browser to see the objects of the RaptorXML API.

Once the `Altova.RaptorXMLServer.dll` is available to the .NET interface and RaptorXML has been registered as a COM server object, RaptorXML functionality will be available in your .NET project.

**Note:** RaptorXML will automatically be registered as a COM server object during installation. There is no need for a manual registration.

**Note:** If you receive an access error, check that permissions are correctly set. Go to Component Services and give permissions to the same account that runs the application pool containing RaptorXML.

**Code examples**
A [C# example](#) and a [Visual Basic .NET example](#) showing how the RaptorXML API can be used via its .NET interface are listed in the following topics. The files corresponding to these listings are available in the `examples/serverAPI` folder of the RaptorXML application folder.

## 5.2.4 .NET Example: C#

The C# example below does the following:
238

Server APIs: HTTP REST, COM/.NET, Java
·
·
·
·
·

COM/.NET API

Set up and initialize the RaptorXML .NET object 238
Validate an XML file 238
Perform an XSLT transformation, return the result as a string 238
Process an XQuery document, save the result in a file 239
Set up the execution sequence of the code and its entry point 239

using System;
using System.Text;
using Altova.RaptorXMLServer;
namespace RaptorXMLRunner
{
class Program
{
// The RaptorXML Server .NET object
static ServerClass objRaptorXMLServer;
// Initialize the RaptorXML Server .NET object
static void Init()
{
// Allocate a RaptorXML Server object
objRaptorXMLServer = new ServerClass();
// Configure the server: error reporting, HTTP server name and port
// (IPv6 localhost in this example)
objRaptorXMLServer.ErrorLimit = 1;
objRaptorXMLServer.ReportOptionalWarnings = true;
objRaptorXMLServer.ServerName = "::1"
objRaptorXMLServer.ServerPort = 8087
}

// Validate one file
static void ValidateXML()
{
// Get a validator engine instance from the Server object
XMLValidator objXMLValidator = objRaptorXMLServer.GetXMLValidator();
// Configure input data
objXMLValidator.InputFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml";
// Validate; in case of invalid file,
report the problem returned by RaptorXML
if ( objXMLValidator.IsValid() )
Console.WriteLine( "Input string is valid" );
else
Console.WriteLine( objXMLValidator.LastErrorMessage );
}

Altova RaptorXML Server 2021

© 2015-2021 Altova Gmb H


// Perform an XSLT transformation, and
// return the result as a string
static void RunXSLT()
{
    // Get an XSLT engine instance from the Server object
    XSLT objXSLT = objRaptorXMLServer.GetXSLT();

    // Configure input data
    objXSLT.InputXMLFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml";
    objXSLT.XSLFileName = "MyTransformation.xsl";

    // Run the transformation.
    // In case of success, the result is returned.
    // In case of errors, an error listing
    Console.WriteLine(objXSLT.ExecuteAndGetResultAsString());
}

// Execute an XQuery, save the result in a file
static void RunXQuery()
{
    // Get an XQuery engine instance from the Server object
    XQuery objXQuery = objRaptorXMLServer.GetXQuery();

    // Configure input data
    objXQuery.InputXMLFileName = exampleFolder + "simple.xml";
    objXQuery.XQueryFileName = exampleFolder + "CopyInput.xq";

    // Configure serialization (optional, for better formatting)
    objXQuery.OutputEncoding = "UTF8"
    objXQuery.OutputIndent = true
    objXQuery.OutputMethod = "xml"
    objXQuery.OutputOmitXMLDeclaration = false

    // Run the query; result serialized to given path
    objXQuery.Execute("MyQueryResult.xml");
}

static void Main(string[] args)
{
    try
    {
        // Entry point. Perform all functions
        Init();
        ValidateXML();
        RunXSLT();
        RunXQuery();
    }
    catch (System.Exception ex)
    {
        // Handle exceptions here
    }
}
```vbnet
Option Explicit On
Imports Altova.RaptorXMLServer

Module RaptorXMLRunner

' The RaptorXML .NET object
Dim objRaptor As Server

' Initialize the RaptorXML .NET object
Sub Init()

' Allocate a RaptorXML object
objRaptor = New Server()

' Configure the server: error reporting, HTTP server name and port (IPv6 localhost in this example)
objRaptor.ErrorLimit = 1
objRaptor.ReportOptionalWarnings = True
objRaptor.ServerName = '::1'
objRaptor.ServerPort = 8087
End Sub

' Validate one file
Sub ValidateXML()

' Get a validator instance from the RaptorXML object
Dim objXMLValidator As XMLValidator
objXMLValidator = objRaptor.GetXMLValidator()

' Configure input data
objXMLValidator.InputFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml"

' Validate; in case of invalid file report the problem returned by RaptorXML
Console.WriteLine( ex.Message );
Console.WriteLine( ex.ToString() );
```
If (objXMLValidator.IsValid()) Then
  Console.WriteLine("Input string is valid")
Else
  Console.WriteLine(objXMLValidator.LastErrorMessage)
End If
End Sub

' Perform a transformation; return the result as a string
Sub RunXSLT()

  ' Get an XSLT engine instance from the Server object
  Dim objXSLT As XSLT
  objXSLT = objRaptor.GetXSLT()

  ' Configure input data
  objXSLT.InputXMLFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml"
  objXSLT.XSLFileName = "MyTransformation.xsl"

  ' Run the transformation; in case of success the result will be returned, in case of errors the engine returns an error listing
  Console.WriteLine(objXSLT.ExecuteAndGetResultAsString())
End Sub

' Execute an XQuery; save the result in a file
Sub RunXQuery()

  ' Get an XQuery engine instance from the Server object
  Dim objXQ As XQuery
  objXQ = objRaptor.GetXQuery()

  ' Configure input data
  objXQ.InputXMLFileName = "MyXMLFile.xml"
  objXQ.XQueryFileName = "MyQuery.xq"

  ' Configure serialization (optional - for fine-tuning the result's formatting)
  objXQ.OutputEncoding = "UTF8"
  objXQ.OutputIndent = true
  objXQ.OutputMethod = "xml"
  objXQ.OutputOmitXMLDeclaration = false

  ' Run the query; the result will be serialized to the given path
  objXQ.Execute( "MyQueryResult.xml" )
End Sub

Sub Main()

  ' Entry point; perform all sample functions
  Init()
  ValidateXML()
  RunXSLT()
  RunXQuery()
End Sub

End Module
5.3 Java API

The RaptorXML Server API can be accessed from Java code. To access RaptorXML Server from Java code, the libraries listed below must be listed in the classpath. These libraries are installed in the bin folder of the installation folder.

- RaptorXMLServer.jar: The library that communicates with the RaptorXML server using HTTP requests
- RaptorXMLServer_JavaDoc.zip: A Javadoc file containing help documentation for the Java API

**Note:** In order to use the Java API, the Jar file must be on the Java Classpath. You may copy the Jar file to any location if this fits your project setup better than referencing it from the installed location.

5.3.1 Overview of the Interface

The Java API is packaged in the com.altova.raptorxml package. The RaptorXML class provides an entry-point method called getFactory(), which returns RaptorXMLFactory objects. So, a RaptorXMLFactory instance can be created with the call: RaptorXML.getFactory().

The RaptorXMLFactory interface provides methods for getting engine objects for validation and other processing functionality (such as XSLT transformation).

RaptorXMLFactory

The public RaptorXMLFactory interface is described by the following listing:

```java
public interface RaptorXMLFactory {
    public XMLValidator getXMLValidator();
    public XMLDSig getXMLDSig();
    public XQuery getXQuery();
    public XSLT getXSLT();
    public void setServerName(String name) throws RaptorXMLException;
    public void setServerPath(String path) throws RaptorXMLException;
    public void setServerPort(int port) throws RaptorXMLException;
    public void setGlobalCatalog(String catalog);
    public void setUserCatalog(String catalog);
    public void setGlobalResourcesFile(String file);
    public void setGlobalResourceConfig(String config);
    public void setErrorFormat(RaptorXMLException format);
    public void setErrorLimit(int limit);
    public void setReportOptionalWarnings(boolean report);
}
```

For more details, see the descriptions of RaptorXMLFactory and the respective Java methods. Also see the Example Java Project.
5.3.2 Example Java Project

The Java code listing below shows how basic functionality can be accessed. It is structured into the following parts:

- Locate the examples folder, and create a RaptorXML COM object instance
- Validate an XML file
- Perform an XSLT transformation, return the result as a string
- Process an XQuery document, return the result as a string
- Run the project

This basic functionality is included in the files in the examples/API folder of the RaptorXML Server application folder.

```java
public class RunRaptorXML {
    // Locate samples installed with the product
    // (will be two levels higher from examples/API/Java)
    // REMARK: You might need to modify this path
    static final String strExamplesFolder = System.getProperty("user.dir") + "/../..";

    static com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXMLFactory rxml;

    static void ValidateXML() throws com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXMLException {
        com.altova.raptorxml.XMLValidator xmlValidator = rxml.getXMLValidator();
        System.out.println("RaptorXML Java - XML validation");
        xmlValidator.setInputFromText("<!DOCTYPE root [ <!ELEMENT root (#PCDATA)> ]>
            <root>simple input document</root>");
        if (xmlValidator.isWellFormed())
            System.out.println("The input string is well-formed");
        else
            System.out.println("Input string is not well-formed: "+xmlValidator.getLastErrorMessage());

        if (xmlValidator.isValid())
            System.out.println("The input string is valid");
        else
            System.out.println("Input string is not valid: "+xmlValidator.getLastErrorMessage());
    }

    static void RunXSLT() throws com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXMLException {
        System.out.println("RaptorXML Java - XSL Transformation");
        com.altova.raptorxml.XSLT xsltEngine = rxml.getXSLT();
        xsltEngine.setInputXMLFileName(strExamplesFolder + "simple.xml");
```

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
    try {
        rxml = com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXML.getFactory();
        rxml.setErrorLimit(3);

        ValidateXML();
        RunXSLT();
        RunXQuery();
    }
    catch (com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXMLException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}

static void RunXQuery() throws com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXMLException {
    System.out.println("RaptorXML Java - XQuery execution");
    com.altova.raptorxml.XQuery xqEngine = rxml.getXQuery();
    xqEngine.setInputXMLFileName(strExamplesFolder + "simple.xml");
    xqEngine.setXQueryFileName(strExamplesFolder + "CopyInput.xq");
    System result = xqEngine.executeAndGetResultAsString();
    if (result == null) {
        System.out.println("Execution failed: " + xqEngine.getLastErrorMessage());
    } else {
        System.out.println("Result is " + result);
    }
}

static void RunXSLT() {
    xsltEngine.setXSLFileName(strExamplesFolder + "transform.xsl");
    String result = xsltEngine.executeAndGetResultAsString();
    if (result == null) {
        System.out.println("Transformation failed: " +
        xsltEngine.getLastErrorMessage());
    } else {
        System.out.println("Result is " + result);
    }
}

public static void main(String[] args) {
    try {
        rxml = com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXML.getFactory();
        rxml.setErrorLimit(3);

        ValidateXML();
        RunXSLT();
        RunXQuery();
    }
    catch (com.altova.raptorxml.RaptorXMLException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
5.4 Server API Reference

This section describes the RaptorXML Server API: its object model and the details of its interfaces and enumerations. The API description applies to both the COM/.NET and Java interfaces. While the structure of the API is the same for both interfaces, the names of methods and properties are different. For this reason, each method, property, and enumeration is described with a separate signature for COM/.NET and Java.

The starting point for using the functionality of RaptorXML Server is the IServer interface (COM/.NET) or RaptorXMLFactory class (Java).

5.4.1 Interfaces/Classes

The starting point for using the functionality of RaptorXML is the IServer interface (COM/.NET) or RaptorXMLFactory class (Java). This object contains the objects that provide the RaptorXML functionality: XML validation, XQuery document and XML Signature processing, and XSLT transformations.

The hierarchy of the object model is shown below, and the interfaces are described in detail in the corresponding sections. The methods and properties of each interface are described in the section for that interface.

IServer (COM/.NET) / RaptorXMLFactory (Java)
|-- IXMLDSig (COM/.NET) / XMLDSig (Java)
|-- IXMLValidator (COM/.NET) / XMLValidator (Java)
|-- IXSLT (COM/.NET) / XSLT (Java)
|-- IXQuery (COM/.NET) / XQuery (Java)

5.4.1.1 IServer/RaptorXMLFactory

Use the IServer/RaptorXMLFactory interface to access the RaptorXML engine that you want. Note that the name of the interface in the COM/.NET API is different than that of the interface in the Java API:

- In COM/.NET: IServer
- In Java: RaptorXMLFactory

The methods and properties of IServer/RaptorXMLFactory are described in this section.

Java API entry-point method

The Java API is packaged in the com.altova.raptorxml package. The RaptorXML class provides an entry-point method called getFactory(), which returns RaptorXMLFactory objects. So, a RaptorXMLFactory instance can be created with the call: RaptorXML.getFactory().
5.4.1.1.1 Methods

The methods of the IServer (COM/.NET) and RaptorXMLFactory (Java) interfaces return an instance of the respective RaptorXML engine or class: XMLDSig, XML Validator, XSLT, and XQuery.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COM/.NET</th>
<th>Java</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GetXMLDsig</td>
<td>getXMLDsig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetXMLValidator</td>
<td>getXMLValidator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetXQuery</td>
<td>getXQuery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetXSLT</td>
<td>getXSLT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.1.1.1.1 GetXMLDsig (for XML Signatures)

Returns an instance of the XML Signature interface/class (XMLDSig).

COM and .NET

Signature: IXMXMLDSig

GetXMLDsig()

Java

Signature: public XMLDSig

getXMLDsig()

5.4.1.1.1.2 GetXMLValidator

Returns an instance of the XML Validator Engine.

COM and .NET

Signature: IXMXMLValidator

GetXMLValidator()

Java

Signature: public XMLValidator

getXMLValidator()
5.4.1.1.1.3 GetXQuery

Returns an instance of the XQuery Engine.

COM and .NET

Signature: `IXQuery` GetXQuery()

Java

Signature: `public XQuery` getXQuery()

5.4.1.1.1.4 GetXSLT

Returns an instance of the XSLT Engine.

COM and .NET

Signature: `IXSLT` GetXSLT()

Java

Signature: `public XSLT` getXSLT()

5.4.1.1.2 Properties

The properties of the `IServer` (COM/.NET) and `RaptorXMLFactory` (Java) interfaces are described in this section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COM/.NET</th>
<th>Java</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>APIMajorVersion</td>
<td>getAPIMajorVersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIMinorVersion</td>
<td>getAPIMinorVersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIServicePackVersion</td>
<td>getAPIServicePackVersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorFormat</td>
<td>setErrorFormat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLimit</td>
<td>setErrorLimit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlobalCatalog</td>
<td>setGlobalCatalog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.1.1.2.1  API Major Version

Returns the major version of the API as an integer. The API major version can be different from the product's major version if the API is connected to another server.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `int APIMajorVersion()`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public int getAPIMajorVersion()`

5.4.1.1.2.2  API Minor Version

Returns the minor version of the API as an integer. The API minor version can be different from the product's minor version if the API is connected to another server.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `int APIMinorVersion()`
Java

Signature: `public int getAPIMinorVersion()`

5.4.1.2.3  `APIServicePackVersion`

Returns the service pack version of the API as an integer. The service pack version of the API can be different from the `product's service pack version` if the API is connected to another server.

COM and .NET

Signature: `int APIServicePackVersion()`

Java

Signature: `public int getAPIServicePackVersion()`

5.4.1.2.4  `ErrorFormat`

Sets the RaptorXML error format to one of the `ENUMErrorFormat` literals (Text, ShortXML, LongXML).

COM and .NET

Signature: `ErrorFormat(ENUMErrorFormat format)`

Java

Signature: `public void setErrorFormat(ENUMErrorFormat format)`

5.4.1.2.5  `ErrorLimit`

Sets the RaptorXML validation error limit. The `limit` parameter is of type `int` (Java), `uint` (COM/.NET), and specifies the number of errors to be reported before execution is halted. Use `-1` to set `limit` to be unlimited (that is, all errors will be reported). The default value is `100`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `ErrorLimit(uint limit)`
Java

Signature: public int setErrorLimit(int limit)

5.4.1.1.2.6  GlobalCatalog

Sets the location, as a URL, of the main (entry-point) catalog file. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the main catalog file to use.

COM and .NET

Signature: GlobalCatalog(string catalog)

Java

Signature: public void setGlobalCatalog(string catalog)

5.4.1.1.2.7  GlobalResourceConfig

Sets the active configuration of the global resource. The config parameter is of type String, and specifies the name of the configuration used by the active global resource.

COM and .NET

Signature: GlobalResourceConfig(string config)

Java

Signature: public void setGlobalResourceConfig(string config)

5.4.1.1.2.8  GlobalResourcesFile

Sets the location, as a URL, of the Global Resources XML File. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the Global Resources XML File.

COM and .NET

Signature: GlobalResourcesFile(string url)
Java

Signature: public void setGlobalResourcesFile(String url)

5.4.1.1.2.9  Is64Bit

Checks if the application is a 64-bit executable. Returns boolean true if the application is 64 bit, false if it is not. Example: For Altova RaptorXML Server 2021r2sp1(x64), returns true. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised.

COM and .NET

Signature: boolean Is64Bit()

Java

Signature: public boolean is64Bit()

5.4.1.1.2.10  MajorVersion

Returns the major version of the product as an integer. Example: For Altova RaptorXML Server 2018r2sp1(x64), returns 20 (the difference between the major version (2018) and the initial year 1998). If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised.

COM and .NET

Signature: int MajorVersion()

Java

Signature: public int getMajorVersion()

5.4.1.1.2.11  MinorVersion

Returns the minor version of the product as an integer. Example: For Altova RaptorXML Server 2021r2sp1(x64), returns 2 (from the minor version number r2). If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised.

COM and .NET
Signature: `int MinorVersion()`

Java

Signature: `public int getMinorVersion()`

### 5.4.1.2.12 ProductName

Returns the name of the product as a string. *Example:* For Altova RaptorXML Server 2021r2sp1(x64), returns Altova RaptorXML Server. If an error occurs, a `RaptorXMLException` is raised.

COM and .NET

Signature: `string ProductName()`

Java

Signature: `public string getProductName()`

### 5.4.1.2.13 ProductNameAndVersion

Returns the product name, major version, minor version, and service pack version of the product as a string. *Example:* For Altova RaptorXML Server 2021r2sp1(x64), returns Altova RaptorXML Server 2021r2sp1(x64). If an error occurs, a `RaptorXMLException` is raised.

COM and .NET

Signature: `string ProductNameAndVersion()`

Java

Signature: `public string getProductNameAndVersion()`

### 5.4.1.2.14 ReportOptionalWarnings

Enables/disables the reporting of warnings. A value of `true` enables warnings; `false` disables them.

COM and .NET
Signature: ReportOptionalWarnings(boolean report)

Java

Signature: public void setReportOptionalWarnings(boolean report)

5.4.1.1.2.15 ServerName

Sets the name of the HTTP server through which the connection to RaptorXML Server is made. The input parameter is a string that gives the name of the HTTP server. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised.

COM and .NET

Signature: ServerName(string name)

Java

Signature: public void setServerName(string name)

5.4.1.1.2.16 ServerPath

Specifies, in the form of a URL, the path to the HTTP server.

COM and .NET

Signature: ServerPath(string path)

Java

Signature: public void setServerPath(string path)

5.4.1.1.2.17 ServerPort

Sets the port on the HTTP server via which the service is accessed. The port must be fixed and known so that HTTP requests can be correctly addressed to the service. The input parameter is an integer that specifies the access port on the HTTP server. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised.

COM and .NET
Signature: `ServerPort(int port)`

Java

Signature: `public void setServerPort(int port)`

### 5.4.1.1.2.18 ServicePackVersion

Returns the service pack version of the product as an integer. *Example:* For RaptorXML Server 2021r2sp1(x64), returns 1 (from the service pack version number sp1). If an error occurs, a `RaptorXMLException` is raised.

COM and .NET

Signature: `int ServicePackVersion()`

Java

Signature: `public int getServicePackVersion()`

### 5.4.1.1.2.19 UserCatalog

Sets the location, as a URL, of the custom user catalog file. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the custom catalog file to use.

COM and .NET

Signature: `UserCatalog(string userCatalog)`

Java

Signature: `public void setUserCatalog(string userCatalog)`

### 5.4.1.2 RaptorXMLException

Generates an exception that contains information about an error that occurs during processing. The `message` parameter provides information about the error.

COM and .NET
5.4.1.3 XMLDSig (for XML Signatures)

Methods of the IXMLDSig/XMLDSig interface/class can be used to sign XML documents, verify signed
documents, update (with a new signature) previously signed documents that have been modified, and remove
signatures.

Note that the name of the interface in the COM/.NET API is different than that of the class in the Java API:

- In COM/.NET: IXMLDSig
- In Java: XMLDSig

5.4.1.3.1 Methods

The methods of the IXMLDSig interface (COM/.NET) and XMLDSig class (Java) are described in this section.

5.4.1.3.1.1 ExecuteRemove

Removes the XML signature of the signed XML file, and saves the resulting unsigned document to an output
location defined by outputPath, which is a string that provides the URL of the file location. The result is true
on success, false on failure.

COM and .NET

Signature: boolean ExecuteRemove(string outputPath)

Java

Signature: public boolean executeRemove(string outputPath)

5.4.1.3.1.2 ExecuteSign

Signs the XML document according to the specified signing options (given in the signatureType and
canonicalizationMethod parameters; see the xmlsignature-sign CLI command for available values). The
output file is defined by outputPath, which is a string that provides the URL of the output file. The result is
true on success, false on failure.
COM and .NET

Signature: boolean ExecuteSign(string outputPath, string signatureType, string canonicalizationMethod)

Java

Signature: public boolean executeSign(string outputPath, string signatureType, string canonicalizationMethod)

5.4.1.3.1.3 ExecuteUpdate

Updates the XML signature in the signed XML file. If the document has been modified, the updated XML signature will be different; otherwise, the updated signature will be the same as the previous signature. The output file is specified with outputPath, which is a string that provides the URL of the file with the updated signature. The result is true on success, false on failure.

Either (i) the HMAC secret key property or (ii) the certificate-name and certificate-store properties must be specified. If the certificate options are specified, then they must match those that were used to sign the XML document previously. (Note that the certificate-store option is currently not supported on Linux and macOS.)

COM and .NET

Signature: boolean ExecuteUpdate(string outputPath)

Java

Signature: public boolean executeUpdate(string outputPath)

5.4.1.3.1.4 ExecuteVerify

Returns the result of the signature verification: true if verification is successful, false otherwise.

COM and .NET

Signature: boolean ExecuteVerify()

Java

Signature: public boolean executeVerify()
5.4.1.3.2 Properties

The properties of the `IXMDSig` interface (COM/.NET) and `XMLDSig` class (Java) are described in this section.

5.4.1.3.2.1 AbsoluteReferenceUri

Specifies whether the URI of the signed document is to be read as absolute (true) or relative (false). Default is false.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature*: `AbsoluteReferenceUri(boolean absoluteuri)`

**Java**

*Signature*: `public void setAbsoluteReferenceUri(boolean absoluteuri)`

5.4.1.3.2.2 AppendKeyInfo

Specifies whether to include the `KeyInfo` element in the signature or not. The default is false.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature*: `AppendKeyInfo(boolean include)`

**Java**

*Signature*: `public void setAppendKeyInfo(boolean include)`

5.4.1.3.2.3 CertificateName

The name of the certificate used for signing.

**Windows**

This is the `Subject` name of a certificate from the selected `--certificate-store`.

*Example to list the certificates (under PowerShell)*

% ls cert://CurrentUser/My
PSParentPath: Microsoft.PowerShell.Security\Certificate::CurrentUser\My
Thumbprint Subject
--------- -------
C9DF64BB0AAF5FA73474D78B7CCFFC37C95BFC6C
... CN=...  

Example: --certificate-name==certificate1

**Linux/MacOS**
--certname specifies the file name of a PEM encoded X.509v3 certificate with the private key. Such files usually have the extension .pem.

Example: --certificate-name=/path/to/certificate1.pem

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `CertificateName(string name)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setCertificateName(string name)`

**5.4.1.3.2.4 CertificateStore**

The location where the certificate specified with `--certificate-name` is stored.

**Windows**

The name of a certificate store under `cert://CurrentUser`. The available certificate stores can be listed (under PowerShell) by using `% ls cert://CurrentUser/`. Certificates would then be listed as follows:

Name : TrustedPublisher
Name : ClientAuthIssuer
Name : Root
Name : UserDS
Name : CA
Name : ACRS
Name : REQUEST
Name : AuthRoot
Name : MSIEHistoryJournal
Name : TrustedPeople
Name : **MyCertStore**
Name : Local NonRemovable Certificates
Name : SmartCardRoot
Name : Trust
Name : Disallowed

Example: --certificate-store==MyCertStore
**Linux/MacOS**

The `--certstore` option is currently not supported.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `CertificateStore(string filelocation)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setCertificateStore(string filelocation)`

### 5.4.1.3.2.5 DigestMethod

The algorithm that is used to compute the digest value over the input XML file. Available values are: `sha1`, `sha256`, `sha384`, `sha512`.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `DigestMethod(string algo)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setDigestMethod(string algo)`

### 5.4.1.3.2.6 HMACOutputLength

Truncates the output of the HMAC algorithm to `length` bits. If specified, this value must be
- a multiple of 8
- larger than 80
- larger than half of the underlying hash algorithm's output length

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `HMACOutputLength(int length)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setHMACOutputLength(int length)`
5.4.1.3.2.7  HMACSecretKey

The HMAC shared secret key; must have a minimum length of six characters.

COM and .NET

Signature: HMACSecretKey(string key)

Java

Signature: public void setHMACSecretKey(string key)

5.4.1.3.2.8  InputXMLFileName

Sets the location, as a URL, of the XML document to process. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the XML file.

COM and .NET

Signature: InputXMLFileName(string filepath)

Java

Signature: public void setInputXMLFileName(string filepath)

5.4.1.3.2.9  LastErrorMessage

Retrieves a string that is the last error message from the RaptorXML engine.

COM and .NET

Signature: string LastErrorMessage()

Java

Signature: public string getLastErrorMessage()
5.4.1.3.2.10  SignatureMethod

Specifies the algorithm to use for generating the signature.

When a certificate is used

If a certificate is specified, then SignatureMethod is optional and the value for this parameter is derived from the certificate. If specified, it must match the algorithm used by the certificate. Example: rsa-sha256.

When --hmac-secret-key is used

When HMACSecretKey is used, then SignatureMethod is mandatory. The value must be one of the supported HMAC algorithms:

- hmac-sha256
- hmac-sha386
- hmac-sha512
- hmac-sha1 (discouraged by the specification)

Example: hmac-sha256

COM and .NET

Signature: SignatureMethod(string algo)

Java

Signature: public void setSignatureMethod(string algo)

5.4.1.3.2.11  Transforms

Specifies the XML Signature transformations applied to the input document. The supported values are:

- REC-xml-c14n-20010315 for Canonical XML 1.0 (omit comments)
- xml-c14n11 for Canonical XML 1.1 (omit comments)
- xml-exc-c14n# for Exclusive XML Canonicalization 1.0 (omit comments)
- REC-xml-c14n-20010315#WithComments for Canonical XML 1.0 (with comments)
- xml-c14n11#WithComments for Canonical XML 1.1 (with comments)
- xml-exc-c14n#WithComments for Exclusive XML Canonicalization 1.0 (with comments)
- base64
- strip-whitespaces Altova extension

COM and .NET

Signature: Transforms(string value)
Java

*Signature:* \texttt{public void setTransforms(string value)}

### 5.4.1.3.2.12 WriteDefaultAttributes

Specifies whether to include default attribute values from the DTD in the signed document.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* \texttt{WriteDefaultAttributes(boolean write)}

Java

*Signature:* \texttt{public void setWriteDefaultAttributes(boolean write)}

### 5.4.1.4 XMLValidator

The \texttt{IXMLValidator/XMLValidator} interface/class provides methods to (i) validate various types of documents, (ii) check documents for well-formedness, and (iii) extract an Avro schema from an Avro binary. You can also provide additional processing via a Python script.

Note that the name of the interface in the COM/.NET API is different than that of the class in the Java API:

- In COM/.NET: \texttt{IXMLValidator}
- In Java: \texttt{XMLValidator}

#### 5.4.1.4.1 Methods

The methods of the \texttt{IXMLValidator} interface (COM/.NET) and \texttt{XMLValidator} class (Java) are described in this section.

##### 5.4.1.4.1.1 AddPythonScriptFile

Specifies the Python script file that provides additional processing of the file submitted for validation. The supplied string must be an absolute URL of the Python script. The Python script will be processed with a Python package that is bundled with RaptorXML Server. The bundled Python package is version 3.7.

**COM and .NET**
5.4.1.4.1.2 **ClearPythonScriptFile**

Clears Python script files added with the `AddPythonScriptFile` method or `PythonScriptFile` property.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `ClearPythonScriptFile()`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void clearPythonScriptFile()`

5.4.1.4.1.3 **ExtractAvroSchema**

Extracts an Avro schema from a binary file. The `outputPath` parameter is an absolute URL that specifies the output location. The result is `true` on success, `false` on failure. If an error occurs, a `RaptorXMLException` is raised. Use `LastErrorMessage` to access additional information.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `ExtractAvroSchema(string outputPath)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void extractAvroSchema(string outputPath)`

5.4.1.4.1.4 **IsValid**

Returns the result of validating the XML document, schema document, or DTD document. The type of document to validate is specified by the `type` parameter, which takes an `ENUMValidationType` literal as its value. The result is `true` on success, `false` on failure. If an error occurs, a `RaptorXMLException` is raised. Use `LastErrorMessage` to access additional information.
COM and .NET

Signature: `boolean IsValid(ENUMValidationType type)`

Java

Signature: `public boolean isValid(ENUMValidationType type)`

5.4.1.4.1.5  IsWellFormed

Returns the result of checking the XML document or DTD document for well-formedness. The type of document to check is specified by the `type` parameter, which takes an `ENUMWellformedCheckType` literal as its value. The result is `true` on success, `false` on failure. If an error occurs, a `RaptorXMLException` is raised. Use `LastErrorMessage` to access additional information.

COM and .NET

Signature: `boolean isWellFormed(ENUMWellformedCheckType type)`

Java

Signature: `public boolean isWellFormed(ENUMWellformedCheckType type)`

5.4.1.4.2  Properties

The properties of the `IXMLValidator` interface (COM/.NET) and `XMLValidator` class (Java) are described in this section.

5.4.1.4.2.1  AssessmentMode

Sets the assessment mode of the XML validation (Strict/Lax), which is given by an `ENUMAssessmentMode` literal.

COM and .NET

Signature: `AssessmentMode(ENUMAssessmentMode mode)`

Java
Signature: `public void setAssessmentMode(EnumAssessmentMode mode)`

### 5.4.1.4.2.2 AvroSchemaFileName

Sets the location, as a URL, of the external Avro schema to use. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the Avro schema file.

**COM and .NET**

Signature: `AvroSchemaFileName(string url)`

**Java**

Signature: `public void setAvroSchemaFileName(string url)`

### 5.4.1.4.2.3 AvroSchemaFromText

Supplies a string that is the text content of the Avro schema document to use.

**COM and .NET**

Signature: `AvroSchemaFromText(string avroschema)`

**Java**

Signature: `public void setAvroSchemaFromText(string avroschema)`

### 5.4.1.4.2.4 DTDFilename

Sets the location, as a URL, of the DTD document to use for validation. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the DTD document.

**COM and .NET**

Signature: `DTDFilename(string url)`

**Java**

Signature: `public void setDTDFilename(string url)`
5.4.1.4.2.5  **DTDFromText**

Supplies a string that is the text content of the DTD document to use for validation.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `DTDFromText(string dttext)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setDTDFromText(string dttext)`

5.4.1.4.2.6  **EnableNamespaces**

Enables namespace-aware processing. This is useful for checking the XML instance for errors due to incorrect namespaces. A value of `true` enables namespace-aware processing; `false` disables it. The default is `false`.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `EnableNamespaces(boolean enableNS)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setEnableNamespaces(boolean enableNS)`

5.4.1.4.2.7  **InputFileArray**

Provides an array of URLs of the files to be used as input data. The array is an object containing the strings of the absolute URLs of each of the input files.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputFileArray(object fileArray)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputFileArray(object fileArray)`
5.4.1.4.2.8 **InputFileName**

Sets the location, as a URL, of the input data file to process. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the location of the input file.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputFileName(string filepath)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputFileName(string filepath)`

5.4.1.4.2.9 **InputFromText**

Supplies a string that is the text content of the document to process.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputFromText(string doc)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputFromText(string doc)`

5.4.1.4.2.10 **InputTextArray**

Provides an array of the URLs of the text-files to be used as input data. The property supplies an object containing, as strings, the absolute URLs of each of the text files.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputTextArray(object textfileArray)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputTextArray(object textfileArray)`
5.4.1.4.2.11  **InputXMLFileName**

Sets the location, as a URL, of the XML document to process. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the XML file.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputXMLFileName(string url)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputXMLFileName(string url)`

5.4.1.4.2.12  **InputXMLFromText**

Supplies a string that is the text content of the XML document to process.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputXMLFromText(string xml)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputXMLFromText(string xml)`

5.4.1.4.2.13  **Json5**

If set to true, enables JSON 5 support.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `Json5(boolean json5)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setJson5(boolean json5)`
5.4.1.4.2.14  JSONSchemaFileName

Sets the location, as a URL, of the JSON Schema file that will be used for JSON instance-document validation. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the JSON Schema file.

COM and .NET

Signature: JSONSchemaFileName(string url)

Java

Signature: public void setJSONSchemaFileName(string url)

5.4.1.4.2.15  JSONSchemaFromText

Supplies a string that is the text content of the JSON Schema document that will be used for validation of the JSON instance document.

COM and .NET

Signature: JSONSchemaFromText(string jsonschema)

Java

Signature: public void setJSONSchemaFromText(string jsonschema)

5.4.1.4.2.16  LastErrorMessage

Retrieves a string that is the last error message from the RaptorXML engine.

COM and .NET

Signature: string LastErrorMessage()

Java

Signature: public string getLastErrorMessage()
5.4.1.4.2.17 ParallelAssessment
Enables/disables parallel schema validity assessment.

COM and .NET

Signature: ParallelAssessment(boolean enable)

Java

Signature: public void setParallelAssessment(boolean enable)

5.4.1.4.2.18 PythonScriptFile
Specifies the Python script file that provides additional processing of the file submitted for validation. The supplied string must be an absolute URL of the Python script. The Python script will be processed with a Python package that is bundled with RaptorXML Server. The bundled Python package is version 3.7.

COM and .NET

Signature: PythonScriptFile(string filepath)

Java

Signature: public void setPythonScriptFile(string filepath)

5.4.1.4.2.19 SchemaFileArray
Supplies the collection of XML Schema files that will be used as external XML Schemas. The files are identified by their URLs. The input is a collection of strings, each of which is the absolute URL of an XML Schema file.

COM and .NET

Signature: SchemaFileArray(object urlArray)

Java

Signature: public void setSchemaFileArray(object urlArray)
5.4.1.4.2.20  SchemaFileName

Sets the location, as a URL, of the XML Schema document to be used for validation. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the XML Schema file.

COM and .NET

Signature: SchemaFileName(string filepath)

Java

Signature: public void setSchemaFileName(string filepath)

5.4.1.4.2.21  SchemaFromText

Supplies a string that is the text content of the XML Schema document to use for validation of the XML instance document.

COM and .NET

Signature: SchemaFileName(string xsdText)

Java

Signature: public void setSchemaFileName(string xsdText)

5.4.1.4.2.22  SchemaImports

Specifies how schema imports are to be handled based on the attribute values of the xs:import elements. The kind of handling is specified by the ENUMSchemaImports literal that is submitted.

COM and .NET

Signature: SchemaImports(ENUMSchemaImports importOption)

Java

Signature: public void setSchemaImports(ENUMSchemaImports importOption)
5.4.1.4.2.23  **SchemalocationHints**

Specifies the mechanism to use to locate the schema. The mechanism is specified by the `ENUMLoadSchemalocation` literal that is selected.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `SchemalocationHints(ENUMLoadSchemalocation hint)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setSchemalocationHints(ENUMLoadSchemalocation hint)`

5.4.1.4.2.24  **SchemaMapping**

Sets what mapping to use in order to locate the schema. The mapping is specified by the `ENUMSchemaMapping` literal that is selected.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `SchemaMapping(ENUMSchemaMapping mappingOption)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setSchemaMapping(ENUMSchemaMapping mappingOption)`

5.4.1.4.2.25  **SchemaTextArray**

Supplies the content of multiple XML Schema files. The input is a collection of strings, each of which is the content of an XML Schema document.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `SchemaTextArray(object schemaDocs)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setSchemaTextArray(object schemaDocs)`
5.4.1.4.2.26  Streaming

Enables streaming validation. In streaming mode, data that is stored in memory is minimized and processing is faster. A value of \texttt{true} enables streaming; \texttt{false} disables it. Default is \texttt{true}.

COM and .NET

\textit{Signature:} \texttt{Streaming(boolean enable)}

Java

\textit{Signature:} \texttt{public void setStreaming(boolean enable)}

5.4.1.4.2.27  XincludeSupport

Enables or disables the use of \texttt{XInclude} elements. A value of \texttt{true} enables \texttt{XInclude} support; \texttt{false} disables it. The default value is \texttt{false}.

COM and .NET

\textit{Signature:} \texttt{XincludeSupport(boolean xinclude)}

Java

\textit{Signature:} \texttt{public void setXincludeSupport(boolean xinclude)}

5.4.1.4.2.28  XMLValidationMode

Sets the XML validation mode, which is an enumeration literal of \texttt{ENUMXMLValidationMode} that determines whether to check validity or well-formedness.

COM and .NET

\textit{Signature:} \texttt{XMLValidationMode(ENUMXMLValidationMode valMode)}

Java

\textit{Signature:} \texttt{public void setXMLValidationMode(ENUMXMLValidationMode valMode)}
5.4.1.4.29  XSDVersion

Sets the XML Schema version against which the XML document will be validated. Value is an enumeration literal of `ENUMXSDVersion`.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `XSDVersion(ENUMXSDVersion` version `)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setXSDVersion(ENUMXSDVersion` version `)`

5.4.1.5  XQuery

The `IXQuery/XQuery` interface/class provides methods to (i) execute XQuery documents and XQuery updates, and (ii) validate XQuery-related documents. You can also provide data for the executions via external variables.

Note that the name of the interface in the COM/.NET API is different than that of the class in the Java API:

- In COM/.NET: `IXQuery`
- In Java: `XQuery`

5.4.1.5.1  Methods

The methods of the `IXQuery` interface (COM/.NET) and `XQuery` class (Java) are described in this section.

5.4.1.5.1.1  AddExternalVariable

Adds the name and value of a new external variable. Each external variable and its value is to be specified in a separate call to the method. Variables must be declared in the XQuery document (with an optional type declaration). If the variable value is a string, enclose the value in single quotes. The `name` parameter holds the name of the variable, which is a QName, as a string. The `value` parameter holds the value of the variable as a string.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `AddExternalVariable(string name, string value)`
Java

Signature: public void addExternalVariable(string name, string value)

5.4.1.5.1.2  ClearExternalVariableList

Clears the external variables list created by the AddExternalVariable method.

COM and .NET

Signature: ClearExternalVariableList()

Java

Signature: public void clearExternalVariableList()

5.4.1.5.1.3  Execute

Executes the XQuery transformation according to the XQuery version named in the EngineVersion property, and saves the result to the output file named in the outputFile parameter. The parameter is a string that provides the location (path and filename) of the output file. The result is true on success, false on failure. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised. Use the LastErrorMessage property to access additional information.

COM and .NET

Signature: boolean Execute(string outputFile)

Java

Signature: public boolean execute(string outputFile)

5.4.1.5.1.4  ExecuteAndGetResultAsString

Executes the XQuery update according to the XQuery Update specification named in the EngineVersion property, and returns the result as a string. This method does not produce additional result files, such as charts or secondary results. It also does not hold binary results such as .docx OOXML files. If additional output files are needed, use the Execute method.
COM and .NET

Signature: `string ExecuteAndGetResultAsString()`

Java

Signature: `public string executeAndGetResultAsString()`

5.4.1.5.1.5  ExecuteUpdate

Executes the XQuery update according to the XQuery Update specification named in the `XQueryUpdateVersion` property, and saves the result to the output file named in the `outputFile` parameter. The parameter is a string that provides the location (path and filename) of the output file. The result is `true` on success, `false` on failure. If an error occurs, a `RaptorXMLException` is raised. Use the `LastErrorMessage` property to access additional information.

COM and .NET

Signature: `boolean ExecuteUpdate(string outputFile)`

Java

Signature: `public boolean executeUpdate(string outputFile)`

5.4.1.5.1.6  ExecuteUpdateAndGetResultAsString

Executes the XQuery update according to the XQuery Update specification named in the `XQueryUpdateVersion` property, and returns the result as a string. This method does not produce additional result files, such as charts or secondary results. It also does not hold binary results such as `.docx` OOXML files.

COM and .NET

Signature: `string ExecuteUpdateAndGetResultAsString()`

Java

Signature: `public string executeUpdateAndGetResultAsString()`
5.4.1.5.1.7  IsValid

Returns the result of validating the XQuery document according to the XQuery specification named in the EngineVersion property. The result is true on success, false on failure. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised. Use the LastErrorMessage property to access additional information.

COM and .NET

Signature: boolean IsValid()

Java

Signature: public boolean isValid()
Signature: `string AdditionalOutputs()`

Java

Signature: `public string getAdditionalOutputs()`

5.4.1.5.2.2  **ChartExtensionsEnabled**

Enables or disables Altova's chart extension functions. A value of `true` enables chart extensions; `false` disables them. Default value is `true`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `ChartExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

Java

Signature: `public void setChartExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

5.4.1.5.2.3  **DotNetExtensionsEnabled**

Enables or disables .NET extension functions. A value of `true` enables .NET extensions; `false` disables them. Default value is `true`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `DotNetExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

Java

Signature: `public void setDotNetExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

5.4.1.5.2.4  **EngineVersion**

Specifies the XQuery version to use. The property value is an `ENUMXQueryVersion` literal.

COM and .NET

Signature: `EngineVersion(ENUMXQueryVersion version)`
Java

Signature: `public void setEngineVersion(ENUMXQueryVersion version)`

5.4.1.5.2.5  **IndentCharacters**

Submits the character string that will be used as indentation in the output.

COM and .NET

Signature: `IndentCharacters(string indentChars)`

Java

Signature: `public void setIndentCharacters(string indentChars)`

5.4.1.5.2.6  **InputXMLFileName**

Sets the location, as a URL, of the XML document to process. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the XML file.

COM and .NET

Signature: `InputXMLFileName(string url)`

Java

Signature: `public void setInputXMLFileName(string url)`

5.4.1.5.2.7  **InputXMLFromText**

Supplies a string that is the text content of the XML document to process.

COM and .NET

Signature: `InputXMLFromText(string xml)`
Java

Signature: `public void setInputXMLFromText(string xml)`

### 5.4.1.5.2.8 JavaBarcodeExtensionLocation

Specifies the location of the barcode extension file. See the section on Altova's barcode extension functions for more information. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the base location of the file to use.

**COM and .NET**

Signature: `JavaBarcodeExtensionLocation(string url)`

Java

Signature: `public void setJavaBarcodeExtensionLocation(string url)`

### 5.4.1.5.2.9 JavaExtensionsEnabled

Enables or disables Java extension functions. A value of `true` enables Java extensions; `false` disables them. Default value is `true`.

**COM and .NET**

Signature: `JavaExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

Java

Signature: `public void setJavaExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

### 5.4.1.5.2.10 KeepFormatting

Specifies whether the formatting of the original document should be kept (as far as possible) or not. A value of `true` keeps formatting; `false` does not keep formatting. Default value is `true`.

**COM and .NET**

Signature: `KeepFormatting(boolean keep)`
Java

Signature: `public void setKeepFormatting(boolean keep)`

5.4.1.5.2.11 LastErrorMessage

Retrieves a string that is the last error message from the RaptorXML engine.

COM and .NET

Signature: `string LastErrorMessage()`

Java

Signature: `public string getLastErrorMessage()`

5.4.1.5.2.12 LoadXMLWithPSVI

Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation info for them. A value of `true` enables XML validation and generates post-schema-validation info for the XML files; `false` disables validation. Default value is `true`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `LoadXMLWithPSVI(boolean enable)`

Java

Signature: `public void setLoadXMLWithPSVI(boolean enable)`

5.4.1.5.2.13 MainOutput

Returns the main output of the last executed job.

COM and .NET

Signature: `string MainOutput()`
Java

Signature: `public string getMainOutput()`

5.4.1.5.2.14 OutputEncoding

Sets the encoding for the result document. Use an official IANA encoding name, such as UTF-8, UTF-16, US-ASCII, ISO-8859-1, as a string.

COM and .NET

Signature: `OutputEncoding(string encoding)`

Java

Signature: `public void setOutputEncoding(string encoding)`

5.4.1.5.2.15 OutputIndent

Enables or disables indentation in the output document. A value of `true` enables indentation; `false` disables it.

COM and .NET

Signature: `OutputIndent(boolean outputIndent)`

Java

Signature: `public void setOutputIndent(boolean outputIndent)`

5.4.1.5.2.16 OutputMethod

Specifies the serialization of the output document. Valid values are: `xml|xhtml|html|text`. Default value is `xml`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `OutputMethod(string format)`
Java

Signature: `public void setOutputMethod(String format)`

5.4.1.5.2.17  OutputOmitXMLDeclaration

Enables/disables the inclusion of the XML declaration in the result document. A value of `true` omits the declaration; `false` includes it. Default value is `false`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `OutputOmitXMLDeclaration(Boolean omitDeclaration)`

Java

Signature: `public void setOutputOmitXMLDeclaration(Boolean omitDeclaration)`

5.4.1.5.2.18  UpdatedXMLWriteMode

Specifies how updates to the XML file are handled. The property value is an `ENUMXQueryUpdatedXML` literal.

COM and .NET

Signature: `UpdateXMLWriteMode(ENUMXQueryUpdatedXML updateMode)`

Java

Signature: `public void setUpdateXMLWriteMode(ENUMXQueryUpdatedXML updateMode)`

5.4.1.5.2.19  XincludeSupport

Enables or disables the use of `XInclude` elements. A value of `true` enables `XInclude` support; `false` disables it. The default value is `false`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `XincludeSupport(Boolean xinclude)`
Java

Signature: `public void setXincludeSupport(boolean xinclude)`

5.4.1.5.2.20  `XMLValidationErrorsAsWarnings`

Enables the treating of XML validation errors as warnings. Takes boolean `true` or `false`.

COM and .NET

Signature: `XMLValidationErrorsAsWarnings(boolean enable)`

Java

Signature: `public void setXMLValidationErrorsAsWarnings(boolean enable)`

5.4.1.5.2.21  `XMLValidationMode`

Sets the XML validation mode, which is an enumeration literal of `ENUMXMLValidationMode` that determines whether to check validity or well-formedness.

COM and .NET

Signature: `XMLValidationMode(ENUMXMLValidationMode valMode)`

Java

Signature: `public void setXMLValidationMode(ENUMXMLValidationMode valMode)`

5.4.1.5.2.22  `XQueryFileName`

Specifies the XQuery file to use. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the location of the XQuery file to use.

COM and .NET

Signature: `XQueryFileName(string fileurl)`
Java

*Signature:* `public void setXQueryFileName(string fileurl)`

### 5.4.1.5.2.23 XQueryFromText

Supplies, as a text string, the contents of the XQuery document to use.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `XQueryFromText(string xqtext)`

Java

*Signature:* `public void setXQueryFromText(string xqtext)`

### 5.4.1.5.2.24 XQueryUpdateVersion

Specifies the XQuery Update version to use. The property value is an `ENUMXQueryVersion` literal.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `XQueryUpdateVersion(ENUMXQueryVersion` version)`

Java

*Signature:* `public void setXQueryUpdateVersion(ENUMXQueryVersion` version)`

### 5.4.1.5.2.25 XSDVersion

Sets the XML Schema version against which the XML document will be validated. Value is an enumeration literal of `ENUMXSDVersion`.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `XSDVersion(ENUMXSDVersion` version)`
Java

Signature: `public void setXSDVersion(EnumXSDVersion version)`

5.4.1.6 XSLT

The `IXSLT/XSLT` interface/class provides methods to execute XSLT transformations and validate XSLT-related documents. You can also provide data for the transformation via external parameters.

Note that the name of the interface in the COM/.NET API is different than that of the class in the Java API:

- In COM/.NET: `IXSLT`
- In Java: `XSLT`

5.4.1.6.1 Methods

The methods of the `IXSLT` interface (COM/.NET) and `XSLT` class (Java) are described in this section.

5.4.1.6.1.1 AddExternalParameter

Adds the name and value of a new external parameter. Each external parameter and its value is to be specified in a separate call to the method. Parameters must be declared in the XSLT document. Since parameter values are XPath expressions, parameter values that are strings must be enclosed in single quotes. The `name` parameter holds the name of the variable, which is a QName, as a string. The `value` parameter holds the value of the variable as a string.

COM and .NET

Signature: `AddExternalParameter(string name, string value)`

Java

Signature: `public void addExternalParameter(string name, string value)`
5.4.1.6.1.2 ClearExternalParameterList
Clears the external parameters list created by the AddExternalParameter method.

COM and .NET
Signature: ClearExternalParameterList()

Java
Signature: public void clearExternalParameterList()

5.4.1.6.1.3 Execute
Executes the XSLT transformation according to the XSLT specification named in the EngineVersion property, and saves the result to the output file named in the outputFile parameter. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised. Use the LastErrorMessage property to access additional information.

COM and .NET
Signature: boolean Execute(string outputFile)

Java
Signature: public boolean execute(string outputFile)

5.4.1.6.1.4 ExecuteAndGetResultAsString
Executes the XSLT transformation according to the XSLT specification named in the EngineVersion property, and returns the result as a string. This method does not produce additional result files, such as charts or secondary results. It also does not hold binary results such as .docx OOXML files. If additional output files are needed, use the Execute method. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised. Use the LastErrorMessage property to access additional information.

COM and .NET
Signature: string ExecuteAndGetResultAsString()

Java
Signature: public string executeAndGetResultAsString()
5.4.1.6.1.5  ExecuteAndGetResultAsStringWithBaseOutputURI

Executes the XSLT transformation according to the XSLT specification named in the EngineVersion property, and returns the result as a string at the location defined by the base URI. The baseURI parameter is a string that provides a URI. This method does not produce additional result files, such as charts or secondary results. It also does not hold binary results such as .docx OOXML files. If additional output files are needed, use the Execute method. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised. Use the LastErrorMessage property to access additional information.

COM and .NET

Signature: string ExecuteAndGetResultAsStringWithBaseOutputURI(string baseURI)

Java

Signature: public string ExecuteAndGetResultAsStringWithBaseOutputURI(string baseURI)

5.4.1.6.1.6  IsValid

Returns the result of validating the XSLT document according to the XSLT specification named in the EngineVersion property. The result is true on success, false on failure. If an error occurs, a RaptorXMLException is raised. Use the LastErrorMessage property to access additional information.

COM and .NET

Signature: boolean IsValid()

Java

Signature: public boolean isValid()

5.4.1.6.2  Properties

The properties of the IXSLT interface (COM/.NET) and XSLT class (Java) are described in this section.
5.4.1.6.2.1  AdditionalOutputs

Returns the additional outputs of the last executed job.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `string AdditionalOutputs()`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public string getAdditionalOutputs()`

5.4.1.6.2.2  ChartExtensionsEnabled

Enables or disables Altova's chart extension functions. A value of `true` enables chart extensions; `false` disables them. Default value is `true`.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `ChartExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setChartExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

5.4.1.6.2.3  DotNetExtensionsEnabled

Enables or disables .NET extension functions. A value of `true` enables .NET extensions; `false` disables them. Default value is `true`.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `DotNetExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setDotNetExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)`
5.4.1.6.2.4 EngineVersion

Specifies the XSLT version to use. The property value is an `<ENUMXSLTVersion>` literal.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature*: `EngineVersion(<ENUMXSLTVersion> version)`

**Java**

*Signature*: `public void setEngineVersion(<ENUMXSLTVersion> version)`

5.4.1.6.2.5 IndentCharacters

Submits the character string that will be used as indentation in the output.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature*: `IndentCharacters(string indentChars)`

**Java**

*Signature*: `public void setIndentCharacters(string indentChars)`

5.4.1.6.2.6 InitialTemplateMode

Sets the initial mode for XSLT processing. Templates with a mode value equal to the submitted string will be processed.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature*: `InitialTemplateMode(string mode)`

**Java**

*Signature*: `public void setInitialTemplateMode(string mode)`
### 5.4.1.6.2.7 InputXMLFileName

Sets the location, as a URL, of the XML document to process. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the exact location of the XML file.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputXMLFileName(string url)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputXMLFileName(string url)`

### 5.4.1.6.2.8 InputXMLFromText

Supplies a string that is the text content of the XML document to process.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `InputXMLFromText(string xml)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setInputXMLFromText(string xml)`

### 5.4.1.6.2.9 JavaBarcodeExtensionLocation

Specifies the location of the barcode extension file. See the section on Altova's barcode extension functions for more information. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the base location of the file to use.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `JavaBarcodeExtensionLocation(string url)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setJavaBarcodeExtensionLocation(string url)`
5.4.1.6.2.10  JavaExtensionsEnabled

Enables or disables Java extension functions. A value of true enables Java extensions; false disables them. Default value is true.

COM and .NET

Signature: JavaExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)

Java

Signature: public void setJavaExtensionsEnabled(boolean enable)

5.4.1.6.2.11  LastErrorMessage

Retrieves a string that is the last error message from the RaptorXML engine.

COM and .NET

Signature: string LastErrorMessage()

Java

Signature: public string getLastErrorMessage()

5.4.1.6.2.12  LoadXMLWithPSVI

Enables validation of input XML files and generates post-schema-validation info for them. A value of true enables XML validation and generates post-schema-validation info for the XML files; false disables validation. Default value is true.

COM and .NET

Signature: LoadXMLWithPSVI(boolean enable)

Java

Signature: public void setLoadXMLWithPSVI(boolean enable)
5.4.1.6.2.13  **MainOutput**

Returns the main output of the last executed job.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `string MainOutput()`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public string getMainOutput()`

5.4.1.6.2.14  **NamedTemplateEntryPoint**

Specifies the name, as a string, of the named template to use as an entry point for the transformation.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `NamedTemplateEntryPoint(string template)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setNamedTemplateEntryPoint(string template)`

5.4.1.6.2.15  **SchemaImports**

Specifies how schema imports are to be handled based on the attribute values of the `xs:import` elements. The kind of handling is specified by the `ENUMSchemaImports` literal that is submitted.

**COM and .NET**

*Signature:* `SchemaImports(ENUMSchemaImports importOption)`

**Java**

*Signature:* `public void setSchemaImports(ENUMSchemaImports importOption)`
5.4.1.6.2.16  SchemalocationHints

Specifies the mechanism to use to locate the schema. The mechanism is specified by the 
ENUMLoadSchemalocation literal that is selected.

COM and .NET

Signature: SchemalocationHints(ENUMLoadSchemalocation hint)

Java

Signature: public void setSchemalocationHints(ENUMLoadSchemalocation hint)

5.4.1.6.2.17  SchemaMapping

Sets what mapping to use in order to locate the schema. The mapping is specified by the ENUMSchemaMapping 
literal that is selected.

COM and .NET

Signature: SchemaMapping(ENUMSchemaMapping mappingOption)

Java

Signature: public void setSchemaMapping(ENUMSchemaMapping mappingOption)

5.4.1.6.2.18  StreamingSerialization

Enables streaming serialization. In streaming mode, data stored in memory is minimized and processing is 
faster. A value of true enables streaming serialization; false disables it.

COM and .NET

Signature: StreamingSerialization(boolean enable)

Java

Signature: public void setStreamingSerialization(boolean enable)
5.4.1.6.2.19  XincludeSupport

Enables or disables the use of XInclude elements. A value of true enables XInclude support; false disables it. The default value is false.

COM and .NET

Signature: XincludeSupport(boolean xinclude)

Java

Signature: public void setXincludeSupport(boolean xinclude)

5.4.1.6.2.20  XMLValidationErrorsAsWarnings

Enables the treating of XML validation errors as warnings. Takes boolean true or false.

COM and .NET

Signature: XMLValidationErrorsAsWarnings(boolean enable)

Java

Signature: public void setXMLValidationErrorsAsWarnings(boolean enable)

5.4.1.6.2.21  XMLValidationMode

Sets the XML validation mode, which is an enumeration literal of ENUMXMLValidationMode that determines whether to check validity or well-formedness.

COM and .NET

Signature: XMLValidationMode(ENUMXMLValidationMode valMode)

Java

Signature: public void setXMLValidationMode(ENUMXMLValidationMode valMode)
5.4.1.6.2.22  XSDVersion
Sets the XML Schema version against which the XML document will be validated. Value is an enumeration literal of ENUMXSDVersion.

COM and .NET

Signature: XSDVersion(ENUMXSDVersion version)

Java

Signature: public void setXSDVersion(ENUMXSDVersion version)

5.4.1.6.2.23  XSLFileName
Specifies the XSLT file to use. The supplied string must be an absolute URL that gives the location of the XSLT file to use.

COM and .NET

Signature: XSLFileName(string fileurl)

Java

Signature: public void setXSLFileName(string fileurl)

5.4.1.6.2.24  XSLFromText
Supplies, as a text string, the contents of the XSLT document to use

COM and .NET

Signature: XSLFromText(string xsltext)

Java

Signature: public void setXSLFromText(string xsltext)
5.4.2 Enumerations

Enumerations of the COM/.NET and Java Server APIs are described in this section. Each description includes links to the methods or properties that use the enumeration.

- ENUMAssessmentMode
- ENUMErrorFormat
- ENUMLoadSchemalocation
- ENUMSchemamaports
- ENUMSchemaMapping
- ENUMValidationType
- ENUMWellformedCheckType
- ENUMXMLValidationMode
- ENUMXQueryUpdatedXML
- ENUMXQueryVersion
- ENUMXSDVersion
- ENUMXSLTVersion

5.4.2.1 ENUMAssessmentMode

Defines the assessment mode of the XML Validator to be strict or lax:

- eAssessmentModeStrict: Sets the schema-validity assessment mode to Strict. This is the default value.
- eAssessmentModeLax: Sets the schema-validity assessment mode to Lax.

**COM and .NET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENUMAssessmentMode</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eAssessmentModeStrict</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eAssessmentModeLax</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Used by*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>AssessmentMode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java**

```java
public enum ENUMAssessmentMode {
    eAssessmentModeLax,
    eAssessmentModeStrict
}
```

*Used by*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
5.4.2.2 ENUMErrorFormat

Specifies the format of the error output:

- **eFormatText**: Sets the error output format to `Text`. The default value.
- **eFormatShortXML**: Sets the error output format to `ShortXML`. This format is an abbreviated form of the `LongXML` format.
- **eFormatLongXML**: Sets the error output format to `LongXML`. This format provides the most detail of all three output formats.

**COM and .NET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENUM</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eFormatText</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eFormatShortXML</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eFormatLongXML</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Used by*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IServer266</td>
<td>ErrorFormat266</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java**

```java
public enum ENUMErrorFormat {
    eFormatText,
    eFormatShortXML,
    eFormatLongXML
}
```

*Used by*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RaptorXMLFactory</td>
<td>setErrorFormat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.2.3 ENUMLoadSchemalocation

Indicates how the schema's location should be determined. The selection is based on the schema location attribute of the XML instance document. This attribute could be `xsi:schemaLocation` or `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation`.

- **eSHLoadBySchemalocation** uses the URL of the schema location attribute in the XML instance document. This enumeration literal is the default value.
- **eSHLoadByNamespace** uses the namespace part of `xsi:schemaLocation` and an empty string in the case of `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.
- **eSHLoadCombiningBoth**: If either the namespace URL or schema location URL has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of `ENUMSchemaMapping` decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor schema location has a catalog mapping, the schema location URL is used.
- **eSHLoadIgnore**: The `xsi:schemaLocation` and `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attributes are both ignored.

**COM and .NET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eSHLoadBySchemalocation</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eSHLoadByNamespace</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eSHLoadCombiningBoth</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eSHLoadIgnore</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>SchemalocationHints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXSLT</td>
<td>SchemalocationHints</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java**

```java
public enum ENUMLoadSchemalocation {
    eSHLoadBySchemalocation,
    eSHLoadByNamespace,
    eSHLoadCombiningBoth,
    eSHLoadIgnore
}
```

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XMLValidator</td>
<td>setSchemalocationHints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT</td>
<td>setSchemalocationHints</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5.4.2.4 ENUMSchemalImports**

Defines the behavior of the schema's `xs:import` elements, each of which has an optional `namespace` attribute and an optional `schemaLocation` attribute.
eSILoadBySchemalocation uses the value of the schemaLocation attribute to locate the schema, taking account of catalog mappings. If the namespace attribute is present, the namespace is imported (licensed).

eSILoadPreferringSchemalocation: If the schemaLocation attribute is present, it is used, taking account of catalog mappings. If no schemaLocation attribute is present, then the value of the namespace attribute is used via a catalog mapping. This enumeration literal is the default value.

eSILoadByNamespace uses the value of the namespace attribute to locate the schema via a catalog mapping.

eSILoadCombiningBoth: If either the namespace URL or schemaLocation URL has a catalog mapping, then the catalog mapping is used. If both have catalog mappings, then the value of ENUMSchemaMapping decides which mapping is used. If neither the namespace nor schemaLocation URL has a catalog mapping, the schemaLocation URL is used.

eSILicenseNamespaceOnly: The namespace is imported. No schema document is imported.

COM and .NET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eSILoadBySchemalocation</th>
<th>= 0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eSILoadPreferringSchemalocation</td>
<td>= 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eSILoadByNamespace</td>
<td>= 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eSICombiningBoth</td>
<td>= 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eSILicenseNamespaceOnly</td>
<td>= 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Used by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>SchemaImports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXSLT</td>
<td>SchemaImports</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Java

```java
public enum ENUMSchemaImports {
    eSILoadBySchemalocation,
    eSILoadPreferringSchemalocation,
    eSILoadByNamespace,
    eSILoadCombiningBoth,
    eSILicenseNamespaceOnly
}
```

Used by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XMLValidator</td>
<td>setSchemaImports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT</td>
<td>setSchemaImports</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.2.5 ENUMSchemaMapping

Specifies which of two catalog mappings is preferred: namespaces or schema-location URLs. This enumeration is useful for disambiguating ENUMLoadSchemalocation and ENUMSchemaImports.

- **eSMPreferNamespace**: Selects the namespace.
- **eSMPreferSchemalocation**: Selects the schema location. This is the default value.

**COM and .NET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENUMSchemaMapping</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eSMPreferSchemalocation</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eSMPreferNamespace</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Used by*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>SchemaMapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXSLT</td>
<td>SchemaMapping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java**

```java
public enum ENUMSchemaMapping {
    eSMPreferSchemalocation,
    eSMPreferNamespace
}
```

*Used by*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>setSchemaMapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXSLT</td>
<td>setSchemaMapping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.2.6 ENUMValidationType

Specifies what validation to carry out and, in the case of XML documents, whether validation is against a DTD or XSD.

- **eValidateAny**: The document type (for example, XML or XSD) is detected, and validation is set automatically for that document type.
- **eValidateXMLWithDTD**: Specifies validation of an XML document against a DTD.
- **eValidateXMLWithXSD**: Specifies validation of an XML document against an XSD (XML Schema).
- **eValidateDTD**: Specifies validation of a DTD document.
eValidateXSD: Specifies validation of an XSD (W3C XMLSchema) document.
eValidateJSON: Specifies validation of a JSON instance document.
eValidateAvro: Specifies validation of an Avro binary file. The Avro data in the binary file is validated against the Avro Schema contained in the binary file.
eValidateAvroSchema: Specifies validation of an Avro schema against the Avro schema specification.
eValidateAvroJSON: Specifies validation of a JSON-serialized Avro data file against an Avro schema.

COM and .NET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eValidateAny</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eValidateXMLWithDTD</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateXMLWithXSD</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateDTD</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateXSD</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateJSON</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateJSONSchema</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateAvro</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateAvroSchema</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eValidateAvroJSON</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Used by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>isValid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Java

```java
public enum ENUMValidationType {
    eValidateAny,
    eValidateXMLWithDTD,
    eValidateXMLWithXSD,
    eValidateDTD,
    eValidateXSD,
    eValidateJSON,
    eValidateJSONSchema,
    eValidateAvro,
    eValidateAvroSchema,
    eValidateAvroJSON
}
```

Used by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XMLValidator</td>
<td>isValid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
5.4.2.7 ENUMWellformedCheckType

Specifies the type of well-formed check to make (for XML, DTD, or JSON).

- **eWellformedAny**: The document type is detected, and the type of check is set automatically.
- **eWellformedXML**: Checks an XML document for well-formedness.
- **eWellformedDTD**: Checks a DTD document for well-formedness.
- **eWellformedJSON**: Checks a JSON document for well-formedness.

**COM and .NET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENUM</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eWellformedAny</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eWellformedXML</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eWellformedDTD</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eWellformedJSON</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>isWellFormed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java**

```java
public enum ENUMWellformedCheckType {
    eWellformedAny,
    eWellformedXML,
    eWellformedDTD,
    eWellformedJSON
}
```

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XMLValidator</td>
<td>isWellFormed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.2.8 ENUMXMLValidationMode

Specifies the type of XML validation to perform (validation or well-formedness check).

- **eProcessingModeWF**: Sets the XML processing mode to wellformed. This is the default value.
- **eProcessingModeValid**: Sets the XML processing mode to validation.
- **eProcessingModeID**: Internal, not for use.
COM and .NET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enum Name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eXMLValidationModeWF</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXMLValidationModeID</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXMLValidationModeValid</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXMLValidator</td>
<td>XMLValidationMode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXQuery</td>
<td>XMLValidationMode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXSLT</td>
<td>XMLValidationMode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Java

```java
public enum ENUMXMLValidationMode {
    eProcessingModeValid,
    eProcessingModeWF,
    eProcessingModeID
}
```

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XMLValidator</td>
<td>setXMLValidationMode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XQuery</td>
<td>setXMLValidationMode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT</td>
<td>setXMLValidationMode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.2.9 ENUMXQueryUpdatedXML

Specifies how XQuery updates are handled.

- **eUpdatedDiscard**: Updates are discarded and not written to file.
- **eUpdatedWriteback**: Updates are written to the input XML file specified with `InputXMLFileName`.
- **eUpdatedAsMainResult**: Updates are written to the location specified by the `outputFile` parameter of `ExecuteUpdate`.

COM and .NET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enum Name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eUpdatedDiscard</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eUpdatedWriteback</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4.2.10 ENUMXQueryVersion

Sets the XQuery version to be used for processing (execution or validation).

- **eXQVersion10**: Sets the XQuery version to XQuery 1.0.
- **eXQVersion30**: Sets the XQuery version to XQuery 3.0. The default value.
- **eXQVersion31**: Sets the XQuery version to XQuery 3.1.

**Note**: The Java enumeration literals are differently named than the COM/.NET literals. See below.

#### COM and .NET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENUMXQueryVersion</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eXQVersion10</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXQVersion30</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXQVersion31</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXQuery</td>
<td>EngineVersion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Java

```java
public enum ENUMXQueryVersion {  
    eVersion10,  
    eVersion30  
}
```

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XQuery</td>
<td>setUpdatedXMLWriteMode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Used by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXQuery</td>
<td>UpdatedXMLWriteMode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java**

```java
public enum ENUMXQueryUpdatedXML {  
    eUpdatedDiscard,  
    eUpdatedWriteback,  
    eeUpdatedAsMainResult  
}
```

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XQuery</td>
<td>setUpdatedXMLWriteMode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.2.11 ENUMXSDVersion

Specifies the XML Schema version to use for validation.

- **eXSDVersionAuto**: The XML Schema version is detected automatically from the XSD document's 
  `vc:minVersion` attribute. If this attribute's value is 1.1, then the document is considered to be 
  XSD 1.1. If the attribute has any other value, or if no value exists, then the document is considered to be 
  XSD 1.0.
- **eXSDVersion10**: Sets the XML Schema version for validation to XML Schema 1.0.
- **eXSDVersion11**: Sets the XML Schema version for validation to XML Schema 1.1.

### COM and .NET

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eXSDVersionAuto</td>
<td>= 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXSDVersion10</td>
<td>= 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXSDVersion11</td>
<td>= 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Java

```java
public enum ENUMXSDVersion {
    eXSDVersionAuto,
    eXSDVersion10,
    eXSDVersion11
}
```

### Used by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XQuery</td>
<td>setEngineVersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLValidator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXQuery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IXSLT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
5.4.2.12 ENUMXSLTVersion

Sets the XSLT version to be used for processing (validation or XSLT transformation).

- **eVersion10**: Sets the XSLT version to XSLT 1.0.
- **eVersion20**: Sets the XSLT version to XSLT 2.0.
- **eVersion30**: Sets the XSLT version to XSLT 3.0.

**COM and .NET**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eVersion10</td>
<td>= 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eVersion20</td>
<td>= 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eVersion30</td>
<td>= 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IXSLT</td>
<td>EngineVersion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java**

```java
public enum ENUMXSLTVersion {
    eVersion10,
    eVersion20,
    eVersion30,
}
```

**Used by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XSLT</td>
<td>setEngineVersion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Engine APIs: Python and .NET

RaptorXML Server provides two engine APIs:

- a Python wheel file (.whl), which is the Python Engine API: `raptorxml<versiondetails>.whl`
- a .NET DLL file (.dll), which is the .NET Engine API: `raptorxmlapi.dll`

These two engine APIs provide the RaptorXML Server functionality as separate packages that are standalone and independent from RaptorXML Server (see figure below). Each package must be installed on the user's machine before it can be imported as a Python module or integrated into a custom .NET application. Because all processing is performed locally on the user's machine, the Python and .NET engine APIs provide detailed access to the data models of any valid XML and XBRL instances, XSD schemas and XBRL taxonomies. The APIs expose a rich set of methods to iterate over the content of XBRL instances or allow to retrieve specific bits of information from XBRL taxonomies with a few lines of code.

Note the following points about the Engine APIs:

- After you install RaptorXML Server, both engine APIs will be located in the `bin` folder of the RaptorXML Server installation folder.
- The engine APIs provide additional advanced processing via more versatile objects in their APIs.
- In order to use an engine API, a licensed version of RaptorXML Server must be installed on the machine on which the Python program or .NET application is executed (see Usage below).

Usage

You can create a Python program or .NET application as follows:

**Python program**

A Python program can access RaptorXML functionality by using Python API objects (see here). When the Python program is executed, it will use the RaptorXML library that has been installed in your Python
environment when you install the Python wheel. Note that the Python wheel is compatible with Python version 3.7 only.

.NET application
A .NET application can access RaptorXML functionality by using .NET API objects (see here). When the .NET application is executed, it will use the RaptorXML that is contained in the .NET API DLL.

Licensing
In order to use an engine API, a licensed version of RaptorXML Server must be installed on the machine on which the Python program or .NET application is executed. See the section Licensing for more detailed information.
6.1 Licensing

In order for an API package to run on a client machine, that machine will have to be licensed as a RaptorXML Server client. Licensing consists of two steps:

1. Registering the machine as a RaptorXML Server client with Altova LicenseServer
2. Assigning a RaptorXML Server license from LicenseServer to that machine.

If you plan to use the API package from a given machine, then two possible situations arise:

- If the client machine is already running a licensed installation of RaptorXML Server, then the API package can be run without you needing to take any additional steps. This is because the machine is already licensed to run RaptorXML Server. Consequently, use of the API package on this machine is covered by the license assigned to RaptorXML Server on that machine.
- If RaptorXML Server is not installed on the client machine and you do not want to install RaptorXML Server on that machine for whatever reason. In this case, you can still register the machine as a RaptorXML Server client and assign it a RaptorXML Server license. How to do this is described below.

To register a machine (on which RaptorXML Server is not installed) as a RaptorXML Server client, use the command line application `registerlicense.exe`, which is located in the application's `bin` folder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Windows</th>
<th>Program Files\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linux</td>
<td>/opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac</td>
<td>/usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On the command line run the command:

```
registerlicense <LicenseServer>
```

where `<LicenseServer>` is the IP address or host name of the LicenseServer machine.

This command will register the machine as a RaptorXML Server client with Altova LicenseServer. For information about how to assign a RaptorXML Server license to the machine and for more information about licensing, see the Altova LicenseServer documentation.

Deploying on Linux

To deploy the `registerlicense` application with your Python wheel package, the shared libraries that are listed below need to be present in a sibling `lib` directory. The shared libraries can be copied from your Raptor installation folder:

```
/opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServerRaptorXMLServer2021/lib
```

- `libcrypto.so.1.0.0`
- `libssl.so.1.0.0`
- `libstdc++.so.6`
- `libtbb.so.2`
6.2  Python API

The RaptorXML Python API enables data in XML documents and XML Schema documents to be accessed and manipulated in Python scripts. Some typical use cases of the Python API include:

- implement custom validation rules and error messages
- export content from XML documents to a database
- export content from XML documents to custom data formats
- interactively navigate and query the data model of XML documents within a Python shell or Jupyter notebook ([http://jupyter.org/](http://jupyter.org/))

The Python APIs

The Python APIs (for XML and XSD) provide access to the meta-information, structural information, and data contained in XML and XSD documents. As a result, Python scripts can be created that make use of the APIs to access and process document information. For example, a Python script can be passed to RaptorXML Server that writes data from an XML document to a database or to a CSV file.

Example scripts for Raptor's Python APIs are available at: [https://github.com/altova](https://github.com/altova)

The Python APIs are described in their API references:

- **Python API v1 Reference**
- **Python API v2 Reference**

**Note:** Raptor's **Python API v1 is deprecated**. Please use Python API v2.

RaptorXML Server package for Python

In your installation of RaptorXML Server, you will also find a Python package in wheel format. You can use Python's `pip` command to install this package as a module of your Python installation. After the RaptorXML module has been installed, you can use the module's functions within your code. In this way, RaptorXML's functionality can be used easily in any Python program you write, together with other third-party Python libraries, such as graphics libraries.

For information about how to use RaptorXML Server's Python package, see the section **RaptorXML Server as a Python Package**.

**Note:** The Python wheel is compatible with Python version 3.7 only.

Python scripts

A user-created Python script is submitted with the `--script` parameter of the following commands:

- `valxml-withxsd (xsi)`
- `valxsd (xsd)`

These commands invoking Python scripts can be used both on the Command Line Interface (CLI) and via the HTTP Interface. The usage of Python scripts with the Python APIs of RaptorXML Server are described at: [https://github.com/altova](https://github.com/altova).
Making Python scripts safe

When a Python script is specified in a command via HTTP to RaptorXML Server, the script will only work if it is located in the trusted directory. The script is executed from the trusted directory. Specifying a Python script from any other directory will result in an error. The trusted directory is specified in the server.script-root-dir setting of the server configuration file, and a trusted directory must be specified if you wish to use Python scripts. Make sure that all Python scripts to be used are saved in this directory.

Though all output generated by the server for HTTP job requests is written to the job output directory (which is a sub-directory of the output-root-directory), this limitation does not apply to Python scripts, which can write to any location. The server administrator must review the Python scripts in the trusted directory for potential vulnerability issues.

6.2.1 Python API Versions

RaptorXML Server supports multiple Python API versions. Any previous Python API version is also supported by the current version of RaptorXML Server. The Python API version is selected by the --script-api-version=MAJOR_VERSION command line flag. The default of the MAJOR_VERSION argument is always the current version. A new RaptorXML Server Python API MAJOR_VERSION is introduced when incompatible changes or major enhancements are introduced. Users of the API do not need to upgrade their existing scripts when a new major version is released.

It is recommended that:

- You use the --script-api-version=MAJOR_VERSION flag to invoke utility scripts from the RaptorXML Server command-line (or Web-API). This ensures that scripts still work as expected after RaptorXML Server updates—even if a new API MAJOR_VERSION has been released.
- You use the latest version of the API for new projects, even though previous versions will be supported by future RaptorXML Server releases.

The Python API versions listed below are currently available. The documentation of the different APIs are available online at the locations given below.

Example files
For examples of scripts that use Raptor's Python APIs, go to https://github.com/altova.

Python API version 1
Introduced with RaptorXML Server v2014

| Command line flag: | --script-api-version=1 |
| Documentation:     | Python API Version 1 Reference |

This is the original RaptorXML Server Python API. It covers support to access the internal model of RaptorXML Server for:
The API can be used through callback functions which are implemented in a Python script file.

- on_xsi_valid
- on_xsd_valid
- on_dts_valid
- on_xbrl_valid

A script is specified with the --script option on the command line. The callback functions are invoked only if the validation succeeds. Details about the callback functions and the API are described in the RaptorXML Server Python API version 1 reference.

Note: Raptor's Python API v1 is deprecated. Please use Python API v2.

**Python API version 2**

Introduced with RaptorXML Server v2015r3. The latest API version is 2.8.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command line flag</th>
<th>Release</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2</td>
<td>v 2015r3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.1</td>
<td>v 2015r4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.2</td>
<td>v 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.3</td>
<td>v 2016r2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.4</td>
<td>v 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.4.1</td>
<td>v 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.5.0</td>
<td>v 2018r2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.6.0</td>
<td>v 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.7.0</td>
<td>v2019r3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.8.0</td>
<td>v2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.8.1</td>
<td>v2020r2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.8.2</td>
<td>v2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script-api-version=2.8.3</td>
<td>v2021r2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Documentation: [Python API Version 2 Reference](#)

This API version introduces over 300 new classes and reorganizes the modules from the RaptorXML Server Python API version 1 in such a way that frequently used information (for example, PSVI data) can be accessed more simply and related APIs are grouped logically together (for example, `xbrl.taxonomy`, `xbrl.formula`,...
In this version, the callback functions are invoked not only if validation succeeds, but also if validation fails. To reflect this behavior, the name of the callback functions are changed to:

- on_xsi_finished
- on_xsd_finished
- on_dts_finished
- on_xbrl_finished

To enable modularization, RaptorXML Server now supports multiple --script options. The callbacks implemented in these Python script files are executed in the order specified on the command line.

### 6.2.2 RaptorXML Server as a Python Package

Starting with RaptorXML Server 2017, the Python API is available as a native Python wheel package for Python 3.7. The Python wheel package can be installed as an extension module into your favored Python 3.7 distribution (for example, from python.org). Some Python 3 distributions (for example, from jupyter.org, anaconda.org and SciPy.org) include a wide range of extension modules for big data, mathematics, science, engineering and graphics. These modules now become available to RaptorXML Server without the need to build these modules specifically for RaptorXML Server. Otherwise, the wheel package works the same way as the RaptorXMLXBRL-python.exe application that is included with RaptorXML Server.

**Note:** The Python wheel package is a native Python 3.7 extension module and is compatible with Python version 3.7.

**Note:** The Python wheel package does not include the Python API v1.

**Note:** If you update your version of RaptorXML Server, make sure to update the Python wheel package in your Python environment.

The information required to correctly install the RaptorXML Server package is given in the sections below:

- **Name of wheel file**
- **Location of wheel file**
- **Installing a wheel with pip**
- **The root catalog file**
- **The JSON config file**

For information about how to use RaptorXML Server's Python API, see the Python API Reference and examples. Also see example scripts that use Raptor's Python API at [https://github.com/altova](https://github.com/altova).

**Name of wheel file**

Wheel files are named according to the following pattern:

```
raptorxmlserver-{version}{-build tag)?-{python tag}-{abi tag}-{platform tag}.whl
```

**Example:**

```
raptorxmlserver-2.8.1-cp35-cp35m-win_amd64.whl
```
Location of wheel file

A wheel file is packaged with your installation of RaptorXML Server. It is located in the application's `bin` folder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>Program Files\Altova\RaptorXMLServer2021\bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linux</td>
<td>/opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac</td>
<td>/usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/bin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Installing a wheel with `pip`

To install the RaptorXML Server package as a Python module, use the `pip` command:

```
   pip install <wheel-file>.whl
   python -m pip install <wheel-file>.whl
```

If you have installed Python 3.7 or later from python.org, then `pip` will already be installed. Otherwise, you will need to install `pip` first. For more information, see [https://docs.python.org/3/installing/](https://docs.python.org/3/installing/).

The root catalog file

The RaptorXML module for Python must be able to locate `RootCatalog.xml`, the root catalog file that is stored in your RaptorXML Server installation folder. This is so that the RaptorXML module can use the catalog to correctly locate the various resources, such as schemas and other specifications, that the module references in order to carry out functions such as validations and transformations. The RaptorXML module will automatically locate `RootCatalog.xml` if the catalog's location has not been changed subsequent to the installation of RaptorXML Server.

In case you move or modify your RaptorXML Server environment, or if you move `RootCatalog.xml` from its original installed location, then you can specify the catalog's location by means of environment variables and the RaptorXML module's JSON Config File. See the list below for the various ways in which you can do this.

The RaptorXML module determines the location of `RootCatalog.xml` by looking up the following resources in the order given:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Environment variable</th>
<th>Create with a value that is the path to <code>RootCatalog.xml</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>ALTOVA_RAPTORXML_PYTHON_CATALOGPATH</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>HKLM Registry: SOFTWARE\Altova\RaptorXMLServer\Installation_v2021_x64\Setup\CatalogPath</td>
<td>Registry key is added by RaptorXML Server installer. Value is the path to <code>RootCatalog.xml</code>. <em>Windows only</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Location: /opt/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/RootCatalog.xml</td>
<td><em>Linux only</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Location: /usr/local/Altova/RaptorXMLServer2021/etc/RootCatalog.xml</td>
<td><em>Mac only</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Environment variable <code>ALTOVA_RAPTORXML_PYTHON_CONFIG</code></td>
<td>Create with a value that is the path to the JSON config file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Location: `.altova/raptorxml-python.config`  The JSON config file in the current working directory
7. Location: `~/.config/altova/raptorxml-python.config`  The JSON config file in the user's home directory
8. Location: `/etc/altova/altova/raptorxml-python.config`  The JSON config file, Linux and Mac only

The JSON config file
You can create a JSON config file for the RaptorXMLServer module. This file will be used by options 5 to 8 in the table above to locate the root catalog file. The JSON config file must contain a map with a "CatalogPath" key that has a value which is the path to the root catalog file.

Listing of JSON config file

```json
{
    "CatalogPath": "/path/to/RootCatalog.xml"
}
```

6.2.3 Debugging Server-Side Python Scripts

Most of the debugging functionality—apart the server-specific callbacks—can be used in a standard Python interpreter or (virtual) environment after the RaptorXML Server module has been installed by using `pip`:

```
    pip install --upgrade "/path/to/RaptorXML/application-folder/bin/raptorxml-version-cp37-cp37m-winversion.whl"
```

After installing the wheel, you should be able to use any Python IDE to debug a script. You could try to extract the main functionality into a separate function which takes an instance object. This can then be called (i) by the RaptorXML Server callbacks, or (ii) by directly executing the script with a Python interpreter.

```python
from altova_api.v2 import xml, xsd, xbrl

def main(instance):
    # Here goes the application specific logic

    # Main entry point, will be called by RaptorXML after the XML instance validation job has finished
    def on_xsi_finished(job, instance):
        # instance object will be None if XML Schema validation was not successful
        if instance:
            main(instance)

    # Main entry point, will be called by RaptorXML after the XBRL instance validation job has finished
    def on_xbrl_finished(job, instance):
        # instance object will be None if XBRL 2.1 validation was not successful
```

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH  Altova RaptorXML Server 2021
if instance:
    main(instance)

if __name__ == '__main__':
    # parse arguments and create an instance
    instance = ...
    main(instance)

### 6.2.4 Debugging Python Scripts in Visual Studio Code

We assume an up-to-date Visual Studio Code (VS Code) installation with the **ms-python.python** extension installed. Please read the official Python debug configurations in Visual Studio Code guide for a general overview.

Note the following points:

- This guide uses **raptorxml-python** as the command to execute RaptorXML Server as a Python interpreter.
- The **raptorxml-python** executable is available in the **bin** folder of your RaptorXML Server application folder.

**Overview**

We introduce two methods to use VS Code to debug Python scripts in RaptorXML Server.

- Method 1 also works for servers and RaptorXML Python callbacks (``--script`` option).
- Method 2 doesn't require any source code modifications. It is a modified invocation of RaptorXML.
- Both methods work with a standard Python interpreter and the imported RaptorXML Python module (`'import altova_api.v2 as altova'`).

**Method 1: Change your source code**

Carry out the following steps:

1. Run: **raptorxml-python -m pip install --upgrade debugpy**
2. Add the following lines to your Python source code:
   ```python
   import debugpy
   debugpy.listen(5678)
   debugpy.wait_for_client()
   debugpy.breakpoint()
   ```
3. Copy this launch configuration to VS Code **launch.json** (defaults will do for the above values) and select it for Run.

```json
{
   "name": "Python: Remote Attach",
   "type": "python",
   "request": "attach"
}
```
"connect": {
  "host": "localhost",
  "port": 5678
},
"pathMappings": [ {
  "localRoot": "${workspaceFolder}",
  "remoteRoot": "."
}
]

You can also run by using the menu command Run->Add Configuration...->Python->Remote Attach with the defaults accepted.

4. Run your Python script (or RaptorXML with --script callbacks) as usual.
5. Start debugging (usually with the shortcut F5).

Method 2: Use a modified command line
Carry out the following steps:

1. Add a launch configuration (as in Method 1 above), and select it for Run.
2. Set a breakpoint in your Python script.
3. Run the command: `raptorxml-python -m debugpy --listen 0.0.0.0:5678 --wait-for-client your_script.py`
4. Start debugging (usually with the shortcut F5).

Note: Debugging also works with containers and remote servers. You have to change the host key of the connect entry in the launch configuration. You may also use other ports as long as code or command line and launch.json have consistent values.

Setting raptorxml-python.exe as VS Code's default interpreter
It is possible to configure raptorxml-python.exe as the default Python interpreter of VS Code. Do this by adding the following to your VS Code settings.json file:

    json
    "python.defaultInterpreterPath": "/path/to/raptorxml-python.exe"
...

In this case, it is also possible to use a "Current File" launch configuration that starts the script for debugging. Consult the official VS Code documentation for details.

6.2.5 FAQs

Q: I want to write a Python script that creates a new XML instance one element at a time while running inside the raptor server. These need to be serialized to the output with different encodings and formatting depending on parameters. Is this possible in RaptorXML Server.
A: No, this is currently not possible because we do not have an API for creating arbitrary XML instances. However, when it comes to generating XBRL instances, we do have a high-level API which manages a lot of the technical details (such as avoiding writing duplicate contexts/units, and lots more). See https://www.altova.com/manual/RaptorXML/pyapiv2/html/xbrl.InstanceDocumentBuilder.html for more information.

Q: I would like to use lxml. Can I install lxml libraries into "RaptorXMLXBRLServer2020/lib/python3.7/site-packages/"?

A: You can install most Python modules directly by running the following command in a terminal that has administrator rights:

```
"/path/to/RaptorXML/application-folder/bin/RaptorXMLXBRL-python.exe" -m pip install lxml
```

Q: Would it be all right to create a big string that contains the XML instance, then parse the whole thing and re-serialize it.

A: That is one possibility. You can parse and validate XML and XBRL instances from a string buffer using the Python API like this:

```python
from altova_api.v2 import xml

txt = '''<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<doc>
  <elem attr="foo">bar</elem>
</doc>'''

inst = xml.Instance.create_from_buffer(txt.encode('utf-8')).result
print(inst.serialize())
```
6.3 .NET Framework API

The .NET Framework API of RaptorXML Server enables you to integrate the RaptorXML engine in applications written in C# and other .NET languages.

It is implemented as a .NET assembly and puts the RaptorXML engine directly inside an application or a .NET-framework-based extension mechanism like VSTO (Visual Studio Tools for Office). The API provides fine-grained access to validate documents and to query their internal data model from RaptorXML Server.

Reference and resources

- **Example code**: The example code is hosted at https://github.com/altova/RaptorXML-Examples.
Additional Information

This section contains the following additional information:

- Exit Codes
- Schema Location Hints
## 7.1 Exit Codes

The following exit codes are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Validation successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Validation failed with error / Process interrupted by Ctrl+C/Break/terminal closed / License expired during execution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>RaptorXML could not start; the reason is given in the log file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Could not load root catalog / Could not load list file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Invalid command/options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Failed to acquire license during startup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128+&lt;n&gt;</td>
<td>RaptorXML terminated because of signal number ( n ). All exit codes above 128 indicate termination as a result of a received external signal or an internally triggered signal. For example, if the exit code is 134, then the signal number is ( 134 - 128 = 6 ) (the number of SIGABRT).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.2 Schema Location Hints

Instance documents can use hints to indicate the schema location. Two attributes are used for hints:

- **xsi:schemaLocation** for schema documents with target namespaces. The attribute's value is a pair of items, the first of which is a namespace, the second is a URL that locates a schema document. The namespace name must match the target namespace of the schema document.
  
  ```xml
  <document xmlns="http://www.altova.com/schemas/test03"
            xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
            xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.altova.com/schemas/test03 Test.xsd">
  </document>
  ```

- **xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation** for schema documents without target namespaces. The attribute's value is the schema document's URL. The referenced schema document must have no target namespace.
  
  ```xml
  <document xmlns="http://www.altova.com/schemas/test03"
            xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
            xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="Test.xsd">
  </document>
  ```

The `--schemalocation-hints` option specifies how these two attributes are to be used as hints, especially how the `schemaLocation` attribute information is to be handled (see the option's description above). Note that RaptorXML Server considers the namespace part of the `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` value to be the empty string.

Schema location hints can also be given in an `import` statement of an XML Schema document.

```xml
<import namespace="someNS" schemaLocation="someURL"/>
```

In the `import` statement, too, hints can be given via a namespace that can be mapped to a schema in a catalog file, or directly as a URL in the `schemaLocation` attribute. The `--schema-imports` option (for XBRL and XSD/XML) specifies how the schema location is to be selected.
8  Engine Information

This section contains information about the XSLT and XQuery engines contained in RaptorXML Server. This information mostly concerns engine behavior in situations where the specifications leave the decision regarding behavior up to the implementation. This section also contains information about Altova extension functions for XPath/XQuery.
8.1 XSLT and XQuery Engine Information

The XSLT and XQuery engines of RaptorXML Server follow the W3C specifications closely and are therefore stricter than previous Altova engines—such as those in previous versions of XMLSpy and those of AltovaXML, the predecessor of RaptorXML. As a result, minor errors that were ignored by previous engines are now flagged as errors by RaptorXML Server.

For example:

- It is a type error (err:XPTY0018) if the result of a path operator contains both nodes and non-nodes.
- It is a type error (err:XPTY0019) if \( E1 \) in a path expression \( E1/E2 \) does not evaluate to a sequence of nodes.

If you encounter this kind of error, modify either the XSLT/XQuery document or the instance document as appropriate.

This section describes implementation-specific features of the engines, organized by specification:

- XSLT 1.0
- XSLT 2.0
- XSLT 3.0
- XQuery 1.0
- XQuery 3.1

8.1.1 XSLT 1.0

The XSLT 1.0 Engine of RaptorXML Server conforms to the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) XSLT 1.0 Recommendation of 16 November 1999 and XPath 1.0 Recommendation of 16 November 1999. Note the following information about the implementation.

Notes about the implementation

When the `method` attribute of `xsl:output` is set to HTML, or if HTML output is selected by default, then special characters in the XML or XSLT file are inserted in the HTML document as HTML character references in the output. For instance, the character U+00A0 (the hexadecimal character reference for a non-breaking space) is inserted in the HTML code either as a character reference (`&amp;nbsp;`) or as an entity reference, `&nbsp;`.

8.1.2 XSLT 2.0

This section:

- Engine conformance
- Backward compatibility
- Namespaces
- Schema awareness
Conformance

Backwards Compatibility
The XSLT 2.0 engine is backwards compatible. The only time the backwards compatibility of the XSLT 2.0 engine comes into effect is when using the XSLT 2.0 engine (CLI parameter 
--xslt=2) to process an XSLT 1.0 stylesheet. Note that there could be differences in the outputs produced by the XSLT 1.0 Engine and the backwards-compatible XSLT 2.0 engine.

Namespaces
Your XSLT 2.0 stylesheet should declare the following namespaces in order for you to be able to use the type constructors and functions available in XSLT 2.0. The prefixes given below are conventionally used; you could use alternative prefixes if you wish.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Namespace Name</th>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Namespace URI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XML Schema types</td>
<td>xs:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPath 2.0 functions</td>
<td>fn:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions">http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Typically, these namespaces will be declared on the `xsl:stylesheet` or `xsl:transform` element, as shown in the following listing:

```xml
true
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
...
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

The following points should be noted:

- The XSLT 2.0 engine uses the XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions namespace (listed in the table above) as its default functions namespace. So you can use XPath 2.0 and XSLT 2.0 functions in your stylesheet without any prefix. If you declare the XPath 2.0 Functions namespace in your stylesheet with a prefix, then you can additionally use the prefix assigned in the declaration.
- When using type constructors and types from the XML Schema namespace, the prefix used in the namespace declaration must be used when calling the type constructor (for example, `xs:date`).
- Some XPath 2.0 functions have the same name as XML Schema datatypes. For example, for the XPath functions `fn:string` and `fn:boolean` there exist XML Schema datatypes with the same local names: `xs:string` and `xs:boolean`. So if you were to use the XPath expression `string('Hello')`, the expression evaluates as `fn:string('Hello')`—not as `xs:string('Hello')`.

Schema-awareness
The XSLT 2.0 engine is schema-aware. So you can use user-defined schema types and the `xsl:validate` instruction.
Implementation-specific behavior

Given below is a description of how the XSLT 2.0 engine handles implementation-specific aspects of the behavior of certain XSLT 2.0 functions.

xsl:result-document
Additionally supported encodings are (the Altova-specific): \textit{x-base16tobinary} and \textit{x-base64tobinary}.

function-available
The function tests for the availability of in-scope functions (XSLT, XPath, and extension functions).

unparsed-text
The \texttt{href} attribute accepts (i) relative paths for files in the base-uri folder, and (ii) absolute paths with or without the \texttt{file://} protocol. Additionally supported encodings are (the Altova-specific): \textit{x-binarytobase16} and \textit{x-binarytobase64}.

unparsed-text-available
The \texttt{href} attribute accepts (i) relative paths for files in the base-uri folder, and (ii) absolute paths with or without the \texttt{file://} protocol. Additionally supported encodings are (the Altova-specific): \textit{x-binarytobase16} and \textit{x-binarytobase64}.

\textbf{Note:} The following encoding values, which were implemented in earlier versions of RaptorXML's predecessor product, AltovaXML, are now deprecated: \textit{base16tobinary}, \textit{base64tobinary}, \textit{binarytobase16} and \textit{binarytobase64}.

\section*{8.1.3 XSLT 3.0}

The XSLT 3.0 Engine of RaptorXML Server conforms to the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) XSLT 3.0 Recommendation of 8 June 2017 and XPath 3.1 Recommendation of 21 March 2017.

The XSLT 3.0 engine has the same implementation-specific characteristics as the XSLT 2.0 engine. Additionally, it includes support for a number of new XSLT 3.0 features: XPath/XQuery 3.1 functions and operators, and the \textit{XPath 3.1 specification}.

\textbf{Note:} The optional streaming feature is not supported currently. The entire document will be loaded into memory regardless of the value of the \texttt{streamable} attribute, and will be processed if enough memory is available. In 64-bit apps this should not be a problem. If memory does turn out to be an issue, a solution would be to add more memory to the system.

\section*{8.1.4 XQuery 1.0}

\textit{This section:}

- Engine conformance
- Schema awareness
- Encoding
- Namespaces
Conformance

The XQuery 1.0 Engine of RaptorXML Server conforms to the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) XQuery 1.0 Recommendation of 14 December 2010. The XQuery standard gives implementations discretion about how to implement many features. Given below is a list explaining how the XQuery 1.0 Engine implements these features.

Schema awareness

The XQuery 1.0 Engine is schema-aware.

Encoding

The UTF-8 and UTF-16 character encodings are supported.

Namespaces

The following namespace URIs and their associated bindings are pre-defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Namespace Name</th>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Namespace URI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XML Schema types</td>
<td>xs:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema instance</td>
<td>xsi:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in functions</td>
<td>fn:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions">http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local functions</td>
<td>local:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/2005/xquery-local-functions">http://www.w3.org/2005/xquery-local-functions</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following points should be noted:

- The XQuery 1.0 Engine recognizes the prefixes listed above as being bound to the corresponding namespaces.
- Since the built-in functions namespace listed above is the default functions namespace in XQuery, the fn: prefix does not need to be used when built-in functions are invoked (for example, string("Hello") will call the fn:string function). However, the prefix fn: can be used to call a built-in function without having to declare the namespace in the query prolog (for example: fn:string("Hello").)
- You can change the default functions namespace by declaring the default function namespace expression in the query prolog.
- When using types from the XML Schema namespace, the prefix xs: may be used without having to explicitly declare the namespaces and bind these prefixes to them in the query prolog. (Example: xs:date and xs:yearMonthDuration.) If you wish to use some other prefix for the XML Schema namespace, this must be explicitly declared in the query prolog. (Example: declare namespace alt = "http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"; alt:date("2004-10-04").)
Note that the `untypedAtomic`, `dayTimeDuration`, and `yearMonthDuration` datatypes have been moved, with the CRs of 23 January 2007, from the XPath Datatypes namespace to the XML Schema namespace, so: `xs:yearMonthDuration`.

If namespaces for functions, type constructors, node tests, etc are wrongly assigned, an error is reported. Note, however, that some functions have the same name as schema datatypes, e.g. `fn:string` and `fn:boolean`. (Both `xs:string` and `xs:boolean` are defined.) The namespace prefix determines whether the function or type constructor is used.

**XML source document and validation**

XML documents used in executing an XQuery document with the XQuery 1.0 Engine must be well-formed. However, they do not need to be valid according to an XML Schema. If the file is not valid, the invalid file is loaded without schema information. If the XML file is associated with an external schema and is valid according to it, then post-schema validation information is generated for the XML data and will be used for query evaluation.

**Static and dynamic type checking**

The static analysis phase checks aspects of the query such as syntax, whether external references (e.g. for modules) exist, whether invoked functions and variables are defined, and so on. If an error is detected in the static analysis phase, it is reported and the execution is stopped.

Dynamic type checking is carried out at run-time, when the query is actually executed. If a type is incompatible with the requirement of an operation, an error is reported. For example, the expression `xs:string("1") + 1` returns an error because the addition operation cannot be carried out on an operand of type `xs:string`.

**Library Modules**

Library modules store functions and variables so they can be reused. The XQuery 1.0 Engine supports modules that are stored in a single external XQuery file. Such a module file must contain a module declaration in its prolog, which associates a target namespace. Here is an example module:

```xml
module namespace libns="urn:module-library";
declare variable $libns:company := "Altova";
declare function libns:webaddress() { "http://www.altova.com" };
```

All functions and variables declared in the module belong to the namespace associated with the module. The module is used by importing it into an XQuery file with the `import module` statement in the query prolog. The `import module` statement only imports functions and variables declared directly in the library module file. As follows:

```perl
import module namespace modlib = "urn:module-library" at "modulefilename.xq";
if ($modlib:company = "Altova")
  then  modlib:webaddress()
else  error("No match found.")
```

**External functions**

External functions are not supported, i.e. in those expressions using the `external` keyword, as in:

```perl
declare function hoo($param as xs:integer) as xs:string external;
```
Collations
The default collation is the Unicode-codepoint collation, which compares strings on the basis of their Unicode codepoint. Other supported collations are the ICU collations listed here. To use a specific collation, supply its URI as given in the list of supported collations. Any string comparisons, including for the fn:max and fn:min functions, will be made according to the specified collation. If the collation option is not specified, the default Unicode-codepoint collation is used.

Precision of numeric types
- The xs:integer datatype is arbitrary-precision, i.e. it can represent any number of digits.
- The xs:decimal datatype has a limit of 20 digits after the decimal point.
- The xs:float and xs:double datatypes have limited-precision of 15 digits.

XQuery Instructions Support
The Pragma instruction is not supported. If encountered, it is ignored and the fallback expression is evaluated.

8.1.5  XQuery 3.1
The XQuery 3.1 Engine of RaptorXML Server conforms to the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) XQuery 3.1 Recommendation of 21 March 2017 and includes support for XPath and XQuery Functions 3.1. The XQuery 3.1 specification is a superset of the 3.0 specification. The XQuery 3.1 engine therefore supports XQuery 3.0 features.

Implementation-specific characteristics are the same as for XQuery 1.0.
8.2 XSLT and XPath/XQuery Functions

This section lists Altova extension functions and other extension functions that can be used in XPath and/or XQuery expressions. Altova extension functions can be used with Altova's XSLT and XQuery engines, and provide functionality additional to that available in the function libraries defined in the W3C standards.

General points
The following general points should be noted:

- Functions from the core function libraries defined in the W3C specifications can be called without a prefix. That's because the XSLT and XQuery engines read non-prefixed functions as belonging to a default functions namespace which is that specified in the XPath/XQuery functions specifications http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions. If this namespace is explicitly declared in an XSLT or XQuery document, the prefix used in the namespace declaration can also optionally be used on function names.
- In general, if a function expects a sequence of one item as an argument, and a sequence of more than one item is submitted, then an error is returned.
- All string comparisons are done using the Unicode codepoint collation.
- Results that are QNames are serialized in the form [prefix:localname].

Precision of xs:decimal
The precision refers to the number of digits in the number, and a minimum of 18 digits is required by the specification. For division operations that produce a result of type xs:decimal, the precision is 19 digits after the decimal point with no rounding.

Implicit timezone
When two date, time, or dateTime values need to be compared, the timezones of the values being compared need to be known. When the timezone is not explicitly given in such a value, the implicit timezone is used. The implicit timezone is taken from the system clock, and its value can be checked with the implicit-timezone() function.

Collations
The default collation is the Unicode codepoint collation, which compares strings on the basis of their Unicode codepoint. The engine uses the Unicode Collation Algorithm. Other supported collations are the ICU collations listed below; to use one of these, supply its URI as given in the table below. Any string comparisons, including for the max and min functions, will be made according to the specified collation. If the collation option is not specified, the default Unicode-codepoint collation is used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>URIs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>da: Danish</td>
<td>da_DK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de: German</td>
<td>de_AT, de_BE, de_CH, de_DE, de_LI, de_LU</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Namespace axis
The namespace axis is deprecated in XPath 2.0. Use of the namespace axis is, however, supported. To access namespace information with XPath 2.0 mechanisms, use the `in-scope-prefixes()`, `namespace-uri()` and `namespace-uri-for-prefix()` functions.

8.2.1 Altova Extension Functions

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, `http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions`, and are indicated in this section with the prefix `altova:`, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace.

Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

Functions defined in the W3C's XPath/XQuery Functions specifications can be used in: (i) XPath expressions in an XSLT context, and (ii) in XQuery expressions in an XQuery document. In this documentation we indicate the functions that can be used in the former context (XPath in XSLT) with an `XP` symbol and call them XPath functions; those functions that can be used in the latter (XQuery) context are indicated with an `XQ` symbol; they work as XQuery functions. The W3C's XSLT specifications—not XPath/XQuery Functions specifications—also define functions that can be used in XPath expressions in XSLT documents. These functions are marked with an `XSLT` symbol and are called XSLT functions. The XPath/XQuery and XSLT versions in which a function can be used are indicated in the description of the function (see symbols below). Functions from the XPath/XQuery and XSLT function libraries are listed without a prefix. Extension functions from other libraries, such as Altova extension functions, are listed with a prefix.
**XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):**

- XP1
- XP2
- XP3.1

**XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):**

- XSLT1
- XSLT2
- XSLT3

**XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):**

- XQ1
- XQ3.1

**XSLT functions**

XSLT functions can only be used in XPath expressions in an XSLT context (similarly to XSLT 2.0's current-group() or key() functions). These functions are not intended for, and will not work in, a non-XSLT context (for instance, in an XQuery context). Note that XSLT functions for XBRL can be used only with editions of Altova products that have XBRL support.

**XPath/XQuery functions**

XPath/XQuery functions can be used both in XPath expressions in XSLT contexts as well as in XQuery expressions:

- Date/Time
- Geolocation
- Image-related
- Numeric
- Sequence
- String
- Miscellaneous

**Chart functions (Enterprise and Server Editions only)**

Altova extension functions for charts are supported only in the Enterprise and Server Editions of Altova products and enable charts to be generated from XML data.

**Barcode functions**

Altova's barcode extension functions enable barcodes to be generated and placed in output generated via XSLT stylesheets.

### 8.2.1.1 XSLT Functions

**XSLT extension functions** can be used in XPath expressions in an XSLT context. They will not work in a non-XSLT context (for instance, in an XQuery context).

**Note about naming of functions and language applicability**

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, `http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions`, and are indicated in this section with the prefix `altova:`, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.
### XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XP1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XP2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XP3.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XSLT1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XQ1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XQ3.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Standard functions

### distinct-nodes [altova:]

```
altova:distinct-nodes(node()*) as node()*  XSLT1  XSLT2  XSLT3
```

Takes a set of one or more nodes as its input and returns the same set minus nodes with duplicate values. The comparison is done using the XPath/XQuery function `fn:deep-equal`.

**Examples**

- `altova:distinct-nodes(country)` returns all child `country` nodes less those having duplicate values.

### evaluate [altova:]

```
altova:evaluate(XPathExpression as xs:string[, ValueOf$p1, ... ValueOf$pN])  XSLT1  XSLT2  XSLT3
```

Takes an XPath expression, passed as a string, as its mandatory argument. It returns the output of the evaluated expression. For example: `altova:evaluate( '//Name[1]' )` returns the contents of the first `Name` element in the document. Note that the expression `//Name[1]` is passed as a string by enclosing it in single quotes.

The `altova:evaluate` function can optionally take additional arguments. These arguments are the values of in-scope variables that have the names `p1`, `p2`, `p3`... `pN`. Note the following points about usage: (i) The variables must be defined with names of the form `pX`, where `X` is an integer; (ii) the `altova:evaluate` function's arguments (see signature above), from the second argument onwards, provide the values of the variables, with the sequence of the arguments corresponding to the numerically ordered sequence of variables: `p1` to `pN`. The second argument will be the value of the variable `p1`, the third argument that of the variable `p2`, and so on; (iii) The variable values must be of type `item*`.

**Example**

```xml
<xsl:variable name="xpath" select="'\$p3, \$p2, \$p1'" />
<xsl:value-of select="altova:evaluate($xpath, 10, 20, 'hi')" />
outputs "hi 20 10"
```

In the listing above, notice the following:

- The second argument of the `altova:evaluate` expression is the value assigned to the variable `p1`, the third argument that assigned to the variable `p2`, and so on.
- Notice that the fourth argument of the function is a string value, indicated by its being enclosed in quotes.
- The `select` attribute of the `xs:variable` element supplies the XPath expression. Since this expression must be of type `xs:string`, it is enclosed in single quotes.

**Examples to further illustrate the use of variables**
The `altova:evaluate()` extension function is useful in situations where an XPath expression in the XSLT stylesheet contains one or more parts that must be evaluated dynamically. For example, consider a situation in which a user enters his request for the sorting criterion and this criterion is stored in the attribute `UserReq/@sortkey` in the stylesheet, you could then have the expression: `<xsl:sort select="altova:evaluate(../UserReq/@sortkey)" order="ascending"/>`. The `altova:evaluate()` function reads the `sortkey` attribute of the `UserReq` child element of the parent of the context node. Say the value of the `sortkey` attribute is `Price`, then `Price` is returned by the `altova:evaluate()` function and becomes the value of the select attribute: `<xsl:sort select="Price" order="ascending"/>`. If this sort instruction occurs within the context of an element called `Order`, then the `Order` elements will be sorted according to the values of their `Price` children. Alternatively, if the value of `@sortkey` were, say, `Date`, then the `Order` elements would be sorted according to the values of their `Date` children. So the sort criterion for `Order` is selected from the `sortkey` attribute at runtime. This could not have been achieved with an expression like: `<xsl:sort select="../UserReq/@sortkey" order="ascending"/>`. In the case shown above, the sort criterion would be the `sortkey` attribute itself, not `Price` or `Date` (or any other current content of `sortkey`).

Note: The static context includes namespaces, types, and functions—but not variables—from the calling environment. The base URI and default namespace are inherited.

More examples

- Static variables: `<xsl:value-of select="$i3, $i2, $i1" />`  
  Outputs the values of three variables.

- Dynamic XPath expression with dynamic variables:  
  `<xsl:variable name="xpath" select="'$p3, $p2, $p1'" />`  
  `<xsl:value-of select="altova:evaluate($xpath, 10, 20, 30)" />`  
  Outputs "30 20 10"

- Dynamic XPath expression with no dynamic variable:  
  `<xsl:variable name="xpath" select="'$p3, $p2, $p1'" />`  
  `<xsl:value-of select="altova:evaluate($xpath)" />`  
  Outputs error: No variable defined for $p3.

`encode-for-rtf [altova:]`

```
altova:encode-for-rtf(input as xs:string, preserveallwhitespace as xs:boolean, preservenewlines as xs:boolean) as xs:string {XSLT2 XSLT3}
```

Converts the input string into code for RTF. Whitespace and new lines will be preserved according to the boolean value specified for their respective arguments.
8.2.1.2 XPath/XQuery Functions: Date and Time

Altova’s date/time extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data held as XML Schema’s various date and time datatypes. The functions in this section can be used with Altova’s XPath 3.0 and XQuery 3.0 engines. They are available in XPath/XQuery contexts.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix altova:, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</th>
<th>XP1</th>
<th>XP2</th>
<th>XP3.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</td>
<td>XSLT1</td>
<td>XSLT2</td>
<td>XSLT3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):</td>
<td>XQ1</td>
<td>XQ3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Add a duration to xs:dateTime and return xs:dateTime
- Add a duration to xs:date and return xs:date
- Add a duration to xs:time and return xs:time
- Format and retrieve durations
- Remove timezone from functions that generate current date/time
• Return days, hours, minutes, and seconds from durations
• Return weekday as integer from date
• Return week number as integer from date
• Build date, time, or duration type from lexical components of each type
• Construct date, dateTime, or time type from string input
• Age-related functions

Grouped alphabetically

altova:add-days-to-date
altova:add-days-to-dateTime
altova:add-hours-to-dateTime
altova:add-hours-to-time
altova:add-minutes-to-dateTime
altova:add-minutes-to-time
altova:add-months-to-date
altova:add-months-to-dateTime
altova:add-seconds-to-dateTime
altova:add-seconds-to-time
altova:add-years-to-date
altova:add-years-to-dateTime
altova:age
altova:age-details
altova:build-date
altova:build-duration
altova:build-time
altova:current-dateTime-no-TZ
altova:current-date-no-TZ
altova:current-time-no-TZ
altova:date-no-TZ
altova:dateTime-no-TZ
altova:days-in-month
altova:hours-from-dateTimeDuration-accumulated
altova:minutes-from-dateTimeDuration-accumulated
altova:seconds-from-dateTimeDuration-accumulated
altova:format-duration
altova:parse-date
altova:parse-dateTime
altova:parse-duration
altova:parse-time
altova:time-no-TZ
altova:weekday-from-date
altova:weekday-from-dateTime
altova:weeknumber-from-date
altova:weeknumber-from-dateTime

Add a duration to xs:dateTime  XP3.1  XQ3.1

These functions add a duration to xs:dateTime and return xs:dateTime. The xs:dateTime type has a format of CCYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss. This is a concatenation of the xs:date and xs:time formats separated by the letter T. A timezone suffix +01:00 (for example) is optional.
add-years-to-dateTime [altova:]

add-years-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Years as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime

Adds a duration in years to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of years to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

Examples

- altova:add-years-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), 10) returns 2024-01-15T14:00:00
- altova:add-years-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), -4) returns 2010-01-15T14:00:00

add-months-to-dateTime [altova:]

add-months-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Months as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime

Adds a duration in months to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of months to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

Examples

- altova:add-months-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), 10) returns 2014-11-15T14:00:00
- altova:add-months-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), -2) returns 2013-11-15T14:00:00

add-days-to-dateTime [altova:]

add-days-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Days as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime

Adds a duration in days to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of days to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

Examples

- altova:add-days-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), 10) returns 2014-01-25T14:00:00
- altova:add-days-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), -8) returns 2014-01-07T14:00:00

add-hours-to-dateTime [altova:]

add-hours-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Hours as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime

Adds a duration in hours to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of hours to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

Examples

- altova:add-hours-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T13:00:00"), 10) returns 2014-01-15T23:00:00
• **altova:add-hours-to-dateTime**(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T13:00:00"), -8) returns 2014-01-15T05:00:00

▼ **add-minutes-to-dateTime** [altova:]

  altova:add-minutes-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Minutes as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime
  Adds a duration in minutes to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of minutes to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.
 ▰ **Examples**
  • altova:add-minutes-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:10:00"), 45) returns 2014-01-15T14:55:00
  • altova:add-minutes-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:10:00"), -5) returns 2014-01-15T14:05:00

▼ **add-seconds-to-dateTime** [altova:]

  altova:add-seconds-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Seconds as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime
  Adds a duration in seconds to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of seconds to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.
  ▰ **Examples**
  • altova:add-seconds-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:10"), 20) returns 2014-01-15T14:00:30
  • altova:add-seconds-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:10"), -5) returns 2014-01-15T14:00:05

Add a duration to xs:date  ▱ **Examples**

These functions add a duration to xs:date and return xs:date. The xs:date type has a format of CCYY-MM-DD.

▼ **add-years-to-date** [altova:]

  altova:add-years-to-date(Date as xs:date, Years as xs:integer) as xs:date
  Adds a duration in years to a date. The second argument is the number of years to be added to the xs:date supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:date.
  ▰ **Examples**
  • altova:add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10) returns 2024-01-15
  • altova:add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), -4) returns 2010-01-15
add-months-to-date [altova:]

add-months-to-date(Date as xs:date, Months as xs:integer) as xs:date XP3.1 XQ3.1

Adds a duration in months to a date. The second argument is the number of months to be added to the xs:date supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:date.

Examples


add-days-to-date [altova:]

add-days-to-date(Date as xs:date, Days as xs:integer) as xs:date XP3.1 XQ3.1

Adds a duration in days to a date. The second argument is the number of days to be added to the xs:date supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:date.

Examples


Format and retrieve durations  XP3.1 XQ3.1

These functions parse an input xs:duration or xs:string and return, respectively, an xs:string or xs:duration.

format-duration [altova:]

format-duration(Duration as xs:duration, Picture as xs:string) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1

Formats a duration, which is submitted as the first argument, according to a picture string submitted as the second argument. The output is a text string formatted according to the picture string.

Examples

- altova:format-duration(xs:duration("P2DT2H53M11.7S"), "Days:[D01] Hours:[H01] Minutes:[m01] Seconds:[s01] Fractions:[f0]") returns "Days:02 Hours:02 Minutes:53 Seconds:11 Fractions:7"
- altova:format-duration(xs:duration("P3M2DT2H53M11.7S"), "Months:[M01] Days:[D01] Hours:[H01] Minutes:[m01]") returns "Months:03 Days:02 Hours:02 Minutes:53"

parse-duration [altova:]

parse-duration(InputString as xs:string, Picture as xs:string) as xs:duration XP3.1 XQ3.1

 Takes a patterned string as the first argument, and a picture string as the second argument. The input string is parsed on the basis of the picture string, and an xs:duration is returned.

Examples

- altova:parse-duration("Days:02 Hours:02 Minutes:53 Seconds:11 Fractions:7"),
Add a duration to xs:time  

These functions add a duration to xs:time and return xs:time. The xs:time type has a lexical form of hh:mm:ss.sss. An optional time zone may be suffixed. The letter Z indicates Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). All other time zones are represented by their difference from UTC in the format +hh:mm, or -hh:mm. If no time zone value is present, it is considered unknown; it is not assumed to be UTC.

- **add-hours-to-time** [altova:]

  ```xsl
  altova:add-hours-to-time(Time as xs:time, Hours as xs:integer) as xs:time
  ```

  Adds a duration in hours to a time. The second argument is the number of hours to be added to the xs:time supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:time.

  **Examples**

  - `altova:add-hours-to-time(xs:time("11:00:00"), 10)` returns `21:00:00`
  - `altova:add-hours-to-time(xs:time("11:00:00"), -7)` returns `04:00:00`

- **add-minutes-to-time** [altova:]

  ```xsl
  altova:add-minutes-to-time(Time as xs:time, Minutes as xs:integer) as xs:time
  ```

  Adds a duration in minutes to a time. The second argument is the number of minutes to be added to the xs:time supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:time.

  **Examples**

  - `altova:add-minutes-to-time(xs:time("14:10:00"), 45)` returns `14:55:00`
  - `altova:add-minutes-to-time(xs:time("14:10:00"), -5)` returns `14:05:00`

- **add-seconds-to-time** [altova:]

  ```xsl
  altova:add-seconds-to-time(Time as xs:time, Minutes as xs:integer) as xs:time
  ```

  Adds a duration in seconds to a time. The second argument is the number of seconds to be added to the xs:time supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:time. The Seconds component can be in the range of 0 to 59.999.

  **Examples**

  - `altova:add-seconds-to-time(xs:time("14:00:00"), 20)` returns `14:00:20`
  - `altova:add-seconds-to-time(xs:time("14:00:00"), 20.895)` returns `14:00:20.895`
Remove the timezone part from date/time datatypes  

These functions remove the timezone from the current `xs:dateTime`, `xs:date`, or `xs:time` values, respectively. Note that the difference between `xs:dateTime` and `xs:dateTimeStamp` is that in the case of the latter the timezone part is required (while it is optional in the case of the former). So the format of an `xs:dateTimeStamp` value is: CCYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss±hh:mm or CCYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ. If the date and time is read from the system clock as `xs:dateTimeStamp`, the `current-dateTime-no-TZ()` function can be used to remove the timezone if so required.

▼ `current-date-no-TZ` [altova:]

```xml
altova:current-date-no-TZ() as xs:date  
```

This function takes no argument. It removes the timezone part of `current-date()` (which is the current date according to the system clock) and returns an `xs:date` value.

**Examples**

- If the current date is 2014-01-15+01:00:
  
  • `altova:current-date-no-TZ()` returns 2014-01-15

▼ `current-dateTime-no-TZ` [altova:]

```xml
altova:current-dateTime-no-TZ() as xs:dateTime  
```

This function takes no argument. It removes the timezone part of `current-dateTime()` (which is the current date-and-time according to the system clock) and returns an `xs:dateTime` value.

**Examples**

- If the current dateTime is 2014-01-15T14:00:00+01:00:
  
  • `altova:current-dateTime-no-TZ()` returns 2014-01-15T14:00:00

▼ `current-time-no-TZ` [altova:]

```xml
altova:current-time-no-TZ() as xs:time  
```

This function takes no argument. It removes the timezone part of `current-time()` (which is the current time according to the system clock) and returns an `xs:time` value.

**Examples**

- If the current time is 14:00:00+01:00:
  
  • `altova:current-time-no-TZ()` returns 14:00:00

▼ `date-no-TZ` [altova:]

```xml
altova:date-no-TZ(InputDate as xs:date) as xs:date  
```

This function takes an `xs:date` argument, removes the timezone part from it, and returns an `xs:date` value. Note that the date is not modified.

**Examples**
• `altova:date-no-TZ(xs:date("2014-01-15+01:00"))` returns `2014-01-15`

**dateTime-no-TZ [altova:]**

`altova:dateTime-no-TZ(InputDateTime as xs:dateTime) as xs:dateTime XP3.1 XQ3.1`

This function takes an `xs:dateTime` argument, removes the timezone part from it, and returns an `xs:dateTime` value. Note that neither the date nor the time is modified.

- Examples
  • `altova:dateTime-no-TZ(xs:date("2014-01-15T14:00:00+01:00"))` returns `2014-01-15T14:00:00`

**time-no-TZ [altova:]**

`altova:time-no-TZ(InputTime as xs:time) as xs:time XP3.1 XQ3.1`

This function takes an `xs:time` argument, removes the timezone part from it, and returns an `xs:time` value. Note that the time is not modified.

- Examples
  • `altova:time-no-TZ(xs:time("14:00:00+01:00"))` returns `14:00:00`

Return the number of days, hours, minutes, seconds from durations

These functions return the number of days in a month, and the number of hours, minutes, and seconds, respectively, from durations.

**days-in-month [altova:]**

`altova:days-in-month(Year as xs:integer, Month as xs:integer) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1`

Returns the number of days in the specified month. The month is specified by means of the `Year` and `Month` arguments.

- Examples
  • `altova:days-in-month(2018, 10)` returns `31`
  • `altova:days-in-month(2018, 2)` returns `28`
  • `altova:days-in-month(2020, 2)` returns `29`

**hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated**

`altova:hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(DayAndTime as xs:duration) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1`

Returns the total number of hours in the duration submitted by the `DayAndTime` argument (which is of type `xs:duration`). The hours in the `Day` and `Time` components are added together to give a result that is an integer. A new hour is counted only for a full 60 minutes. Negative durations result in a negative hour value.

- Examples
  • `altova:hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("P5D"))` returns `120`, which
is the total number of hours in 5 days.

- `altova:hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("P5DT2H"))` returns 122, which is the total number of hours in 5 days plus 2 hours.
- `altova:hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("P5DT2H60M"))` returns 123, which is the total number of hours in 5 days plus 2 hours and 60 mins.
- `altova:hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("P5DT2H119M"))` returns 123, which is the total number of hours in 5 days plus 2 hours and 119 mins.
- `altova:hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("P5DT2H120M"))` returns 124, which is the total number of hours in 5 days plus 2 hours and 120 mins.
- `altova:hours-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("-P5DT2H"))` returns -122

▼ minutes-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated

`altova:minutes-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(DayAndTime as xs:duration) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1`

Returns the total number of minutes in the duration submitted by the `DayAndTime` argument (which is of type `xs:duration`). The minutes in the `Day` and `Time` components are added together to give a result that is an integer. Negative durations result in a negative minute value.

**Examples**

- `altova:minutes-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("PT60M"))` returns 60
- `altova:minutes-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("PT1H"))` returns 60, which is the total number of minutes in 1 hour.
- `altova:minutes-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("PT1H40M"))` returns 100
- `altova:minutes-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("P1D"))` returns 1440, which is the total number of minutes in 1 day.
- `altova:minutes-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("-P1DT60M"))` returns -1500

▼ seconds-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated

`altova:seconds-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(DayAndTime as xs:duration) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1`

Returns the total number of seconds in the duration submitted by the `DayAndTime` argument (which is of type `xs:duration`). The seconds in the `Day` and `Time` components are added together to give a result that is an integer. Negative durations result in a negative seconds value.

**Examples**

- `altova:seconds-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("PT1M"))` returns 60, which is the total number of seconds in 1 minute.
- `altova:seconds-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("PT1H"))` returns 3600, which is the total number of seconds in 1 hour.
- `altova:seconds-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("PT1H2M"))` returns 3720
- `altova:seconds-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("P1D"))` returns 86400, which is the total number of seconds in 1 day.
- `altova:seconds-from-dayTimeDuration-accumulated(xs:duration("-P1DT1M"))` returns -86460
Return the weekday from xs:dateTime or xs:date XP3.1 XQ3.1

These functions return the weekday (as an integer) from xs:dateTime or xs:date. The days of the week are numbered (using the American format) from 1 to 7, with Sunday=1. In the European format, the week starts with Monday (=1). The American format, where Sunday=1, can be set by using the integer 0 where an integer is accepted to indicate the format.

weekday-from-dateTime [altova:]

altova:weekday-from-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1

Takes a date-with-time as its single argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with Sunday=1. If the European format is required (where Monday=1), use the other signature of this function (see next signature below).

Examples

- altova:weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00")) returns 2, which would indicate a Monday.

altova:weekday-from-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Format as xs:integer) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1

Takes a date-with-time as its first argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with Monday=1. If the second (integer) argument is 0, then the weekdays are numbered 1 to 7 starting with Sunday=1. If the second argument is an integer other than 0, then Monday=1. If there is no second argument, the function is read as having the other signature of this function (see previous signature).

Examples

- altova:weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00"), 1) returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
- altova:weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00"), 4) returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
- altova:weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00"), 0) returns 2, which would indicate a Monday.

weekday-from-date [altova:]

altova:weekday-from-date(Date as xs:date) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1

Takes a date as its single argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with Sunday=1. If the European format is required (where Monday=1), use the other signature of this function (see next signature below).

Examples

- altova:weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03+01:00")) returns 2, which would indicate a Monday.

altova:weekday-from-date(Date as xs:date, Format as xs:integer) as xs:integer XP3.1 XQ3.1

Takes a date as its first argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with Monday=1. If the second (Format) argument is 0, then the weekdays are numbered 1 to 7 starting with Sunday=1. If the second argument is an integer other than 0, then Monday=1. If there is no second argument, the function is read as having the other signature of this function (see previous signature).

Examples
• `altova:weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03"), 1)` returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
• `altova:weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03"), 4)` returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
• `altova:weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03"), 0)` returns 2, which would indicate a Monday.

Return the week number from xs:dateTime or xs:date

These functions return the week number (as an integer) from xs:dateTime or xs:date. Week-numbering is available in the US, ISO/European, and Islamic calendar formats. Week-numbering is different in these calendar formats because the week is considered to start on different days (on Sunday in the US format, Monday in the ISO/European format, and Saturday in the Islamic format).

▶ `weeknumber-from-date [altova:]`

```xquery
altova:weeknumber-from-date(Date as xs:date, Calendar as xs:integer) as xs:integer
```

Returns the week number of the submitted `Date` argument as an integer. The second argument (`Calendar`) specifies the calendar system to follow.

Supported `Calendar` values are:

• 0 = US calendar (week starts Sunday)
• 1 = ISO standard, European calendar (week starts Monday)
• 2 = Islamic calendar (week starts Saturday)

Default is 0.

Examples

• `altova:weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23"), 0)` returns 13
• `altova:weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23"), 1)` returns 12
• `altova:weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23"), 2)` returns 13
• `altova:weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23"))` returns 13

The day of the date in the examples above (2014-03-23) is Sunday. So the US and Islamic calendars are one week ahead of the European calendar on this day.

▶ `weeknumber-from-dateTime [altova:]`

```xquery
altova:weeknumber-from-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Calendar as xs:integer) as xs:integer
```

Returns the week number of the submitted `DateTime` argument as an integer. The second argument (`Calendar`) specifies the calendar system to follow.

Supported `Calendar` values are:
• 0 = US calendar (week starts Sunday)
• 1 = ISO standard, European calendar (week starts Monday)
• 2 = Islamic calendar (week starts Saturday)

Default is 0.

Examples
• altova:weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00"), 0) returns 13
• altova:weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00"), 1) returns 12
• altova:weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00"), 2) returns 13
• altova:weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00")) returns 13

The day of the dateTime in the examples above (2014-03-23T00:00:00) is Sunday. So the US and Islamic calendars are one week ahead of the European calendar on this day.

Build date, time, and duration datatypes from their lexical components

The functions take the lexical components of the xs:date, xs:time, or xs:duration datatype as input arguments and combine them to build the respective datatype.

build-date [altova:]

altova:build-date(Year as xs:integer, Month as xs:integer, Date as xs:integer) as xs:date

The first, second, and third arguments are, respectively, the year, month, and date. They are combined to build a value of xs:date type. The values of the integers must be within the correct range of that particular date part. For example, the second argument (for the month part) should not be greater than 12.

Examples
• altova:build-date(2014, 2, 03) returns 2014-02-03

build-time [altova:]

altova:build-time(Hours as xs:integer, Minutes as xs:integer, Seconds as xs:integer) as xs:time

The first, second, and third arguments are, respectively, the hour (0 to 23), minutes (0 to 59), and seconds (0 to 59) values. They are combined to build a value of xs:time type. The values of the integers must be within the correct range of that particular time part. For example, the second (minutes) argument should not be greater than 59. To add a timezone part to the value, use the other signature of this function (see next signature).

Examples
• altova:build-time(23, 4, 57) returns 23:04:57

altova:build-time(Hours as xs:integer, Minutes as xs:integer, Seconds as xs:integer, TimeZone as xs:string) as xs:time

The first, second, and third arguments are, respectively, the hour (0 to 23), minutes (0 to 59), and seconds (0 to 59) values. The fourth argument is a string that provides the timezone part of the value. The four
arguments are combined to build a value of `xs:time` type. The values of the integers must be within the correct range of that particular time part. For example, the second (Minutes) argument should not be greater than 59.

**Examples**

- `altova:build-time(23, 4, 57, '+1')` returns `23:04:57+01:00`

### build-duration [altova:]

```xslt
altova:build-duration(Years as xs:integer, Months as xs:integer) as xs:yearMonthDuration
```

Takes two arguments to build a value of type `xs:yearMonthDuration`. The first argument provides the Years part of the duration value, while the second argument provides the Months part. If the second (Months) argument is greater than or equal to 12, then the integer is divided by 12; the quotient is added to the first argument to provide the Years part of the duration value while the remainder (of the division) provides the Months part. To build a duration of type `xs:dayTimeDuration`, see the next signature.

**Examples**

- `altova:build-duration(2, 10)` returns `P2Y10M`
- `altova:build-duration(14, 27)` returns `P16Y3M`
- `altova:build-duration(2, 24)` returns `P4Y`

```xslt
altova:build-duration(Days as xs:integer, Hours as xs:integer, Minutes as xs:integer, Seconds as xs:integer) as xs:dayTimeDuration
```

Takes four arguments and combines them to build a value of type `xs:dayTimeDuration`. The first argument provides the Days part of the duration value, the second, third, and fourth arguments provide, respectively, the Hours, Minutes, and Seconds parts of the duration value. Each of the three Time arguments is converted to an equivalent value in terms of the next higher unit and the result is used for calculation of the total duration value. For example, 72 seconds is converted to `1M+12S` (1 minute and 12 seconds), and this value is used for calculation of the total duration value. To build a duration of type `xs:yearMonthDuration`, see the previous signature.

**Examples**

- `altova:build-duration(2, 10, 3, 56)` returns `P2DT10H3M56S`
- `altova:build-duration(1, 0, 100, 0)` returns `P1DT1H40M`
- `altova:build-duration(1, 0, 0, 3600)` returns `P1DT1H`

[ Top ]

**Construct date, dateTime, and time datatypes from string input**

These functions take strings as arguments and construct `xs:date`, `xs:dateTime`, or `xs:time` datatypes. The string is analyzed for components of the datatype based on a submitted pattern argument.

### parse-date [altova:]

```xslt
altova:parse-date(Date as xs:string, DatePattern as xs:string) as xs:date
```

Returns the input string `Date` as an `xs:date` value. The second argument `DatePattern` specifies the pattern (sequence of components) of the input string. `DatePattern` is described with the component specifiers listed below and with component separators that can be any character. See the examples...
The pattern in `DatePattern` must match the pattern in `Date`. Since the output is of type `xs:date`, the output will always have the lexical format `YYYY-MM-DD`.

### Examples

- `altova:parse-date(xs:string("09-12-2014"), "[D]-[M]-[Y]")` returns `2014-12-09`
- `altova:parse-date(xs:string("09-12-2014"), "[M]-[D]-[Y]")` returns `2014-09-12`
- `altova:parse-date("06/03/2014", "[M]/[D]/[Y]")` returns `2014-06-03`
- `altova:parse-date("06 03 2014", "[M] [D] [Y]")` returns `2014-06-03`
- `altova:parse-date("6 3 2014", "[M] [D] [Y]")` returns `2014-06-03`

### parse-dateTime [altova:]

```xml
altova:parse-dateTime(DateTime as xs:string, DateTimePattern as xs:string) as xs:dateTime
```

Returns the input string `DateTime` as an `xs:dateTime` value. The second argument `DateTimePattern` specifies the pattern (sequence of components) of the input string. `DateTimePattern` is described with the component specifiers listed below and with component separators that can be any character. See the examples below.

- `D` Date
- `M` Month
- `Y` Year
- `H` Hour
- `m` minutes
- `s` seconds

The pattern in `DateTimePattern` must match the pattern in `DateTime`. Since the output is of type `xs:dateTime`, the output will always have the lexical format `YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss`.

### Examples

- `altova:parse-dateTime(xs:string("09-12-2014 13:56:24"), "[M]-[D]-[Y] [H]:[m]:[s]")` returns `2014-09-12T13:56:24`
- `altova:parse-dateTime("time=13:56:24; date=09-12-2014", "time=[H]:[m]:[s]; date=[D]-[M]-[Y]")` returns `2014-09-12T13:56:24`

### parse-time [altova:]

```xml
altova:parse-time(Time as xs:string, TimePattern as xs:string) as xs:time
```

Returns the input string `Time` as an `xs:time` value. The second argument `TimePattern` specifies the pattern (sequence of components) of the input string. `TimePattern` is described with the component specifiers listed below and with component separators that can be any character. See the examples
The pattern in `TimePattern` must match the pattern in `Time`. Since the output is of type `xs:time`, the output will always have the lexical format `HH:mm:ss`.

Examples

- `altova:parse-time("13-56-24", "[H]-[m]")` returns `13:56:00`
- `altova:parse-time("time=13h56m24s", "time=[H]h[m]m[s]s")` returns `13:56:24`
- `altova:parse-time("time=24s56m13h", "time=[s]s[m]m[H]h")` returns `13:56:24`

Age-related functions

These functions return the age as calculated (i) between one input argument date and the current date, or (ii) between two input argument dates. The `altova:age` function returns the age in terms of years, the `altova:age-details` function returns the age as a sequence of three integers giving the years, months, and days of the age.

### age [altova:]

**altova:age(StartDate as xs:date) as xs:integer**

Returns an integer that is the age in years of some object, counting from a start-date submitted as the argument and ending with the current date (taken from the system clock). If the input argument is a date anything greater than or equal to one year in the future, the return value will be negative.

#### Examples

If the current date is `2014-01-15`:

- `altova:age(xs:date("2013-01-15"))` returns `1`
- `altova:age(xs:date("2013-01-16"))` returns `0`
- `altova:age(xs:date("2015-01-15"))` returns `-1`
- `altova:age(xs:date("2015-01-14"))` returns `0`

**altova:age(StartDate as xs:date, EndDate as xs:date) as xs:integer**

Returns an integer that is the age in years of some object, counting from a start-date that is submitted as the first argument up to an end-date that is the second argument. The return value will be negative if the first argument is one year or more later than the second argument.

#### Examples

If the current date is `2014-01-15`:

- `altova:age(xs:date("2000-01-15"), xs:date("2010-01-15"))` returns `10`
- `altova:age(xs:date("2000-01-15"), current-date())` returns `14` if the current date is `2014-01-15`
• **altova:age** (xs:date("2014-01-15"), xs:date("2010-01-15")) returns -4


**age-details [altova:]**

```xml
altova:age-details(InputDate as xs:date) as (xs:integer)* XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

Returns three integers that are, respectively, the years, months, and days between the date that is submitted as the argument and the current date (taken from the system clock). The sum of the returned `years+months+days` together gives the total time difference between the two dates (the input date and the current date). The input date may have a value earlier or later than the current date, but whether the input date is earlier or later is not indicated by the sign of the return values; the return values are always positive.

**Examples**

- If the current date is 2014-01-15:
  - `altova:age-details(xs:date("2014-01-16"))` returns (0 0 1)
  - `altova:age-details(xs:date("2014-01-14"))` returns (0 0 1)
  - `altova:age-details(xs:date("2013-01-16"))` returns (1 0 1)
  - `altova:age-details(current-date())` returns (0 0 0)

```xml
altova:age-details(Date-1 as xs:date, Date-2 as xs:date) as (xs:integer)* XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

Returns three integers that are, respectively, the years, months, and days between the two argument dates. The sum of the returned `years+months+days` together gives the total time difference between the two input dates; it does not matter whether the earlier or later of the two dates is submitted as the first argument. The return values do not indicate whether the input date occurs earlier or later than the current date. Return values are always positive.

**Examples**

- `altova:age-details(xs:date("2014-01-16"), xs:date("2014-01-15"))` returns (0 0 1)
- `altova:age-details(xs:date("2014-01-15"), xs:date("2014-01-16"))` returns (0 0 1)

### 8.2.1.3 XPath/XQuery Functions: Geolocation

The following geolocation XPath/XQuery extension functions are supported in the current version of RaptorXML Server and can be used in (i) XPath expressions in an XSLT context, or (ii) XQuery expressions in an XQuery document.

**Note about naming of functions and language applicability**

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the **Altova extension functions namespace**, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix `altova:`, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information
about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</th>
<th>XP1</th>
<th>XP2</th>
<th>XP3.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</td>
<td>XSLT1</td>
<td>XSLT2</td>
<td>XSLT3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):</td>
<td>XQ1</td>
<td>XQ3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ format-geolocation [altova:]

\[
\text{altova:format-geolocation}(\text{Latitude as xs:decimal}, \text{Longitude as xs:decimal}, \text{GeolocationOutputStringFormat as xs:integer}) \text{ as xs:string} \quad \text{XP3.1 XQ3.1}
\]

Takes the latitude and longitude as the first two arguments, and outputs the geolocation as a string. The third argument, GeolocationOutputStringFormat, is the format of the geolocation output string; it uses integer values from 1 to 4 to identify the output string format (see ‘Geolocation output string formats’ below). Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

**Note:** The \text{image-exif-data} function and the Exif metadata's attributes can be used to supply the input strings.

- **Examples**
  - \text{altova:format-geolocation}(33.33, -22.22, 4) returns the \text{xs:string} "33.33 -22.22"
  - \text{altova:format-geolocation}(33.33, -22.22, 2) returns the \text{xs:string} "33.33N 22.22W"
  - \text{altova:format-geolocation}(-33.33, 22.22, 2) returns the \text{xs:string} "33.33S 22.22E"
  - \text{altova:format-geolocation}(33.33, -22.22, 1) returns the \text{xs:string} "33°19'48.00"S 22°13'12.00"E"

- **Geolocation output string formats:**
  The supplied latitude and longitude is formatted in one of the output formats given below. The desired format is identified by its integer ID (1 to 4). Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)</td>
<td>33°55'11.11&quot;N  22°44'66.66&quot;W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)</td>
<td>33.33N 22.22W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); plus sign for (N/E) is optional</td>
<td>33°55'11.11&quot; -22°44'66.66&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); plus sign for (N/E) is optional

\[
\pm D.DD \quad \mp D.DD
\]

**Example:** 33.33 -22.22

---

Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (*see table below*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPSLatitude</th>
<th>GPSLatitudeRef</th>
<th>GPSLongitude</th>
<th>GPSLongitudeRef</th>
<th>Geolocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33°51′21.91″</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>151°13′11.73″</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>33°51′21.91″S 151°13′11.73″E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**parse-geolocation [altova:]**

\[
\text{altova:parse-geolocation(GeolocationInputString as xs:string) as xs:decimal+ XQ3.1}
\]

Parses the supplied GeolocationInputString argument and returns the geolocation's latitude and longitude (in that order) as a sequence two xs:decimal items. The formats in which the geolocation input string can be supplied are listed below.

**Note:** The `image-exif-data` function and the Exif metadata's `@Geolocation` attribute can be used to supply the geolocation input string (*see example below*).

**Examples**

- `altova:parse-geolocation("33.33 -22.22")` returns the sequence of two `xs:decimals` (33.33, 22.22)
- `altova:parse-geolocation("48°51′29.6″N 24°17′40.2″E")` returns the sequence of two `xs:decimals` (48.8582222222222, 24.2945)
- `altova:parse-geolocation("48°51′29.6\"N 24°17′40.2\"E")` returns the sequence of two `xs:decimals` (48.8582222222222, 24.2945)
- `altova:parse-geolocation( image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)/@Geolocation )` returns a sequence of two `xs:decimals`

**Geolocation input string formats:**

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to −90 (N to S).

Longitude values range from +180 to −180 (E to W).

**Note:** If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create
a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow ("") while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ("").

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \[D^\circ M' S'' N/S D^\circ M' S'' W/E\]

  **Example:** 33°55′11.11″N 22°44′55.25″W

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  \[+/-D^\circ M' S''\]

  **Example:** 33°55′11.11″ -22°44′55.25″

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \[D^\circ M.MM' N/S D^\circ M.MM' W/E\]

  **Example:** 33°55.55′N 22°44.44′W

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  \[+/-D^\circ M.MM'\]

  **Example:** +33°55.55′ -22°44.44′

- Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \[D.DD N/S D.DD W/E\]

  **Example:** 33.33N 22.22W

- Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/S E/W) is optional
  \[+/-D.DD\]

  **Example:** 33.33  -22.22

**Examples of format-combinations:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33.33N</td>
<td>-22°44′55.25″</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.33</td>
<td>22°44′55.25″W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.33</td>
<td>22.45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation**

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute `Geolocation` from standard Exif metadata tags. `Geolocation` is a concatenation of four Exif tags: `GPSLatitude`, `GPSLatitudeRef`, `GPSLongitude`, `GPSLongitudeRef`, with units added (see table below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPSLatitude</th>
<th>GPSLatitudeRef</th>
<th>GPSLongitude</th>
<th>GPSLongitudeRef</th>
<th>Geolocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33 51 21.91</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>151 13 11.73</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>33°51′21.91″S 151°13′11.73″E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
geolocation-distance-km [altova:]
```
altova:geolocation-distance-km(GeolocationInputString-1 as xs:string, GeolocationInputString-2 as xs:string) as xs:decimal

Calculates the distance between two geolocations in kilometers. The formats in which the geolocation input string can be supplied are listed below. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: The image-exif-data function and the Exif metadata's @Geolocation attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

Examples
- altova:geolocation-distance-km("33.33 -22.22", "48°51'29.6" N 24°17'40.2" W") returns the xs:decimal 4183.08132372392

Geolocation input string formats:
The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow ("), while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue (’).

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D°M'.SS"N/S  D°M'.SS"W/E
  Example: 33°55.11'N  22°44.55'W

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  +/-D°M'.SS"  +/-D°M'.SS"
  Example: 33°55.11°N  -22°44.55°W

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D°M.MM'N/S  D°M.MM'W/E
  Example: 33°55.55'N  22°44.44'W

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  +/-D°M.MM'  +/-D°M.MM'
  Example: +33°55.55'  -22°44.44'

- Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D.DDN/S  D.DDW/E
  Example: 33.33N  22.22W

- Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/S, E/W) is optional
  +/-D.DD  +/-D.DD
  Example: 33.33  -22.22
**Examples of format-combinations:**

33.33N -22°44'55.25"
33.33 22°44'55.25"W
33.33 22.45

Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPSLatitude</th>
<th>GPSLatitudeRef</th>
<th>GPSLongitude</th>
<th>GPSLongitudeRef</th>
<th>Geolocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33 51 21.91</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>151 13 11.73</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>33°51'21.91&quot;S 151°13'11.73&quot;E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**geolocation-distance-mi [altova:]**

```xml
altova:geolocation-distance-mi(GeolocationInputString-1 as xs:string,
GeolocationInputString-2 as xs:string) as xs:decimal XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

Calculates the distance between two geolocations in miles. The formats in which a geolocation input string can be supplied are listed below. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

**Note:** The image-exif-data function and the Exif metadata's @Geolocation attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

**Examples**

- ```xml
  altova:geolocation-distance-mi("33.33  -22.22", "48°51'29.6"N  24°17'40.2"E")
  returns the xs:decimal 2599.40652340653
  ```

**Geolocation input string formats:**

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

**Note:** If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (""), while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue (""").

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S; E/W)
  
  D°M'S.S"N/S D°M'S.S"W/E
Example: 33°55′11.11"N   22°44′55.25"W

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  +/−D°M′S″  +/−D°M′S″
  Example: 33°55′11.11"   −22°44′55.25"W

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D°M.MM′S/S  D°M.MM′W/E
  Example: 33°55.55′N   22°44.44′W

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  +/−D°M.MM′  +/−D°M.MM′
  Example: +33°55.55′   −22°44.44′W

- Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D.DD/N/S  D.DD/W/E
  Example: 33.33N   22.22W

- Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/S E/W) is optional
  +/−D.DD  +/−D.DD
  Example: 33.33   −22.22

Examples of format-combinations:
33.33°N   −22°44′55.25"W
33.33  22°44′55.25"W
33.33  22.45

Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute `Geolocation` from standard Exif metadata tags. `Geolocation` is a concatenation of four Exif tags: `GPSLatitude`, `GPSLatitudeRef`, `GPSLongitude`, `GPSLongitudeRef`, with units added (see table below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPSLatitude</th>
<th>GPSLatitudeRef</th>
<th>GPSLongitude</th>
<th>GPSLongitudeRef</th>
<th>Geolocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33 51 21.91</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>151 13 11.73</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>33°51′21.91&quot;S 151°13′11.73&quot;E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

geolocations-bounding-rectangle [altova:]

```
altova:geolocations-bounding-rectangle(Geolocations as xs:sequence,
  GeolocationOutputStringFormat as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

Takes a sequence of strings as its first argument; each string in the sequence is a geolocation. The function returns a sequence of two strings which are, respectively, the top-left and bottom-right geolocation coordinates of a bounding rectangle that is optimally sized to enclose all the geolocations submitted in the first argument. The formats in which a geolocation input string can be supplied are listed below (see `Geolocation input string formats`). Latitude values range from +90 to −90 (N to S). Longitude values range from −180 to +180 (W to E).
The function's second argument specifies the format of the two geolocation strings in the output sequence. The argument takes an integer value from 1 to 4, where each value identifies a different geolocation string format (see 'Geolocation output string formats' below).

Note: The image-exif-data function and the Exif metadata's attributes can be used to supply the input strings.

Examples

- \texttt{altova:geolocations-bounding-rectangle(("48.2143531 16.3707266", "51.50939 -0.11832"), 1)} returns the sequence ("51°30'33.804"N 0°7'5.952"W", "48°12'51.6716"N 16°22'14.61576"E")
- \texttt{altova:geolocations-bounding-rectangle(("48.2143531 16.3707266", "51.50939 -0.11832", "42.5584577 -70.8893334"), 4)} returns the sequence ("51.50939 -70.8893334", "42.5584577 16.3707266")

Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (""), while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue (""").

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \[ D^\circ M'.S''S'' N/S \quad D^\circ M'.S''S'' W/E \]
  \texttt{Example: 33°55'11.11"N 22°44'55.25"W}

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  \[ +/\!-D^\circ M'.S''S'' \quad +/\!-D^\circ M'.S''S'' \]
  \texttt{Example: 33°55'11.11" 22°44'55.25"}

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \[ D^\circ M.M'M'M' N/S \quad D^\circ M.M'M'M' W/E \]
  \texttt{Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W}

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  \[ +/\!-D^\circ M.M'M'M' \quad +/\!-D^\circ M.M'M'M' \]
  \texttt{Example: +33°55.55' 22°44.44'W}

- Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \[ D. DD/N \quad D. DD/W \]
  \texttt{Example: 33.33N 22.22W}
- **Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/S E/W) is optional**
  
  \[+/-D\cdot DD\]
  
  \[+/-D\cdot DD\]

  Example: 33.33 -22.22

  **Examples of format-combinations:**

  33.33N  -22\(^\circ\)44\('\)55.25\(\)W
  
  33.33  22\(^\circ\)44\('\)55.25\(\)W
  
  33.33  22.45

  **Geolocation output string formats:**

  The supplied latitude and longitude is formatted in one of the output formats given below. The desired format is identified by its integer ID (1 to 4). Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

  1
  
  **Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)**

  \[D^\circ M' S''.SS''\ N/S\ D^\circ M' S''.SS''\ E/W\]

  Example: 33\(^\circ\)55'11.11"N  22\(^\circ\)44'66.66"W

  2
  
  **Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)**

  \[D\cdot DDN/S\ D\cdot DDE/W\]

  Example: 33.33N  22.22W

  3
  
  **Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); plus sign for (N/E) is optional**

  \[+/-D^\circ M' S''.SS''\ +//-D^\circ M' S''.SS''.\]

  Example: 33\(^\circ\)55'11.11"  -22\(^\circ\)44'66.66"

  4
  
  **Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); plus sign for (N/E) is optional**

  \[+/-D\cdot DD\ +//-D\cdot DD\]

  Example: 33.33 -22.22

- **Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation**

  The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute **Geolocation** from standard Exif metadata tags. **Geolocation** is a concatenation of four Exif tags: **GPSLatitude**, **GPSLatitudeRef**, **GPSLongitude**, **GPSLongitudeRef**, with units added (see table below).
geolocation-within-polygon [altova:]

**altova:geolocation-within-polygon(Geolocation as xs:string, ((PolygonPoint as xs:string)+)) as xs:boolean**

Determine whether Geolocation (the first argument) is within the polygonal area described by the PolygonPoint arguments. If the PolygonPoint arguments do not form a closed figure (formed when the first point and the last point are the same), then the first point is implicitly added as the last point in order to close the figure. All the arguments (Geolocation and PolygonPoint+) are given by geolocation input strings (forms listed below). If the Geolocation argument is within the polygonal area, then the function returns true(); otherwise it returns false(). Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: The `image-exif-data` function and the Exif metadata's `@Geolocation` attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

**Examples**

- **altova:geolocation-within-polygon(“33 -22”, (“58 -32”, “-78 -55”, “48°51'29.6"N 24°17'40.2"W”))** returns true()

**Geolocation input string formats:**

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (““) while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue (“”).

- **Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)**
  
  \[D^\circ M^\prime S.SS^\prime\prime \text{N/S} \quad D^\circ M^\prime S.SS^\prime\prime \text{W/E}\]
  
  **Example:** 33°55′11.11″N 22°44′55.25″W

- **Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional**
  
  +/-D°M′S.SS"  +/-D°M′S.SS"
  
  **Example:** 33°55′11.11″ -22°44′55.25″
• Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \( D^\text{\degree}M.MM'N/S \quad D^\text{\degree}M.MM'W/E \)
  \textit{Example:} 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

• Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  \( +/-D^\text{\degree}M.MM' \quad +/-D^\text{\degree}M.MM' \)
  \textit{Example:} +33°55.55' -22°44.44'

• Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  \( D.DD/N/S \quad D.DD/W/E \)
  \textit{Example:} 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/S E/W) is optional
  \( +/-D.DD \quad +/-D.DD \)
  \textit{Example:} 33.33  -22.22

\textit{Examples of format-combinations:}
33.33N  -22°44'55.25"
33.33  22°44'55.25"W
33.33  22.45

\textit{Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation}

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute \texttt{Geolocation} from standard Exif metadata tags. \texttt{Geolocation} is a concatenation of four Exif tags: \texttt{GPSLatitude}, \texttt{GPSLatitudeRef}, \texttt{GPSLongitude}, \texttt{GPSLongitudeRef}, with units added \textit{(see table below)}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPSLatitude</th>
<th>GPSLatitudeRef</th>
<th>GPSLongitude</th>
<th>GPSLongitudeRef</th>
<th>Geolocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33 51 21.91</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>151 13 11.73</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>33°51'21.91&quot;S 151°13'11.73&quot;E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{altova:geolocation-within-rectangle} \texttt{[altova:]} \texttt{altova:geolocation-within-rectangle(Geolocation as xs:string, RectCorner-1 as xs:string, RectCorner-2 as xs:string) as xs:boolean XP3.1 XQ3.1}

Determines whether \texttt{Geolocation} (the first argument) is within the rectangle defined by the second and third arguments, \texttt{RectCorner-1} and \texttt{RectCorner-2}, which specify opposite corners of the rectangle. All the arguments (\texttt{Geolocation}, \texttt{RectCorner-1} and \texttt{RectCorner-2}) are given by geolocation input strings \textit{(formats listed below)}. If the \texttt{Geolocation} argument is within the rectangle, then the function returns \texttt{true()}, otherwise it returns \texttt{false()}. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

\textit{Note:} The \texttt{image-exif-data} function and the Exif metadata's \texttt{@Geolocation} attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

\textit{Examples}

• \texttt{altova:geolocation-within-rectangle("33 -22", "58 -32", ",-48 24")} returns \texttt{true()}
Geolocation input string formats:
The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (" ) while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue (" ).

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D°M'S.SS"N/S  D°M'S.SS"W/E
  Example: 33°55′11.11″N  22°44′55.25″W

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  +/-D°M'S.SS"  +/-D°M'S.SS"
  Example: 33°55′11.11″  -22°44′55.25″

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D°M.MM'N/S  D°M.MM'W/E
  Example: 33°55.55′N  22°44.44′W

- Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/E) is optional
  +/-D°M.MM'  +/-D°M.MM'
  Example: +33°55.55′  -22°44.44′

- Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, E/W)
  D.DD/N  D.DD/E
  Example: 33.33N  22.22W

- Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/S, E/W) is optional
  +/-D.DD  +/-D.DD
  Example: 33.33  -22.22

Examples of format-combinations:
33.33N  -22°44′55.25″
33.33  22°44′55.25″W
33.33  22.45

Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation
The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef,
GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPSLatitude</th>
<th>GPSLatitudeRef</th>
<th>GPSLongitude</th>
<th>GPSLongitudeRef</th>
<th>Geolocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33°51'21.91&quot;S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>151°13'11.73&quot;E</td>
<td></td>
<td>33°51'21.91&quot;S 151°13'11.73&quot;E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2.1.4 XPath/XQuery Functions: Image-Related

The following image-related XPath/XQuery extension functions are supported in the current version of RaptorXML Server and can be used in (i) XPath expressions in an XSLT context, or (ii) XQuery expressions in an XQuery document.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix altova:, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

- XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):
  - XP1
  - XP2
  - XP3.1

- XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):
  - XSLT1
  - XSLT2
  - XSLT3

- XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):
  - XQ1
  - XQ3.1

suggested-image-file-extension [altova:]

altova:suggested-image-file-extension(Base64String as string) as string? XP3.1 XQ3.1

Takes the Base64 encoding of an image file as its argument and returns the file extension of the image as recorded in the Base64-encoding of the image. The returned value is a suggestion based on the image type information available in the encoding. If this information is not available, then an empty string is returned. This function is useful if you wish to save a Base64 image as a file and wish to dynamically retrieve an appropriate file extension.

Examples

- altova:suggested-image-file-extension(/MyImages/MobilePhone/Image20141130.01) returns 'jpg'
- altova:suggested-image-file-extension($XML1/Staff/Person/@photo) returns ''
In the examples above, the nodes supplied as the argument of the function are assumed to contain a Base64-encoded image. The first example retrieves .jpg as the file's type and extension. In the second example, the submitted Base64 encoding does not provide usable file extension information.

```
image-exif-data [altova:]
```

```
altova:image-exif-data(Base64BinaryString as string) as element? XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

Takes a Base64-encoded JPEG image as its argument and returns an element called Exif that contains the Exif metadata of the image. The Exif metadata is created as attribute-value pairs of the Exif element. The attribute names are the Exif data tags found in the Base64 encoding. The list of Exif-specification tags is given below. If a vendor-specific tag is present in the Exif data, this tag and its value will also be returned as an attribute-value pair. Additional to the standard Exif metadata tags (see list below), Altova-specific attribute-value pairs are also generated. These Altova Exif attributes are listed below.

### Examples
- To access any one attribute, use the function like this:
  ```
  image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)//GPSLatitude
  ```
- To access all the attributes, use the function like this:
  ```
  image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)//*
  ```
- To access the names of all the attributes, use the following expression:
  ```
  for $i in image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)//*@ return name($i)
  ```
  This is useful to find out the names of the attributes returned by the function.

### Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation
The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPSLatitude</th>
<th>GPSLatitudeRef</th>
<th>GPSLongitude</th>
<th>GPSLongitudeRef</th>
<th>Geolocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33 51 21.91</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>151 13 11.73</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>33°51'21.91&quot;S 151°13'11.73&quot;E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Altova Exif Attribute: OrientationDegree
The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute OrientationDegree from the Exif metadata tag Orientation.

OrientationDegree translates the standard Exif tag Orientation from an integer value (1, 8, 3, or 6) to the respective degree values of each (0, 90, 180, 270), as shown in the figure below. Note that there are no translations of the Orientation values of 2, 4, 5, 7. (These orientations are obtained by flipping image 1 across its vertical center axis to get the image with a value of 2, and then rotating this image in 90-degree jumps clockwise to get the values of 7, 4, and 5, respectively).
Listing of standard Exif meta tags

- ImageWidth
- ImageLength
- BitsPerSample
- Compression
- PhotometricInterpretation
- Orientation
- SamplesPerPixel
- PlanarConfiguration
- YCbCrSubSampling
- YCbCrPositioning
- XResolution
- YResolution
- ResolutionUnit
- StripOffsets
- RowsPerStrip
- StripByteCounts
- JPEGInterchangeFormat
- JPEGInterchangeFormatLength
- TransferFunction
- WhitePoint
- PrimaryChromaticities
- YCbCrCoefficients
- ReferenceBlackWhite
- DateTime
- ImageDescription
- Make
- Model
- Software
- Artist
- Copyright

-----------------------------------------------------------------

- ExifVersion
- FlashpixVersion
- ColorSpace
- ComponentsConfiguration
- CompressedBitsPerPixel
- PixelXDimension
- PixelYDimension
- MakerNote
- UserComment
- RelatedSoundFile
- DateTimeOriginal
- DateTimeDigitized
- SubSecTime
- SubSecTimeOriginal
- SubSecTimeDigitized
- ExposureTime
- FNumber
- ExposureProgram
- SpectralSensitivity
- ISOSpeedRatings
- OECF
- ShutterSpeedValue
- ApertureValue
- BrightnessValue
- ExposureBiasValue
- MaxApertureValue
- SubjectDistance
- MeteringMode
- LightSource
- Flash
- FocalLength
- SubjectArea
- FlashEnergy
- SpatialFrequencyResponse
- FocalPlaneXResolution
- FocalPlaneYResolution
- FocalPlaneResolutionUnit
- SubjectLocation
- ExposureIndex
- SensingMethod
- FileSource
- SceneType
- CFAPattern
- CustomRendered
- ExposureMode
- WhiteBalance
- DigitalZoomRatio
- FocalLengthIn35mmFilm
- SceneCaptureType
8.2.1.5 XPath/XQuery Functions: Numeric

Altova's numeric extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data. The functions in this section can be used with Altova's XPath 3.0 and XQuery 3.0 engines. They are available in XPath/XQuery contexts.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability
Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the **Altova extension functions namespace**, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix `altova:`, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

### Auto-numbering functions

#### `generate-auto-number` [altova:]

**Syntax**

```
altova:generate-auto-number(ID as xs:string, StartsWith as xs:double, Increment as xs:double, ResetOnChange as xs:string) as xs:integer
```

**Description**

Generates a number each time the function is called. The first number, which is generated the first time the function is called, is specified by the `StartsWith` argument. Each subsequent call to the function generates a new number, this number being incremented over the previously generated number by the value specified in the `Increment` argument. In effect, the `altova:generate-auto-number` function creates a counter having a name specified by the `ID` argument, with this counter being incremented each time the function is called. If the value of the `ResetOnChange` argument changes from that of the previous function call, then the value of the number to be generated is reset to the `StartsWith` value. Auto-numbering can also be reset by using the `altova:reset-auto-number` function.

**Examples**

- `altova:generate-auto-number("ChapterNumber", 1, 1, "SomeString")` will return one number each time the function is called, starting with 1, and incrementing by 1 with each call to the function. As long as the fourth argument remains "SomeString" in each subsequent call, the incrementing will continue. When the value of the fourth argument changes, the counter (called ChapterNumber) will reset to 1. The value of ChapterNumber can also be reset by a call to the `altova:reset-auto-number` function, like this: `altova:reset-auto-number("ChapterNumber")`.

#### `reset-auto-number` [altova:]

**Syntax**

```
altova:reset-auto-number(ID as xs:string) as xs:integer
```

**Description**

This function resets the number of the auto-numbering counter named in the `ID` argument. The number is reset to the number specified by the `StartsWith` argument of the `altova:generate-auto-number` function that created the counter named in the `ID` argument.

**Examples**

- `altova:reset-auto-number("ChapterNumber")` resets the number of the auto-numbering counter named ChapterNumber that was created by the `altova:generate-auto-number` function. The number is reset to the value of the `StartsWith` argument of the `altova:generate-auto-number` function that created ChapterNumber.
**Numeric functions**

- **hex-string-to-integer [altova:]**

  
  \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer(HexString as } \text{xs:string}) \text{ as } \text{xs:integer} \text{ XP3.1 XQ3.1}\]

  Takes a string argument that is the Base-16 equivalent of an integer in the decimal system (Base-10), and returns the decimal integer.

  **Examples**

  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('1')} \text{ returns } 1\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('9')} \text{ returns } 9\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('A')} \text{ returns } 10\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('B')} \text{ returns } 11\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('F')} \text{ returns } 15\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('G')} \text{ returns an error}\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('10')} \text{ returns } 16\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('01')} \text{ returns } 1\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('20')} \text{ returns } 32\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('21')} \text{ returns } 33\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('5A')} \text{ returns } 90\]
  - \[\text{altova:hex-string-to-integer('USA')} \text{ returns an error}\]

- **integer-to-hex-string [altova:]**

  
  \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(Integer as } \text{xs:integer}) \text{ as } \text{xs:string} \text{ XP3.1 XQ3.1}\]

  Takes an integer argument and returns its Base-16 equivalent as a string.

  **Examples**

  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(1)} \text{ returns '1'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(9)} \text{ returns '9'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(10)} \text{ returns 'A'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(11)} \text{ returns 'B'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(15)} \text{ returns 'F'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(16)} \text{ returns '10'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(32)} \text{ returns '20'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(33)} \text{ returns '21'}\]
  - \[\text{altova:integer-to-hex-string(90)} \text{ returns '5A'}\]
8.2.1.6 XPath/XQuery Functions: Schema

The Altova extension functions listed below return schema information. Given below are descriptions of the functions, together with (i) examples and (ii) a listing of schema components and their respective properties. They can be used with Altova's XPath 3.0 and XQuery 3.0 engines and are available in XPath/XQuery contexts.

Schema information from schema documents

The function `altova:schema` has two arguments: one with zero arguments and the other with two arguments. The zero-argument function returns the whole schema. You can then, from this starting point, navigate into the schema to locate the schema components you want. The two-argument function returns a specific component kind that is identified by its QName. In both cases, the return value is a function. To navigate into the returned component, you must select a property of that specific component. If the property is a non-atomic item (that is, if it is a component), then you can navigate further by selecting a property of this component. If the selected property is an atomic item, then the value of the item is returned and you cannot navigate any further.

Note: In XQuery expressions, the schema must be explicitly imported. In XPath expressions, the schema must have been imported into the processing environment, for example, into XSLT with the `xslt:import` instruction.

Schema information from XML nodes

The function `altova:type` submits the node of an XML document and returns the node's type information from the PSVI.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix `altova:`, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

### Table: Altova extension functions

| XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT): | XP1 XP2 XP3.1 |
| XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT): | XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3 |
| XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery): | XQ1 XQ3.1 |

#### Schema (zero arguments)

```xml
altova:schema() as {function(xs:string) as item()*)?  XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

Returns the `schema` component as a whole. You can navigate further into the `schema` component by selecting one of the `schema` component's properties.

- If this property is a component, you can navigate another step deeper by selecting one of this component's properties. This step can be repeated to navigate further into the schema.
- If the component is an atomic value, the atomic value is returned and you cannot navigate any deeper.
The properties of the schema component are:

"type definitions"
"attribute declarations"
"element declarations"
"attribute group definitions"
"model group definitions"
"notation declarations"
"identity-constraint definitions"

The properties of all other component kinds (besides schema) are listed below.

Note: In XQuery expressions, the schema must be explicitly imported. In XPath expressions, the schema must have been imported into the processing environment, for example, into XSLT with the xslt:import instruction.

Examples

- import schema "" at "C:\Test\ExpReport.xsd"; for $typedef in altova:schema() ("type definitions")
  return $typedef ("name") returns the names of all simple types or complex types in the schema

- import schema "" at "C:\Test\ExpReport.xsd";
  altova:schema() ("type definitions")[1]("name") returns the name of the first of all simple types or complex types in the schema

Components and their properties

Assertion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Assertion&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attribute Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Declaration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope</td>
<td>A function with properties (&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Scope&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;global&quot; or &quot;local&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: the containing Complex Type or Attribute Group)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
value constraint | If present, a function with properties
("class": "Value Constraint", "variety":
"fixed" or "default", "value": atomic
value, "lexical form": string. Note that
the "value" property is not available for
namespace-sensitive types

inheritable | boolean

## Attribute Group Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Group Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the attribute group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the attribute group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute uses</td>
<td>Sequence of (Attribute Use)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute wildcard</td>
<td>Optional Attribute Wildcard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Attribute Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Use&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>required</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>true if the attribute is required, false if optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value constraint</td>
<td>See Attribute Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inheritable</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Attribute Wildcard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Wildcard&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namespace constraint</td>
<td>function with properties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Namespace Constraint&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;any&quot;</td>
<td>enumeration&quot;]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;namespaces&quot;: sequence of xs:anyURI,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;disallowed names&quot;: list containing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>QNames and/or the strings &quot;defined&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and &quot;definedSiblings&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process contents</td>
<td>string (&quot;strict&quot;]</td>
<td>&quot;lax&quot;]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Complex Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Complex Type&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base type definition</td>
<td>Complex Type Definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>[&quot;extension&quot;]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>Empty sequence (not implemented)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derivation method</td>
<td>string ([&quot;restriction&quot;]</td>
<td>&quot;extension&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute uses</td>
<td>Sequence of Attribute Use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute wildcard</td>
<td>Optional Attribute Wildcard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content type</td>
<td>function with properties:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;::&quot;Content Type&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;element-only&quot;)</td>
<td>&quot;empty&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>optional Particle, &quot;open content&quot;:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>function with properties (&quot;class&quot;::&quot;Open Content&quot;, &quot;mode&quot;: string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;interleave&quot;)</td>
<td>&quot;suffix&quot;), &quot;wildcard&quot;: Wildcard), &quot;simple type definition&quot;:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simple Type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibited substitutions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>[&quot;extension&quot;]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assertions</td>
<td>Sequence of Assertion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Element Declaration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Complex Type&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type table</td>
<td>function with properties ([&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Type Table&quot;, &quot;alternatives&quot;: sequence of Type Alternative, &quot;default type definition&quot;: Simple Type or Complex Type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope</td>
<td>function with properties ([&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Scope&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: (&quot;global&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;local&quot;), &quot;parent&quot;: optional Complex Type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value constraint</td>
<td>see Attribute Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property name</td>
<td>Property type</td>
<td>Property value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nillable</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity-constraint definitions</td>
<td>Sequence of Identity Constraint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substitution group affiliations</td>
<td>Sequence of Element Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substitution group exclusions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;,&quot;extension&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disallowed substitutions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;,&quot;extension&quot;,&quot;substitution&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Element Wildcard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Wildcard&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namespace constraint</td>
<td>function with properties</td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Namespace Constraint&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;any&quot;,&quot;enumeration&quot;,&quot;not&quot;, &quot;namespaces&quot;: sequence of xs:anyURI, &quot;disallowed names&quot;: list containing QNames and/or the strings &quot;defined&quot; and &quot;definedSiblings&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process contents</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>(&quot;strict&quot;,&quot;lax&quot;,&quot;skip&quot;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Facet**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The name of the facet, for example &quot;minLength&quot; or &quot;enumeration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>depends on facet</td>
<td>The value of the facet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typed-value</td>
<td>array(xs:anyAtomicType*)</td>
<td>An array containing the enumeration values, each of which may in general be a sequence of atomic values. (Note: for the enumeration facet, the &quot;value&quot; property is a sequence of strings, regardless of the actual type)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Identity Constraint**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Identity-Constraint Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property name</td>
<td>Property type</td>
<td>Property value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity-constraint category</td>
<td>string (&quot;key&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;unique&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selector</td>
<td>XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fields</td>
<td>Sequence of XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referenced key</td>
<td>(For keyRef only): Identity Constraint</td>
<td>The corresponding key constraint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Model Group**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Model Group&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compositors</td>
<td>string (&quot;sequence&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;choice&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>particles</td>
<td>Sequence of Particle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Model Group Definition**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Model Group Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the model group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the model group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model group</td>
<td>Model Group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Notation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Notation Declaration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system identifier</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public identifier</td>
<td>string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Particle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Particle&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min occurs</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max occurs</td>
<td>integer, or string(&quot;unbounded&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term</td>
<td>Element Declaration, Element Wildcard, or ModelGroup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Simple Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Simple Type Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
<td>Sequence of string(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>extension&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>containing component</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facets</td>
<td>Sequence of Facet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundamental facets</td>
<td>Empty sequence (not implemented)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variety</td>
<td>string (&quot;atomic&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;list&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primitive type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item type definition</td>
<td>(for list types only) Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member type definitions</td>
<td>(for union types only) Sequence of Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Type Alternative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Type Alternative&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### XPath Property Record

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>namespace bindings</td>
<td>Sequence of functions with properties (&quot;prefix&quot;: string, &quot;namespace&quot;: anyURI)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default namespace</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base URI</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td>The static base URI of the XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The XPath expression as a string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Schema (two arguments)
altova:schema( ComponentKind as xs:string, Name as xs:QName) as (function(xs:string) as item()*)? XP3.1 XQ3.1

Returns the component kind that is specified in the first argument which has a name that is the same as the name supplied in the second argument. You can navigate further by selecting one of the component’s properties.

- If this property is a component, you can navigate another step deeper by selecting one of this component's properties. This step can be repeated to navigate further into the schema.
- If the component is an atomic value, the atomic value is returned and you cannot navigate any deeper.

**Note:** In XQuery expressions, the schema must be explicitly imported. In XPath expressions, the schema must have been imported into the processing environment, for example, into XSLT with the `xslt:import` instruction.

- **Examples**
  - `import schema "" at "C:\Test\ExpReport.xsd";
  altova:schema("element declaration", xs:QName("OrgChart"))("type definition")
  ("content type")("particles")[3]!.("term")("kind")
  returns the kind property of the term of the third particles component. This particles component
  is a descendant of the element declaration having a QName of OrgChart
  - `import schema "" at "C:\Test\ExpReport.xsd";
  let $typedef := altova:schema("type definition", xs:QName("emailType"))
  for $facet in $typedef ("facets")
  return [{$facet ("kind"), $facet("value")}]
  returns, for each facet of each emailType component, an array containing that facet's kind and value

- **Components and their properties**

  - **Assertion**
    
    | Property name | Property type | Property value |
    |---------------|---------------|----------------|
    | kind          | string        | "Assertion"    |
    | test          | XPath Property Record |

  - **Attribute Declaration**
    
    | Property name | Property type | Property value |
    |---------------|---------------|----------------|
    | kind          | string        | "Attribute Declaration" |
    | name          | string        | Local name of the attribute |
    | target namespace | string | Namespace URI of the attribute |
    | type definition | Simple Type or Complex Type |
    | scope         | A function with properties "class":"Scope", "variety": "global" or "local", "parent": the containing |
### Attribute Group Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Group Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the attribute group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the attribute group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute uses</td>
<td>Sequence of (Attribute Use)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute wildcard</td>
<td>Optional Attribute Wildcard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attribute Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Use&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>required</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>true if the attribute is required, false if optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value constraint</td>
<td>See Attribute Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inheritable</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attribute Wildcard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Wildcard&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namespace constraint</td>
<td>function with properties (&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Namespace Constraint&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;any&quot;</td>
<td>enumeration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process contents</td>
<td>string (&quot;strict&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;lax&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complex Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Complex Type&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base type definition</td>
<td>Complex Type Definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
<td>Sequence of strings (&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>extension&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>Empty sequence (not implemented)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derivation method</td>
<td>string (&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>extension&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute uses</td>
<td>Sequence of Attribute Use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute wildcard</td>
<td>Optional Attribute Wildcard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content type</td>
<td>function with properties: (&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Content Type&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;:string (&quot;element-only&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;empty&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibited substitutions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings (&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>extension&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assertions</td>
<td>Sequence of Assertion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Element Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Complex Type&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type table</td>
<td>function with properties (&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Type Table&quot;, &quot;alternatives&quot;: sequence of Type Alternative, &quot;default type definition&quot;: Simple Type or Complex Type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope</td>
<td>function with properties (&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Scope&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: (&quot;global&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;local&quot;), &quot;parent&quot;: optional Complex Type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property name</td>
<td>Property type</td>
<td>Property value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value constraint</td>
<td>see Attribute Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nillable</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity-constraint</td>
<td>Sequence of Identity Constraint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definitions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substitution group</td>
<td>Sequence of Element Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affiliations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substitution group</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclusions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disallowed substitutions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Element Wildcard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Wildcard&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namespace constraint</td>
<td>function with properties (&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Namespace Constraint&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;any&quot;</td>
<td>enumeration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process contents</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>(&quot;strict&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Facet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>depends on facet</td>
<td>The value of the facet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typed-value</td>
<td>For the enumeration facet only, array(xs:anyAtomicType*)</td>
<td>An array containing the enumeration values, each of which may in general be a sequence of atomic values. (Note: for the enumeration facet, the &quot;value&quot; property is a sequence of strings, regardless of the actual type)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Identity Constraint

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
kind | string | "Identity-Constraint Definition"
--- | --- | ---
name | string | Local name of the constraint
target namespace | string | Namespace URI of the constraint
identity-constraint category | string ("key"|"unique"|"keyRef") |
selector | XPath Property Record |
fields | Sequence of XPath Property Record |
referenced key | (For keyRef only): Identity Constraint |
The corresponding key constraint

**Model Group**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Model Group&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compositor</td>
<td>string (&quot;sequence&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;choice&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>particles</td>
<td>Sequence of Particle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Model Group Definition**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Model Group Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the model group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the model group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model group</td>
<td>Model Group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Notation Declaration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system identifier</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public identifier</td>
<td>string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Particle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Particle&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min occurs</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max occurs</td>
<td>integer, or string(&quot;unbounded&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Simple Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>“Simple Type Definition”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
<td>Sequence of string</td>
<td>“restriction”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>containing component</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facets</td>
<td>Sequence of Facet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundamental facets</td>
<td>Empty sequence (not implemented)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variety</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>“atomic”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primitive type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item type definition</td>
<td>(for list types only) Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member type definitions</td>
<td>(for union types only) Sequence of Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Type Alternative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>“Type Alternative”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### XPath Property Record

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>namespace bindings</td>
<td>Sequence of functions with properties</td>
<td>(“prefix”: string, “namespace”: anyURI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default namespace</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base URI</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td>The static base URI of the XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The XPath expression as a string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Type

altova:type(Node as item?) as (function(xs:string) as item()*)? XP3.1 XQ3.1

The function `altova:type` submits an element or attribute node of an XML document and returns the node's type information from the PSVI.

**Note:** The XML document must have a schema declaration so that the schema can be referenced.

**Examples**

- for $element in //Email
  let $type := altova:type($element)
  return $type

  returns a function that contains the node's type information

- for $element in //Email
  let $type := altova:type($element)
  return $type ("kind")

  takes the node's type component (Simple Type or Complex Type) and returns the value of the component's `kind` property

### Components and their properties

#### Assertion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Assertion&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Attribute Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Declaration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope</td>
<td>A function with properties (&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Scope&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;global&quot; or &quot;local&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: the containing Complex Type or Attribute Group)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value constraint</td>
<td>If present, a function with properties (&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Value Constraint&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;fixed&quot; or &quot;default&quot;, &quot;value&quot;: atomic value, &quot;lexical form&quot;: string. Note that the &quot;value&quot; property is not available for namespace-sensitive types)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attribute Group Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Group Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the attribute group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the attribute group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute uses</td>
<td>Sequence of (Attribute Use)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute wildcard</td>
<td>Optional Attribute Wildcard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attribute Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Attribute Use&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>required</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>true if the attribute is required, false if optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value constraint</td>
<td>See Attribute Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inheritable</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attribute Wildcard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Wildcard&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namespace constraint</td>
<td>function with properties (&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Namespace Constraint&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;any&quot;/&quot;enumeration&quot;]/&quot;not&quot;, &quot;namespaces&quot;: sequence of xs:anyURI, &quot;disallowed names&quot;: list containing QNames and/or the strings &quot;defined&quot; and &quot;definedSiblings&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process contents</td>
<td>string (&quot;strict&quot;/&quot;lax&quot;/&quot;skip&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complex Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Complex Type&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base type definition</td>
<td>Complex Type Definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Property type</td>
<td>Property value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>Empty sequence (not implemented)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derivation method</td>
<td>string (&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;extension&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute uses</td>
<td>Sequence of Attribute Use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute wildcard</td>
<td>Optional Attribute Wildcard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content type</td>
<td>function with properties:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Content Type&quot;,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;variety&quot;:string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;element-only&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;empty&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>optional Particle,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;open content&quot;:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>function with properties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Open Content&quot;,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;mode&quot;: string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;interleave&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;suffix&quot;), &quot;wildcard&quot;:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wildcard, &quot;simple type definition&quot;: Simple Type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibited substitutions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assertions</td>
<td>Sequence of Assertion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Element Declaration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Complex Type&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type table</td>
<td>function with properties:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Type Table&quot;, &quot;alternatives&quot;: sequence of Type Alternative,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;default type definition&quot;: Simple Type or Complex Type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope</td>
<td>function with properties:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;:&quot;Scope&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: (&quot;global&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;local&quot;), &quot;parent&quot;:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>optional Complex Type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value constraint</td>
<td>see Attribute Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nillable</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity-constraint definitions</td>
<td>Sequence of Identity Constraint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substitution group affiliations</td>
<td>Sequence of Element Declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property name</td>
<td>Property type</td>
<td>Property value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substitution group exclusions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disallowed substitutions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Element Wildcard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Wildcard&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namespace constraint</td>
<td>function with properties</td>
<td>(&quot;class&quot;: &quot;Namespace Constraint&quot;, &quot;variety&quot;: &quot;any&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process contents</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>(&quot;strict&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Facet**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The name of the facet, for example &quot;minLength&quot; or &quot;enumeration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>depends on facet</td>
<td>The value of the facet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typed-value</td>
<td>For the enumeration facet only, array(xs:anyAtomicType*)</td>
<td>An array containing the enumeration values, each of which may in general be a sequence of atomic values. (Note: for the enumeration facet, the &quot;value&quot; property is a sequence of strings, regardless of the actual type)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Identity Constraint**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Identity-Constraint Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity-constraint category</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>(&quot;key&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selector</td>
<td>XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property name</td>
<td>Property type</td>
<td>Property value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fields</td>
<td>Sequence of XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referenced key</td>
<td>(For keyRef only): Identity Constraint</td>
<td>The corresponding key constraint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Model Group**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Model Group&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compositor</td>
<td>string (&quot;sequence&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;choice&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>particles</td>
<td>Sequence of Particle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Model Group Definition**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Model Group Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the model group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the model group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model group</td>
<td>Model Group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Notation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Notation Declaration&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system identifier</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public identifier</td>
<td>string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Particle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Particle&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min occurs</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max occurs</td>
<td>integer, or string(&quot;unbounded&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term</td>
<td>Element Declaration, Element Wildcard, or ModelGroup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Simple Type**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Simple Type Definition&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Local name of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target namespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Namespace URI of the type (empty if anonymous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
<td>Sequence of string(&quot;restriction&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;extension&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>containing component</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facets</td>
<td>Sequence of Facet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundamental facets</td>
<td>Empty sequence (not implemented)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variety</td>
<td>string (&quot;atomic&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;list&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primitive type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item type definition</td>
<td>(for list types only) Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member type definitions</td>
<td>(for union types only) Sequence of Simple Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Type Alternative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>&quot;Type Alternative&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>XPath Property Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type definition</td>
<td>Simple Type or Complex Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**XPath Property Record**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Property type</th>
<th>Property value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>namespace bindings</td>
<td>Sequence of functions with properties (&quot;prefix&quot;: string, &quot;namespace&quot;: anyURI)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default namespace</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base URI</td>
<td>anyURI</td>
<td>The static base URI of the XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The XPath expression as a string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.2.1.7 XPath/XQuery Functions: Sequence

Altova’s sequence extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data. The functions in this section can be used with Altova’s XPath 3.0 and XQuery 3.0 engines. They are available in XPath/XQuery contexts.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix altova:, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</th>
<th>XP1 XP2 XP3.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</td>
<td>XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):</td>
<td>XQ1 XQ3.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

attributes [altova:]

altova:attributes(AttributeName as xs:string) as attribute()* XP3.1 XQ3.1

Returns all attributes that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, AttributeName. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the attribute:: axis. This means that the context node must be the parent element node.

Examples

- altova:attributes("MyAttribute") returns MyAttribute()*

altova:attributes(AttributeName as xs:string, SearchOptions as xs:string) as attribute()* XP3.1 XQ3.1

Returns all attributes that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, AttributeName. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the attribute:: axis. The context node must be the parent element node. The second argument is a string containing option flags. Available flags are:
- `r` = switches to a regular-expression search; AttributeName must then be a regular-expression search string;
- `i` = if this option is specified, then AttributeName provides a full match; otherwise AttributeName need only partially match an attribute name to return that attribute. For example: if `i` is not specified, then MyAtt will return MyAttribute;
- `i` = switches to a case-insensitive search;
- `p` = includes the namespace prefix in the search; AttributeName should then contain the namespace prefix, for example: altova:MyAttribute.

The flags can be written in any order. Invalid flags will generate errors. One or more flags can be omitted. The empty string is allowed, and will produce the same effect as the function having only one argument (previous signature). However, an empty sequence is not allowed as the second argument.

Examples

- altova:attributes("MyAttribute", "rfip") returns MyAttribute()*
• `altova:attributes("MyAttribute", "pri")` returns `MyAttribute()*`
• `altova:attributes("MyAtt", "rip")` returns `MyAttribute()*`
• `altova:attributes("MyAttributes", "rfip")` returns no match
• `altova:attributes("MyAttribute", ")")` returns `MyAttribute()*`
• `altova:attributes("MyAttribute", "Rip")` returns an unrecognized-flag error.
• `altova:attributes("MyAttribute", )` returns a missing-second-argument error.

\section*{elements [altova:]}

\begin{verbatim}
altova:elements(ElementName as xs:string) as element()* XP3.1 XQ3.1
\end{verbatim}

Returns all elements that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, `ElementName`. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the `child::` axis. The context node must be the parent node of the element/s being searched for.

\section*{Examples}

• `altova:elements("MyElement")` returns `MyElement()*`

\begin{verbatim}
altova:elements(ElementName as xs:string, SearchOptions as xs:string) as element()*
\end{verbatim}

XP3.1 XQ3.1

Returns all elements that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, `ElementName`. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the `child::` axis. The second argument is a string containing option flags. Available flags are:

\begin{itemize}
  \item `r` = switches to a regular-expression search; `ElementName` must then be a regular-expression search string;
  \item `f` = if this option is specified, then `ElementName` provides a full match; otherwise `ElementName` need only partially match an element name to return that element. For example: if `f` is not specified, then `MyElem` will return `MyElement`;
  \item `i` = switches to a case-insensitive search;
  \item `p` = includes the namespace prefix in the search; `ElementName` should then contain the namespace prefix, for example: `altova:MyElement`.
\end{itemize}

The flags can be written in any order. Invalid flags will generate errors. One or more flags can be omitted. The empty string is allowed, and will produce the same effect as the function having only one argument (previous signature). However, an empty sequence is not allowed.

\section*{Examples}

• `altova:elements("MyElement", "rip")` returns `MyElement()*`
• `altova:elements("MyElement", "pri")` returns `MyElement()*`
• `altova:elements("MyElement", ")")` returns `MyElement()*`
• `altova:elements("MyElem", "rip")` returns `MyElement()*`
• `altova:elements("MyElements", "rfip")` returns no match
• `altova:elements("MyElement", "Rip")` returns an unrecognized-flag error.
• `altova:elements("MyElement", )` returns a missing-second-argument error.

\section*{find-first [altova:]}

\begin{verbatim}
altova:find-first((Sequence as item()*), (Condition( Sequence-Item as xs:boolean)) as item())? XP3.1 XQ3.1
\end{verbatim}

This function takes two arguments. The first argument is a sequence of one or more items of any
datatype. The second argument, \texttt{Condition}, is a reference to an XPath function that takes one argument (has an arity of 1) and returns a boolean. Each item of \texttt{Sequence} is submitted, in turn, to the function referenced in \texttt{Condition}. \textit{(Remember: This function takes a single argument.)} The first \texttt{Sequence} item that causes the function in \texttt{Condition} to evaluate to \texttt{true()} is returned as the result of \texttt{altova:find-first}, and the iteration stops.

\textbf{Examples}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{altova:find-first(5 to 10, function($a) {($a \mod 2 = 0)})} returns \texttt{xs:integer 6}

The \texttt{Condition} argument references the XPath 3.0 inline function, \texttt{function()}, which declares an inline function named \texttt{$a} and then defines it. Each item in the \texttt{Sequence} argument of \texttt{altova:find-first} is passed, in turn, to \texttt{$a} as its input value. The input value is tested on the condition in the function definition ($a \mod 2 = 0$). The first input value to satisfy this condition is returned as the result of \texttt{altova:find-first} (in this case 6).

\item \texttt{altova:find-first((1 to 10), (function($a) {$a+3=7}))} returns \texttt{xs:integer 4}

\end{itemize}

\textbf{Further examples}

If the file \texttt{C:\Temp\Customers.xml} exists:

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{altova:find-first( ("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"),
(doc-available#1) ) returns xs:string C:\Temp\Customers.xml}
\end{itemize}

If the file \texttt{C:\Temp\Customers.xml} does not exist, and \texttt{http://www.altova.com/index.html} exists:

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{altova:find-first( ("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"),
(doc-available#1) ) returns xs:string http://www.altova.com/index.html}
\end{itemize}

If the file \texttt{C:\Temp\Customers.xml} does not exist, and \texttt{http://www.altova.com/index.html} also does not exist:

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{altova:find-first( ("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"),
(doc-available#1) ) returns no result}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Notes about the examples given above}

\begin{itemize}
\item The XPath 3.0 function, \texttt{doc-available}, takes a single string argument, which is used as a URI, and returns \texttt{true} if a document node is found at the submitted URI. (The document at the submitted URI must therefore be an XML document.)
\item The \texttt{doc-available} function can be used for \texttt{Condition}, the second argument of \texttt{altova:find-first}, because it takes only one argument (arity=1), because it takes an \texttt{item()} as input (a string which is used as a URI), and returns a boolean value.
\item Notice that the \texttt{doc-available} function is only referenced, not called. The \texttt{#1} suffix that is attached to it indicates a function with an arity of 1. In its entirety \texttt{doc-available#1} simply means: \textit{Use the \texttt{doc-available()} function that has \texttt{arity=1}, passing to it as its single argument, in turn, each of the items in the first sequence}. As a result, each of the two strings will be passed to \texttt{doc-available()}, which uses the string as a URI and tests whether a document node exists at the URI. If one does, the \texttt{doc-available()} evaluates to \texttt{true()} and that string is returned as the result of the \texttt{altova:find-first} function. \textit{Note about the \texttt{doc-available()} function: Relative
paths are resolved relative to the current base URI, which is by default the URI of the XML
document from which the function is loaded.

**find-first-combination [altova:]**

```
altova:find-first-combination((Seq-01 as item()*), (Seq-02 as item()*),
(Condition( Seq-01-Item, Seq-02-Item as xs:boolean)) as item*) XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

This function takes three arguments:

- The first two arguments, Seq-01 and Seq-02, are sequences of one or more items of any
datatype.
- The third argument, Condition, is a reference to an XPath function that takes two arguments (has
an arity of 2) and returns a boolean.

The items of Seq-01 and Seq-02 are passed in ordered pairs (one item from each sequence making up a
pair) as the arguments of the function in Condition. The pairs are ordered as follows.

```
If   Seq-01 = X1, X2, X3 ... Xn
And  Seq-02 = Y1, Y2, Y3 ... Yn
Then (X1 Y1), (X1 Y2), (X1 Y3) ... (X1 Yn), (X2 Y1), (X2 Y2) ... (Xn Yn)
```

The first ordered pair that causes the Condition function to evaluate to true() is returned as the result of
altova:find-first-combination. Note that: (i) If the Condition function iterates through the submitted
argument pairs and does not once evaluate to true(), then altova:find-first-combination returns No
results; (ii) The result of altova:find-first-combination will always be a pair of items (of any datatype)
or no item at all.

**Examples**

- `altova:find-first-combination(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function($a, $b) {$a+$b = 32})`
  returns the sequence of xs:integers (11, 21)
- `altova:find-first-combination(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function($a, $b) {$a+$b = 33})`
  returns the sequence of xs:integers (11, 22)
- `altova:find-first-combination(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function($a, $b) {$a+$b = 34})`
  returns the sequence of xs:integers (11, 23)

**find-first-pair [altova:]**

```
altova:find-first-pair((Seq-01 as item()*), (Seq-02 as item()*), (Condition( Seq-01-Item, Seq-02-Item as xs:boolean)) as item*) XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

This function takes three arguments:

- The first two arguments, Seq-01 and Seq-02, are sequences of one or more items of any
datatype.
- The third argument, Condition, is a reference to an XPath function that takes two arguments (has
an arity of 2) and returns a boolean.

The items of Seq-01 and Seq-02 are passed in ordered pairs as the arguments of the function in
Condition. The pairs are ordered as follows.
If \( \text{Seq-01} = X_1, X_2, X_3 \ldots X_n \)
And \( \text{Seq-02} = Y_1, Y_2, Y_3 \ldots Y_n \)
Then \((X_1 Y_1), (X_2 Y_2), (X_3 Y_3) \ldots (X_n Y_n)\)

The first ordered pair that causes the \textit{condition} function to evaluate to \textit{true()} is returned as the result of \texttt{altova:find-first-pair}. Note that: (i) If the \textit{condition} function iterates through the submitted argument pairs and does not once evaluate to \textit{true()}, then \texttt{altova:find-first-pair} returns \textit{No results}; (ii) The result of \texttt{altova:find-first-pair} will always be a pair of items (of any datatype) or no item at all.

\textbf{Examples}

- \texttt{altova:find-first-pair(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function($a, $b) {$a+$b = 32})} returns the sequence of \texttt{xs:integers} \((11, 21)\)
- \texttt{altova:find-first-pair(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function($a, $b) {$a+$b = 33})} returns \textit{No results}

Notice from the two examples above that the ordering of the pairs is: \((11, 21) \ (12, 22) \ (13, 23)\)\ldots\((20, 30)\). This is why the second example returns \textit{No results} (because no ordered pair gives a sum of 33).

\texttt{find-first-pair-pos [altova:]}\n
\texttt{altova:find-first-pair-pos((Seq-01 as item()*) , (Seq-02 as item()*) , (Condition( Seq-01-Item, Seq-02-Item as xs:boolean)) as xs:integer} \texttt{XP3.1 XQ3.1}

This function takes three arguments:

- The first two arguments, \texttt{Seq-01} and \texttt{Seq-02}, are sequences of one or more items of any datatype.
- The third argument, \textit{Condition}, is a reference to an \texttt{XPath} function that takes two arguments (has an arity of 2) and returns a boolean.

The items of \texttt{Seq-01} and \texttt{Seq-02} are passed in ordered pairs as the arguments of the function in \textit{Condition}. The pairs are ordered as follows.

If \( \text{Seq-01} = X_1, X_2, X_3 \ldots X_n \)
And \( \text{Seq-02} = Y_1, Y_2, Y_3 \ldots Y_n \)
Then \((X_1 Y_1), (X_2 Y_2), (X_3 Y_3) \ldots (X_n Y_n)\)

The index position of the first ordered pair that causes the \textit{condition} function to evaluate to \textit{true()} is returned as the result of \texttt{altova:find-first-pair-pos}. Note that if the \textit{condition} function iterates through the submitted argument pairs and does not once evaluate to \textit{true()}, then \texttt{altova:find-first-pair-pos} returns \textit{No results}.

\textbf{Examples}

- \texttt{altova:find-first-pair-pos(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function($a, $b) {$a+$b = 32})} returns 1
- \texttt{altova:find-first-pair-pos(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function($a, $b) {$a+$b = 33})} returns \textit{No results}

Notice from the two examples above that the ordering of the pairs is: \((11, 21) \ (12, 22) \ (13,
In the first example, the first pair causes the `Condition` function to evaluate to `true()`, and so its index position in the sequence, 1, is returned. The second example returns `No results` because no pair gives a sum of 33.

### `find-first-pos` [altova:]

```
altova:find-first-pos((Sequence as item(*) as xs:integer), (Condition( Sequence-Item as xs:boolean)))
```

This function takes two arguments. The first argument is a sequence of one or more items of any datatype. The second argument, `Condition`, is a reference to an XPath function that takes one argument (has an arity of 1) and returns a boolean. Each item of `Sequence` is submitted, in turn, to the function referenced in `Condition`. (Remember: This function takes a single argument.) The first `Sequence` item that causes the function in `Condition` to evaluate to `true()` has its index position in `Sequence` returned as the result of `altova:find-first-pos`, and the iteration stops.

### Examples

- `altova:find-first-pos(5 to 10, function($a) {$a mod 2 = 0})` returns `xs:integer 2`
  The `Condition` argument references the XPath 3.0 inline function, `function()`, which declares an inline function named `$a` and then defines it. Each item in the `Sequence` argument of `altova:find-first-pos` is passed, in turn, to `$a` as its input value. The input value is tested on the condition in the function definition (`$a mod 2 = 0`). The index position in the sequence of the first input value to satisfy this condition is returned as the result of `altova:find-first-pos` (in this case 2, since 6, the first value (in the sequence) to satisfy the condition, is at index position 2 in the sequence).

- `altova:find-first-pos((2 to 10), (function($a) {$a+3=7}))` returns `xs:integer 3`

### Further examples

If the file `C:\Temp\Customers.xml` exists:

- `altova:find-first-pos('C:\Temp\Customers.xml', 'http://www.altova.com/index.html'), {doc-available#1} returns 1`

If the file `C:\Temp\Customers.xml` does not exist, and `http://www.altova.com/index.html` exists:

- `altova:find-first-pos('C:\Temp\Customers.xml', 'http://www.altova.com/index.html'), {doc-available#1} returns 2`

If the file `C:\Temp\Customers.xml` does not exist, and `http://www.altova.com/index.html` also does not exist:

- `altova:find-first-pos('C:\Temp\Customers.xml', 'http://www.altova.com/index.html'), {doc-available#1} returns no result`

### Notes about the examples given above

- The XPath 3.0 function, `doc-available`, takes a single string argument, which is used as a URI, and returns `true` if a document node is found at the submitted URI. (The document at the
· The `doc-available` function can be used for `condition`, the second argument of `altova:find-first-pos`, because it takes only one argument (arity=1), because it takes an `item()` as input (a string which is used as a URI), and returns a boolean value.

· Notice that the `doc-available` function is only referenced, not called. The `#1` suffix that is attached to it indicates a function with an arity of 1. In its entirety `doc-available#1` simply means: Use the `doc-available()` function that has arity=1, passing to it as its single argument, in turn, each of the two strings in the first sequence. As a result, each of the two strings will be passed to `doc-available()`, which uses the string as a URI and tests whether a document node exists at the URI. If one does, the `doc-available()` function evaluates to `true()` and the index position of that string in the sequence is returned as the result of the `altova:find-first-pos` function. **Note about the `doc-available()` function: Relative paths are resolved relative to the the current base URI, which is by default the URI of the XML document from which the function is loaded.**

---

### `altova:for-each-attribute-pair`

```xml
altova:for-each-attribute-pair(Seq1 as element()?, Seq2 as element()?, Function as function()) as item()* XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

The first two arguments identify two elements, the attributes of which are used to build attribute pairs, where one attribute of a pair is obtained from the first element and the other attribute is obtained from the second element. Attribute pairs are selected on the basis of having the same name, and the pairs are ordered alphabetically (on their names) into a set. If, for one attribute no corresponding attribute on the other element exists, then the pair is "disjoint", meaning that it consists of one member only. The function item (third argument `Function`) is applied separately to each pair in the sequence of pairs (joint and disjoint), resulting in an output that is a sequence of items.

**Examples**

· `altova:for-each-attribute-pair(/Example/Test-A, /Example/Test-B, function($a, $b) {+$a+$b})` returns ...

  ```xml
  (2, 4, 6) if
  <Test-A att1="1" att2="2" att3="3" />
  <Test-B att1="1" att2="2" att3="3" />

  (2, 4, 6) if
  <Test-A att2="2" att1="1" att3="3" />
  <Test-B att3="3" att2="2" att1="1" />

  (2, 6) if
  <Test-A att4="4" att1="1" att3="3" />
  <Test-B att3="3" att2="2" att1="1" />
  ```

  **Note:** The result (2, 6) is obtained by way of the following action: `(1+1, ()+2, 3+3, 4+())`. If one of the operands is the empty sequence, as in the case of items 2 and 4, then the result of the addition is an empty sequence.

· `altova:for-each-attribute-pair(/Example/Test-A, /Example/Test-B, concat#2)` returns ...

...
(11, 22, 33) if
    <Test-A att1="1" att2="2" att3="3" />
    <Test-B att1="1" att2="2" att3="3" />

(11, 2, 33, 4) if
    <Test-A att4="4" att1="1" att3="3" />
    <Test-B att3="3" att2="2" att1="1" />

---

\textbf{for-each-combination [altova:]} 
\texttt{altova:for-each-combination(FirstSequence as item()*, SecondSequence as item()*, 
Function($i, $j){$i || $j} as item())* XP3.1 XQ3.1}

The items of the two sequences in the first two arguments are combined so that each item of the first
sequence is combined, in order, once with each item of the second sequence. The function given as the
third argument is applied to each combination in the resulting sequence, resulting in an output that is a
sequence of items \textit{(see example)}.

\textit{Examples}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{altova:for-each-combination( ('a', 'b', 'c'), ('1', '2', '3'), function($i, $j)
   { $i || $j }) returns ('a1', 'a2', 'a3', 'b1', 'b2', 'b3', 'c1', 'c2', 'c3')}
\end{itemize}

---

\textbf{for-each-matching-attribute-pair [altova:]} 
\texttt{altova:for-each-matching-attribute-pair(Seq1 as element()?, Seq2 as element()?, 
Function as function()) as item()* XP3.1 XQ3.1}

The first two arguments identify two elements, the attributes of which are used to build attribute pairs,
where one attribute of a pair is obtained from the first element and the other attribute is obtained from the
second element. Attribute pairs are selected on the basis of having the same name, and the pairs are
ordered alphabetically (on their names) into a set. If, for one attribute no corresponding attribute on the
other element exists, then no pair is built. The function item (third argument \texttt{Function}) is applied
separately to each pair in the sequence of pairs, resulting in an output that is a sequence of items.

\textit{Examples}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{altova:for-each-matching-attribute-pair(/Example/Test-A, /Example/Test-B, 
   function($a, $b){$a+b}) returns ...}
\end{itemize}
(11, 22, 33) if
<Test-A att1="1" att2="2" att3="3" />
<Test-B att1="1" att2="2" att3="3" />

(11, 33) if
<Test-A att4="4" att1="1" att3="3" />
<Test-B att3="3" att2="2" att1="1" />

substitute-empty [altova:]
altova:substitute-empty(FirstSequence as item()*, SecondSequence as item()) as item()*
XP3.1 XQ3.1
If FirstSequence is empty, returns SecondSequence. If FirstSequence is not empty, returns FirstSequence.
Examples
• altova:substitute-empty( (1,2,3), (4,5,6) ) returns (1,2,3)
• altova:substitute-empty( (), (4,5,6) ) returns (4,5,6)

8.2.1.8 XPath/XQuery Functions: String
Altova's string extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data. The functions in this section can be used with Altova's XPath 3.0 and XQuery 3.0 engines. They are available in XPath/XQuery contexts.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability
Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix altova:, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

| XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT): | XP1 XP2 XP3.1 |
| XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT): | XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3 |
| XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery): | XQ1 XQ3.1 |

camel-case [altova:]
altova:camel-case(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
Returns the input string InputString in CamelCase. The string is analyzed using the regular expression
\s" (which is a shortcut for the whitespace character). The first non-whitespace character after a whitespace or sequence of consecutive whitespaces is capitalized. The first character in the output string is capitalized.

**Examples**

- `altova:camel-case("max")` returns `Max`
- `altova:camel-case("max max")` returns `Max Max`
- `altova:camel-case("file01.xml")` returns `File01.xml`
- `altova:camel-case("file01.xml file02.xml")` returns `File01.xml File02.xml`
- `altova:camel-case("file01.xml file02.xml")` returns `File01.xml File02.xml`
- `altova:camel-case("file01.xml -file02.xml")` returns `File01.xml -file02.xml`

**altova:camel-case**

```
altova:camel-case(InputString as xs:string, SplitChars as xs:string, IsRegex as xs:boolean) as xs:string
```

Converts the input string `InputString` to camel case by using `SplitChars` to determine the character/s that trigger the next capitalization. `SplitChars` is used as a regular expression when `IsRegex = true()`, or as plain characters when `IsRegex = false()`. The first character in the output string is capitalized.

**Examples**

- `altova:camel-case("setname getname", "set|get", true())` returns `setName getName`
- `altova:camel-case("altova\documents\testcases", ",", false())` returns `Altova\Documents\Testcases`

**char**

```
altova:char(Position as xs:integer) as xs:string
```

Returns a string containing the character at the position specified by the `Position` argument, in the string obtained by converting the value of the context item to `xs:string`. The result string will be empty if no character exists at the index submitted by the `Position` argument.

**Examples**

- `altova:char(2)` returns `2`
- `altova:char(5)` returns `A`
- `altova:char(9)` returns the empty string.
- `altova:char(-2)` returns the empty string.

**altova:char**

```
altova:char(InputString as xs:string, Position as xs:integer) as xs:string
```

Returns a string containing the character at the position specified by the `Position` argument, in the string submitted as the `InputString` argument. The result string will be empty if no character exists at the index submitted by the `Position` argument.

**Examples**

- `altova:char("2014-01-15", 5)` returns `-`
- `altova:char("USA", 1)` returns `U`
- `altova:char("USA", 10)` returns the empty string.
- `altova:char("USA", -2)` returns the empty string.

**create-hash-from-string**

```
create-hash-from-string
```

Returns a hash code from the input string.
altova:create-hash-from-string(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string XP2 XQ1 XP3.1
Generates a hash string from InputString by using the hashing algorithm specified by the HashAlgo argument. The following hashing algorithms may be specified (in upper or lower case): MD5, SHA-1, SHA-224, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512. If the second argument is not specified (see the first signature above), then the SHA-256 hashing algorithm is used.

Examples
- altova:create-hash-from-string('abc') returns a hash string generated by using the SHA-256 hashing algorithm.
- altova:create-hash-from-string('abc', 'md5') returns a hash string generated by using the MD5 hashing algorithm.
- altova:create-hash-from-string('abc', 'MD5') returns a hash string generated by using the MD5 hashing algorithm.

first-chars [altova:]
altova:first-chars(X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
Returns a string containing the first X-Number of characters of the string obtained by converting the value of the context item to xs:string.

Examples
- If the context item is 1234ABCD:
  - altova:first-chars(2) returns 12
  - altova:first-chars(5) returns 1234A
  - altova:first-chars(9) returns 1234ABCD

altova:first-chars(InputString as xs:string, X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
Returns a string containing the first X-Number of characters of the string submitted as the InputString argument.

Examples
- altova:first-chars("2014-01-15", 5) returns 2014-
- altova:first-chars("USA", 1) returns U

format-string [altova:]
altova:format-string(InputString as xs:string, FormatSequence as item()*) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
The input string (first argument) contains positional parameters (%1, %2, etc). Each parameter is replaced by the string item that is located at the corresponding position in the format sequence (submitted as the second argument). So the first item in the format sequence replaces the positional parameter %1, the second item replaces %2, and so on. The function returns this formatted string that contains the replacements. If no string exists for a positional parameter, then the positional parameter itself is returned. This happens when the index of a positional parameter is greater than the number of items in the format sequence.

Examples
• altova:format-string('Hello %1, %2, %3', ('Jane', 'John', 'Joe')) returns "Hello Jane, John, Joe"
• altova:format-string('Hello %1, %2, %3', ('Jane', 'John', 'Joe', 'Tom')) returns "Hello Jane, John, Joe"
• altova:format-string('Hello %1, %2, %4', ('Jane', 'John', 'Joe', 'Tom')) returns "Hello Jane, John, Tom"
• altova:format-string('Hello %1, %2, %4', ('Jane', 'John', 'Joe')) returns "Hello Jane, John, %4"

last-chars [altova:]

altova:last-chars(X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
Returns a string containing the last X-Number of characters of the string obtained by converting the value of the context item to xs:string.

Examples
If the context item is 1234ABCD:

• altova:last-chars(2) returns CD
• altova:last-chars(5) returns 4ABCD
• altova:last-chars(9) returns 1234ABCD

altova:last-chars(InputString as xs:string, X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
Returns a string containing the last X-Number of characters of the string submitted as the InputString argument.

Examples

• altova:last-chars("2014-01-15", 5) returns 01-15
• altova:last-chars("USA", 10) returns USA

pad-string-left [altova:]

altova:pad-string-left(StringToPad as xs:string, StringLength as xs:integer, PadCharacter as xs:string) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
The PadCharacter argument is a single character. It is padded to the left of the string to increase the number of characters in StringToPad so that this number equals the integer value of the StringLength argument. The StringLength argument can have any integer value (positive or negative), but padding will occur only if the value of StringLength is greater than the number of characters in StringToPad. If StringToPad has more characters than the value of StringLength, then StringToPad is left unchanged.

Examples

• altova:pad-string-left('AP', 1, 'Z') returns 'AP'
• altova:pad-string-left('AP', 2, 'Z') returns 'AP'
• altova:pad-string-left('AP', 3, 'Z') returns 'ZAP'
• altova:pad-string-left('AP', 4, 'Z') returns 'ZZAP'
• altova:pad-string-left('AP', -3, 'Z') returns 'AP'
• altova:pad-string-left('AP', 3, 'YZ') returns a pad-character-too-long error
pad-string-right [altova:]

```
altova:pad-string-right(StringToPad as xs:string, StringLength as xs:integer, PadCharacter as xs:string) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

The `PadCharacter` argument is a single character. It is padded to the right of the string to increase the number of characters in `StringToPad` so that this number equals the integer value of the `StringLength` argument. The `StringLength` argument can have any integer value (positive or negative), but padding will occur only if the value of `StringLength` is greater than the number of characters in `StringToPad`. If `StringToPad` has more characters than the value of `StringLength`, then `StringToPad` is left unchanged.

**Examples**

- `altova:pad-string-right('AP', 1, 'Z')` returns 'AP'
- `altova:pad-string-right('AP', 2, 'Z')` returns 'AP'
- `altova:pad-string-right('AP', 3, 'Z')` returns 'APZ'
- `altova:pad-string-right('AP', 4, 'Z')` returns 'APZZ'
- `altova:pad-string-right('AP', -3, 'Z')` returns 'AP'
- `altova:pad-string-right('AP', 3, 'YZ')` returns a pad-character-too-long error

repeat-string [altova:]

```
altova:repeat-string(InputString as xs:string, Repeats as xs:integer) as xs:string XP2 XQ1 XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

Generates a string that is composed of the first `InputString` argument repeated `Repeats` number of times.

**Examples**

- `altova:repeat-string("Altova ", 3)` returns "Altova #Altova #Altova #"

substring-after-last [altova:]

```
altova:substring-after-last(MainString as xs:string, CheckString as xs:string) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

If `CheckString` is found in `MainString`, then the substring that occurs after `CheckString` in `MainString` is returned. If `CheckString` is not found in `MainString`, then the empty string is returned. If `CheckString` is an empty string, then `MainString` is returned in its entirety. If there is more than one occurrence of `CheckString` in `MainString`, then the substring after the last occurrence of `CheckString` is returned.

**Examples**

- `altova:substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'B')` returns 'CDEFGH'
- `altova:substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BC')` returns 'DEFGH'
- `altova:substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BD')` returns ''
- `altova:substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'Z')` returns ''
- `altova:substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', '')` returns 'ABCDEFGH'
- `altova:substring-after-last('ABCD-ABCD', 'B')` returns 'CD'
- `altova:substring-after-last('ABCD-ABCD-ABCD', 'BCD')` returns ''

substring-before-last [altova:]

```
altova:substring-before-last(MainString as xs:string, CheckString as xs:string) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
```

If `CheckString` is found in `MainString`, then the substring that occurs before `CheckString` in `MainString`
is returned. If CheckString is not found in MainString, or if CheckString is an empty string, then the empty string is returned. If there is more than one occurrence of CheckString in MainString, then the substring before the last occurrence of CheckString is returned.

**Examples**

- `altova:substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'B')` returns 'A'
- `altova:substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BC')` returns 'A'
- `altova:substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BD')` returns ''
- `altova:substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'Z')` returns ''
- `altova:substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', '')` returns ''
- `altova:substring-before-last('ABCD-ABCD', 'B')` returns 'ABCD-A'
- `altova:substring-before-last('ABCD-ABCD-ABCD', 'ABCD')` returns 'ABCD-ABCD-

### substring-pos [altova:]

`altova:substring-pos(StringToCheck as xs:string, StringToFind as xs:string) as xs:integer`  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XP3.1</th>
<th>XQ3.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Returns the character position of the first occurrence of StringToFind in the string StringToCheck. The character position is returned as an integer. The first character of StringToCheck has the position 1. If StringToFind does not occur within StringToCheck, the integer 0 is returned. To check for the second or a later occurrence of StringToCheck, use the next signature of this function.

**Examples**

- `altova:substring-pos('Altova', 'to')` returns 3
- `altova:substring-pos('Altova', 'tov')` returns 3
- `altova:substring-pos('Altova', 'tv')` returns 0
- `altova:substring-pos('AltovaAltova', 'to')` returns 3
- `altova:substring-pos('Altova-Altova', 'to', 0)` returns 3
- `altova:substring-pos('Altova-Altova', 'to', 4)` returns 10

### trim-string [altova:]

`altova:trim-string(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string`  

This function takes an xs:string argument, removes any leading and trailing whitespace, and returns a "trimmed" xs:string.

**Examples**
8.2.1.9 XPath/XQuery Functions: Miscellaneous

The following general purpose XPath/XQuery extension functions are supported in the current version of RaptorXML Server and can be used in (i) XPath expressions in an XSLT context, or (ii) XQuery expressions in an XQuery document.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions. Altova extension functions are in the Altova extension functions namespace, http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions, and are indicated in this section with the prefix altova:, which is assumed to be bound to this namespace. Note that, in future versions of your product, support for a function might be discontinued or the

- altova:trim-string(" Hello World ") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string("Hello World ") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string(" Hello World") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string("Hello World") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string("Hello World") returns "Hello World"

\[ \text{trim-string-left [altova:]} \]

altova:trim-string-left(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string

This function takes an xs:string argument, removes any leading whitespace, and returns a left-trimmed xs:string.

\[ \text{Examples} \]

- altova:trim-string-left(" Hello World ") returns "Hello World 
- altova:trim-string-left("Hello World ") returns "Hello World 
- altova:trim-string-left(" Hello World") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string-left("Hello World") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string-left("Hello World") returns "Hello World"

\[ \text{trim-string-right [altova:]} \]

altova:trim-string-right(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string

This function takes an xs:string argument, removes any trailing whitespace, and returns a right-trimmed xs:string.

\[ \text{Examples} \]

- altova:trim-string-right(" Hello World ") returns " Hello World"
- altova:trim-string-right("Hello World ") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string-right(" Hello World") returns " Hello World"
- altova:trim-string-right("Hello World") returns "Hello World"
- altova:trim-string-right("Hello World") returns "Hello World"
behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</th>
<th>XP1 XP2 XP3.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):</td>
<td>XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):</td>
<td>XQ1 XQ3.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### decode-string [altova:]

altova:decode-string(Input as xs:base64Binary) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1
altova:decode-string(Input as xs:base64Binary, Encoding as xs:string) as xs:string XP3.1 XQ3.1

Decodes the submitted base64Binary input to a string using the specified encoding. If no encoding is specified, then the UTF-8 encoding is used. The following encodings are supported: US-ASCII, ISO-8859-1, UTF-16, UTF-16LE, UTF-16BE, ISO-10646-UCS2, UTF-32, UTF-32LE, UTF-32BE, ISO-10646-UCS4

- **Examples**
  - altova:decode-string($XML1/MailData/Meta/b64B) returns the base64Binary input as a UTF-8 encoded string
  - altova:decode-string($XML1/MailData/Meta/b64B, "UTF-8") returns the base64Binary input as a UTF-8-encoded string
  - altova:decode-string($XML1/MailData/Meta/b64B, "ISO-8859-1") returns the base64Binary input as an ISO-8859-1-encoded string

### encode-string [altova:]

altova:encode-string(InputString as xs:string) as xs:base64Binaryinteger XP3.1 XQ3.1
altova:encode-string(InputString as xs:string, Encoding as xs:string) as xs:base64Binaryinteger XP3.1 XQ3.1

Encodes the submitted string using, if one is given, the specified encoding. If no encoding is given, then the UTF-8 encoding is used. The converted base64Binary value is returned. Initially, UTF-8 encoding is supported, and support will be extended to the following encodings: US-ASCII, ISO-8859-1, UTF-16, UTF-16LE, UTF-16BE, ISO-10646-UCS2, UTF-32, UTF-32LE, UTF-32BE, ISO-10646-UCS4

- **Examples**
  - altova:encode-string("Altova") returns the base64Binary equivalent of the UTF-8 encoded string "Altova"
  - altova:encode-string("Altova", "UTF-8") returns the base64Binary equivalent of the UTF-8 encoded string "Altova"

### get-temp-folder [altova:]

altova:get-temp-folder() as xs:string XP2 XQ1 XP3.1 XQ3.1

This function takes no argument. It returns the path to the temporary folder of the current user.
Examples

- `altova:get-temp-folder()` would return, on a Windows machine, something like C:\Users\<UserName>\AppData\Local\Temp\ as an xs:string.

generate-guid [altova:]

`altova:generate-guid()` as xs:string XP2 XQ1 XP3.1 XQ3.1
Generates a unique string GUID string.

Examples

- `altova:generate-guid()` returns (for example) 85F971DA-17F3-4E4E-994E-99137873ACCD

high-res-timer [altova:]

`altova:high-res-timer()` as xs:double XP3.1 XQ3.1
Returns a system high-resolution timer value in seconds. A high-resolution timer, when present on a
system, enables high precision time measurements when these are required (for example, in animations
and for determining precise code-execution time). This function provides the resolution of the system's
high-res timer.

Examples

- `altova:high-res-timer()` returns something like '1.16766146154566E6'

parse-html [altova:]

`altova:parse-html(HTMLText as xs:string) as node()` XP3.1 XQ3.1
The HTMLText argument is a string that contains the text of an HTML document. The function creates an
HTML tree from the string. The submitted string may or may not contain the HTML element. In either case,
the root element of the tree is an element named HTML. It is best to make sure that the HTML code in the
submitted string is valid HTML.

Examples

- `altova:parse-html("<html><head/><body><h1>Header</h1></body></html>")` creates an
  HTML tree from the submitted string

sleep[altova:]

`altova:sleep(Millisecs as xs:integer) as empty-sequence()` XP2 XQ1 XP3.1 XQ3.1
Suspends execution of the current operation for the number of milliseconds given by the Millisecs
argument.

Examples

- `altova:sleep(1000)` suspends execution of the current operation for 1000 milliseconds.
8.2.1.10 Chart Functions

The chart functions listed below enable you to create, generate, and save charts as images. They are supported in the current version of your Altova product in the manner described below. However, note that in future versions of your product, support for one or more of these functions might be discontinued or the behavior of individual functions might change. Consult the documentation of future releases for information about support for Altova extension functions in that release.

The chart functions are XPath functions (not XSLT functions), and organized into two groups:

- Functions for generating and saving charts
- Functions for creating charts

Note: Chart functions are supported only in Altova’s Server products and the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

Note: Supported image formats for charts in server editions are jpg, png, and bmp. The best option is png because it is lossless and compressed. In Enterprise editions, the supported formats are jpg, png, bmp, and gif.

Functions for generating and saving charts

These functions take the chart object (obtained with the chart creation functions) and either generate an image or save an image to file.

\texttt{altova:generate-chart-image} ($chart$, $width$, $height$, $encoding$) as atomic

where

- $chart$ is the chart extension item obtained with the \texttt{altova:create-chart} function
- $width$ and $height$ must be specified with a length unit
- $encoding$ may be \texttt{x-binarytobase64} or \texttt{x-binarytobase16}

The function returns the chart image in the specified encoding.

\texttt{altova:generate-chart-image} ($chart$, $width$, $height$, $encoding$, $imagetype$) as atomic

where

- $chart$ is the chart extension item obtained with the \texttt{altova:create-chart} function
- $width$ and $height$ must be specified with a length unit
- $encoding$ may be \texttt{x-binarytobase64} or \texttt{x-binarytobase16}
- $imagetype$ may be one of the following image formats: png, gif, bmp, jpg, jpeg. Note that gif is not supported on server products. Also see note at top of page.

The function returns the chart image in the specified encoding and image format.

\texttt{altova:save-chart-image} ($chart$, $filename$, $width$, $height$) as empty() \textit{(Windows only)}
where

- `$chart` is the chart extension item obtained with the `altova:create-chart` function
- `$filename` is the path to and name of the file to which the chart image is to be saved
- `$width` and `$height` must be specified with a length unit

The function saves the chart image to the file specified in `$filename`.

**`altova:save-chart-image`**

```xml
$chart, $filename, $width, $height, $imagetype) as empty()
```

(Windows only)

where

- `$chart` is the chart extension item obtained with the `altova:create-chart` function
- `$filename` is the path to and name of the file to which the chart image is to be saved
- `$width` and `$height` must be specified with a length unit
- `$imagetype` may be one of the following image formats: `png`, `gif`, `bmp`, `jpg`, `jpeg`. Note that `gif` is not supported on server products. *Also see note at top of page.*

The function saves the chart image to the file specified in `$filename` in the image format specified.

### Functions for creating charts

The following functions are used to create charts.

**`altova:create-chart`**

```xml
$chart-config, $chart-data-series*) as chart extension item
```

where

- `$chart-config` is the chart-config extension item obtained with the `altova:create-chart-config` function or via the `altova:create-chart-config-from-xml` function
- `$chart-data-series` is the chart-data-series extension item obtained with the `altova:create-chart-data-series` function or `altova:create-chart-data-series-from-rows` function

The function returns a chart extension item, which is created from the data supplied via the arguments.

**`altova:chart`**

```xml
$chart-config, $chart-data-series*) as chart extension item
```

where

- `$chart-config` is the chart-config extension item. It is an unordered series of four key: value pairs, where the four keys are "width", "height", "title", and "kind". The values of `width` and `height` are integers and specify the width and height of the chart in pixels. The value of `kind` is one of: Pie, Pie3d, BarChart, BarChart3d, BarChart3dGrouped, LineChart, ValueLineChart, RoundGauge, BarGauge.
- `$chart-data-series` is each an array of size 3, where each array defines a chart-data-series. Each array is composed of: (i) the name of the data series, (ii) the X-Axis values, (iii) the Y-Axis values. Multiple data series may be submitted; in the example below, for example, the two arrays respectively give data for monthly minimum and maximum temperatures.
The function returns a chart extension item, which is created from the data supplied via the arguments.

**Example:**

```
altova:chart(
  map{
    'width': 800,
    'height': 600,
    'kind': 'LineChart',
    'title': 'Monthly Temperatures' },
  ['Min', $temps/Month, $temps/Month/@min],
  ['Max', $temps/Month, $temps/Month/@max])
```

**altova:create-chart-config**($type-name, $title) as chart-config extension item

where

- $type-name specifies the type of chart to be created: Pie, Pie3d, BarChart, BarChart3d, BarChart3dGrouped, LineChart, ValueLineChart, RoundGauge, BarGauge
- $title is the name of the chart

The function returns a chart-config extension item containing the configuration information of the chart.

**altova:create-chart-config-from-xml**($xml-struct) as chart-config extension item

where

- $xml-struct is the XML structure containing the configuration information of the chart

The function returns a chart-config extension item containing the configuration information of the chart. This information is supplied in an XML data fragment.

**altova:create-chart-data-series**($series-name?, $x-values*, $y-values*) as chart-data-series extension item

where

- $series-name specifies the name of the series
- $x-values gives the list of X-Axis values
- $y-values gives the list of Y-Axis values

The function returns a chart-data-series extension item containing the data for building the chart: that is, the names of the series and the Axes data.

**altova:create-chart-data-row**(x, y1, y2, y3, ...) as chart-data-x-Ny-row extension item

where

- x is the value of the X-Axis column of the chart data row
- yN are the values of the Y-Axis columns

The function returns a chart-data-x-Ny-row extension item, which contains the data for the X-Axis column and Y-Axis columns of a single series.

**altova:create-chart-data-series-from-rows**($series-names as xs:string*, $row*) as chart-data-series extension item
where

- $series-name$ is the name of the series to be created
- $row$ is the chart-data-x-Ny-row extension item that is to be created as a series

The function returns a chart-data-series extension item, which contains the data for the X-Axis and Y-Axes of the series.

```xml
<altova:create-chart-layer($chart-config, $chart-data-series*) as chart-layer extension item>

where

- $chart-config$ is the chart-config extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-config function or via the altova:create-chart-config-from-xml function
- $chart-data-series$ is the chart-data-series extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-data-series function or altova:create-chart-data-series-from-rows function

The function returns a chart-layer extension item, which contains chart-layer data.

```xml
<altova:create-multi-layer-chart($chart-config, $chart-data-series*, $chart-layer*)

where

- $chart-config$ is the chart-config extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-config function or or via the altova:create-chart-config-from-xml function
- $chart-data-series$ is the chart-data-series extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-data-series function or altova:create-chart-data-series-from-rows function
- $chart-layer$ is the chart-layer extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-layer function

The function returns a multi-layer-chart item.

```xml
<altova:create-multi-layer-chart($chart-config, $chart-data-series*, $chart-layer*,
xs:boolean $mergescategoryvalues)

where

- $chart-config$ is the chart-config extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-config function or or via the altova:create-chart-config-from-xml function
- $chart-data-series$ is the chart-data-series extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-data-series function or altova:create-chart-data-series-from-rows function
- $chart-layer$ is the chart-layer extension item obtained with the altova:create-chart-layer function
- $mergescategoryvalues$ merges the values of multiple data series if true, does not merge if false

The function returns a multi-layer-chart item.
8.2.1.10.1 Chart Data XML Structure

Given below is the XML structure of chart data, how it might appear for the Altova extension functions for charts. This affects the appearance of the specific chart. Not all elements are used for all chart kinds, e.g. the `<Pie>` element is ignored for bar charts.

**Note:** Chart functions are supported only in the Enterprise and Server Editions of Altova products.

```xml
<chart-config>
  <General>
    <SettingsVersion="1" must be provided/>
    <ChartKind="BarChart" Pie, Pie3d, BarChart, StackedBarChart, BarChart3d, BarChart3dGrouped, LineChart, ValueLineChart, AreaChart, StackedAreaChart, RoundGauge, BarGauge, CandleStick/>
    <BKColor="#ffffff" Color/>
    <BKColorGradientEnd="#ffffff" Color. In case of a gradient, BKColor and BKColorGradientEnd define the gradient's colors/>
    <BKMode="#ffffff" Solid, HorzGradient, VertGradient/>
    <BKFile="Path+Filename" String. If file exists, its content is drawn over the background/>
    <PlotBorderColor="#000000" Color/>
    <PlotBKColor="#ffffff" Color/>
    <Title="" String/>
    <ShowLegend="1" Bool/>
    <OutsideMargin="3.%" PercentOrPixel/>
    <TitleToPlotMargin="3.%" PercentOrPixel/>
    <LegendToPlotMargin="3.%" PercentOrPixel/>
    <Orientation="vert" Enumeration: possible values are: vert, horz/>
  </General>
  <TitleFont>
    <Color="#000000" Color/>
    <Name="Tahoma" String/>
    <Bold="1" Bool/>
    <Italic="0" Bool/>
    <Underline="0" Bool/>
    <MinFontHeight="10.pt" FontSize (only pt values)/>
    <Size="8.%" FontSize/>
  </TitleFont>
  <LegendFont>
    <Color="#000000" Color/>
    <Name="Tahoma" String/>
    <Bold="0" Bool/>
    <Italic="0" Bool/>
    <Underline="0" Bool/>
    <MinFontHeight="10.pt" FontSize (only pt values)/>
    <Size="3.5%"/>
  </LegendFont>
  <AxisLabelFont>
    <Color="#000000" Color/>
    <Name="Tahoma" String/>
    <Bold="1" Bool/>
    <Italic="0" Bool/>
    <Underline="0" Bool/>
    <MinFontHeight="10.pt" FontSize (only pt values)/>
    <Size="0."
```
<General>
  <Line>
    <ConnectionShapeSize>1.5</ConnectionShapeSize>
    <PercentOrPixel></PercentOrPixel>
    <DrawFilledConnectionShapes>No</DrawFilledConnectionShapes>
    <DrawOutlineConnectionShapes>No</DrawOutlineConnectionShapes>
    <DrawSlashConnectionShapes>No</DrawSlashConnectionShapes>
    <DrawBackslashConnectionShapes>No</DrawBackslashConnectionShapes>
  </Line>
  <Bar>
    <ShowShadow>Yes</ShowShadow>
    <ShadowColor>SwiftBlue</ShadowColor>
    <OutlineColor>SwiftBlue</OutlineColor>
    <ShowOutline>Yes</ShowOutline>
  </Bar>
  <Area>
    <Transparency>0</Transparency>
    <OutlineColor>SwiftBlue</OutlineColor>
    <ShowOutline>Yes</ShowOutline>
  </Area>
  <CandleStick>
    <FillHighClose>No</FillHighClose>
    <FillColorHighClose>SwiftBlue</FillColorHighClose>
    <FillHighOpenWithSeriesColor>Yes</FillHighOpenWithSeriesColor>
    <FillColorHighOpen>SwiftBlue</FillColorHighOpen>
    <FillHighOpenWithSeriesColor>False</FillHighOpenWithSeriesColor>
  </CandleStick>
  <Colors>
    <User-defined color scheme: By default this element is empty except for the style and has no Color attributes>
    <UseSubsequentColors>No</UseSubsequentColors>
    <Style>User-defined color scheme: By default this element is empty except for the style and has no Color attributes>
    <Colors>No</Colors>
    <Colors1>No</Colors1>
    <Colors2>No</Colors2>
    ...<ColorsN>No</ColorsN>
    Up to ten colors are allowed in a set: from Colors to Colors9
  </Colors>
  <Pie>
    <ShowLabels>No</ShowLabels>
    <OutlineColor>SwiftBlue</OutlineColor>
    <ShowOutline>No</ShowOutline>
    <StartAngle>No</StartAngle>
    <Clockwise>No</Clockwise>
  </Pie>
</General>
Draw2dHighlights="1"  Bool
Transparency="0"  Int (0 to 255: 0 is opaque, 255 is fully transparent)
DropDownShadowColor="#c0c0c0"  Color
DropDownShadowSize="5.%"  PercentOrPixel
PieHeight="10.%"  PercentOrPixel. Pixel values might be different in the result because of
3d tilting
Tilt="40.0"  Double (10 to 90: The 3d tilt in degrees of a 3d pie)
ShowDropDownShadow="1"  Bool
ChartToLabelMargin="10.%"  PercentOrPixel
AddValueToLabel="0"  Bool
AddPercentToLabel="0"  Bool
AddPercentToLabels DecimalDigits="0"  UINT (0 – 2)
>
<LabelFont
    Color="#000000"
    Name="Arial"
    Bold="0"
    Italic="0"
    Underline="0"
    MinFontHeight="10.pt"
    Size="4.%"  />
</Pie>

<XY>
    <XAxis
        AutoRange="1"  Bool
        AutoRangeIncludesZero="1"  Bool
        RangeFrom="0."  Double: manual range
        RangeTill="1."  Double: manual range
        LabelToAxisMargin="3.%"  PercentOrPixel
        AxisLabel=""  String
        AxisColor="#000000"  Color
        AxisGridColor="#e6e6e6"  Color
        ShowGrid="1"  Bool
        UseAutoTick="1"  Bool
        ManualTickInterval="1."  Double
        AxisToChartMargin="0.px"  PercentOrPixel
        TickSize="3.px"  PercentOrPixel
        ShowTicks="1"  Bool
        ShowValues="1"  Bool
        AxisPosition="LeftOrBottom"  Enums: "LeftOrBottom", "RightOrTop", "AtValue"
        AxisPositionAtValue = "0"  Double
    >
    <ValueFont
        Color="#000000"
        Name="Tahoma"
        Bold="0"
        Italic="0"
        Underline="0"
        MinFontHeight="10.pt"
        Size="3.%"  />
</XAxis>

<YAxis  Axis (same as for XAxis)
    AutoRange="1"
}
AutoRangeIncludesZero="1"
RangeFrom="0."
RangeTill="1."
LabelToAxisMargin="3.%"
AxisLabel=""
AxisColor="#000000"
AxisGridColor="#e6e6e6"
ShowGrid="1"
UseAutoTick="1"
ManualTickInterval="1."
AxisToChartMargin="0.px"
TickSize="3.px"
ShowTicks="1"  Bool
ShowValues="1"  Bool
AxisPosition="LeftOrBottom"  Enums: "LeftOrBottom", "RightOrTop", "AtValue"
AxisPositionAtValue = "0"  Double

<ValueFont
  Color="#000000"
  Name="Tahoma"
  Bold="0"
  Italic="0"
  Underline="0"
  MinFontHeight="10.pt"
  Size="3.%"/>

</YAxis>

<XY3d
  AxisAutoSize="1"  Bool: If false, XSize and YSize define the aspect ration of x and y axis. If true, aspect ratio is equal to chart window
  XSize="100.%"  PercentOrPixel. Pixel values might be different in the result because of 3d tilting and zooming to fit chart
  YSize="100.%"  PercentOrPixel. Pixel values might be different in the result because of 3d tilting and zooming to fit chart
  SeriesMargin="30.%"  PercentOrPixel. Pixel values might be different in the result because of 3d tilting and zooming to fit chart
  Tilt="20."  Double. -90 to +90 degrees
  Rot="20."  Double. -359 to +359 degrees
  FoV="50.">  Double. Field of view: 1-120 degree

  <ZAxis
AutoRangeIncludesZero="1"
RangeFrom="0."
RangeTill="1."
LabelToAxisMargin="3.%"
AxisLabel=""
AxisColor="#000000"
AxisGridColor="#e6e6e6"
ShowGrid="1"
UseAutoTick="1"
ManualTickInterval="1."
AxisToChartMargin="0.px"
TickSize="3.px" >
<ValueFont
    Color="#000000"
    Name="Tahoma"
    Bold="0"
    Italic="0"
    Underline="0"
    MinFontHeight="10.pt"
    Size="3.8%"/>
</ZAxis>
</XZ3d>

<Gauge
    MinVal="0."  Double
    MaxVal="100." Double
    MinAngle="225"  UINT: -359-359
    SweepAngle="270"  UINT: 1-359
    BorderToTick="1.%"  PercentOrPixel
    MajorTickWidth="3.px"  PercentOrPixel
    MajorTickLength="4.8%"  PercentOrPixel
    MinorTickWidth="1.px"  PercentOrPixel
    MinorTickLength="3.8%"  PercentOrPixel
    BorderColor="#a0a0a0"  Color
    FillColor="#303535"  Color
    MajorTickColor="#a0c0b0"  Color
    MinorTickColor="#a0c0b0"  Color
    BorderWidth="2.%"  PercentOrPixel
    NeedleBaseWidth="1.5%"  PercentOrPixel
    NeedleBaseRadius="5.%"  PercentOrPixel
    NeedleColor="#f00000"  Color
    NeedleBaseColor="#141414"  Color
    TickToTickValueMargin="5.%"  PercentOrPixel
    MajorTickStep="10."  Double
    MinorTickStep="5."  Double
    RoundGaugeBorderToColorRange="0.%"  PercentOrPixel
    RoundGaugeColorRangeWidth="6.%"  PercentOrPixel
    BarGaugeRadius="5.%"  PercentOrPixel
    BarGaugeMaxHeight="20.%"  PercentOrPixel
    RoundGaugeNeedleLength="45.%"  PercentOrPixel
    BarGaugeNeedleLength="3.%"  PercentOrPixel
>
</TicksFont
    Color="#a0c0b0"
    Name="Tahoma"
    Bold="0"
    Italic="0"
    Underline="0"
    MinFontHeight="10.pt"
    Size="4.8%"/>
</ColorRanges>  User-defined color ranges. By default empty with no child element entries
<Entry
    From="50."  Double
    FillWithColor="1"  Bool
    Color="#00ff00"  Color
8.2.1.10.2 Example: Chart Functions

The example XSLT document below shows how Altova extension functions for charts can be used. Given further below are an XML document and a screenshot of the output image generated when the XML document is processed with the XSLT document using the XSLT 2.0 or 3.0 Engine.

Note: Chart functions are supported only in the Enterprise and Server Editions of Altova products.

Note: For more information about how chart data tables are created, see the documentation of Altova’s XMLSpy and StyleVision products.

XSLT document

This XSLT document (listing below) uses Altova chart extension functions to generate a pie chart. It can be used to process the XML document listed further below.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:altovaext="http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions"
    exclude-result-prefixes="#all">
    <xsl:output version="4.0" method="html" indent="yes" encoding="UTF-8"/>
    <xsl:template match="/">
        <html>
            <head>
                <title>HTML Page with Embedded Chart</title>
            </head>
            <body>
                <xsl:for-each select="/Data/Region[1]">
                    <xsl:variable name="extChartConfig" as="item(*)">
                        <chart-config>
                            <General SettingsVersion="1" ChartKind="Pie3d" BKColor="#ffffff"/>
                        </chart-config>
                    </xsl:variable>
                </xsl:for-each>
            </body>
        </html>
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
This XML document can be processed with the XSLT document above. Data in the XML document is used to generate the pie chart shown in the screenshot below.
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Data xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="YearlySales.xsd">
  <ChartType>Pie Chart 2D</ChartType>
  <Region id="Americas">
    <Year id="2005">30000</Year>
    <Year id="2006">90000</Year>
    <Year id="2007">120000</Year>
    <Year id="2008">180000</Year>
    <Year id="2009">140000</Year>
    <Year id="2010">100000</Year>
  </Region>
  <Region id="Europe">
    <Year id="2005">50000</Year>
    <Year id="2006">60000</Year>
    <Year id="2007">80000</Year>
    <Year id="2008">100000</Year>
    <Year id="2009">95000</Year>
    <Year id="2010">80000</Year>
  </Region>
  <Region id="Asia">
    <Year id="2005">10000</Year>
    <Year id="2006">25000</Year>
    <Year id="2007">70000</Year>
    <Year id="2008">110000</Year>
    <Year id="2009">125000</Year>
    <Year id="2010">150000</Year>
  </Region>
</Data>

Output image

The pie chart show below is generated when the XML document listed above is processed with the XSLT document.
8.2.1.11 Barcode Functions

The XSLT Engine uses third-party Java libraries to create barcodes. Given below are the classes and the public methods used. The classes are packaged in AltovaBarcodeExtension.jar, which is located in the folder <ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\Common2021\jar.

The Java libraries used are in sub-folders of the folder <ProgramFilesFolder>\Altova\Common2021\jar:

- barcode4j\barcode4j.jar (Website: http://barcode4j.sourceforge.net/)
- zxing\core.jar (Website: http://code.google.com/p/zxing/)

The license files are also located in the respective folders.

Java virtual machine

In order to be able to use the barcode functions, a Java virtual machine must be available on your machine. The path to the machine is found as noted below.

- If you are using an Altova desktop product, the Altova application attempts to detect the path to the
Java virtual machine automatically, by reading (in this order): (i) the Windows registry, and (ii) the \JAVA_HOME\ environment variable. You can also add a custom path in the Options dialog of the application; this entry will take priority over any other Java VM path detected automatically.

- If you are running an Altova server product on a Windows machine, the path to the Java virtual machine will be read first from the Windows registry; if this is not successful the \JAVA_HOME\ environment variable will be used.
- If you are running an Altova server product on a Linux or macOS machine, then make sure that the path to the Java virtual machine is stored in the \JAVA_HOME\ environment variable. The path must point to the jvm.dll file in the \bin\server or \bin\client directory.

The \com.altova.extensions.barcode\ package

The package, \com.altova.extensions.barcode\, is used to generate most of the barcode types.

The following classes are used:

public class BarcodeWrapper

  static BarcodeWrapper newInstance( String name, String msg, int dpi, int orientation, BarcodePropertyWrapper[] arrProperties )
  double getHeightPlusQuiet()
  double getWidthPlusQuiet()
  org.w3c.dom.Document generateBarcodeSVG()
  byte[] generateBarcodePNG()
  String generateBarcodePngAsHexString()

public class BarcodePropertyWrapper

  Used to store the barcode properties that will be dynamically set later

  BarcodePropertyWrapper( String methodName, String propertyValue )
  BarcodePropertyWrapper( String methodName, Integer propertyValue )
  BarcodePropertyWrapper( String methodName, Double propertyValue )
  BarcodePropertyWrapper( String methodName, Boolean propertyValue )
  BarcodePropertyWrapper( String methodName, Character propertyValue )
  String getMethodName()
  Object getPropertyValue()

public class AltovaBarcodeClassResolver

  Registers the class \com.altova.extensions.barcode.proxy.zxing.QRCodeBean\ for the qrcode bean, additionally to the classes registered by the \org.krysalis.barcode4j.DefaultBarcodeClassResolver\.

The \com.altova.extensions.barcode.proxy.zxing\ package

The package, \com.altova.extensions.barcode.proxy.zxing\, is used to generate the QRCode barcode type.

The following classes are used:

class QRCodeBean

  - Extends \org.krysalis.barcode4j.impl.AbstractBarcodeBean\  
  - \Creates an\ AbstractBarcodeBean interface for \com.google.zxing.qrcode.encoder\  
    void generateBarcode(CanvasProvider canvasImp, String msg)
void setQRErrorCorrectionLevel(QRCodeErrorCorrectionLevel level)
BarcodeDimension calcDimensions(String msg)
double getVerticalQuietZone()
double getBarWidth()

class QRCodeErrorCorrectionLevel Error correction level for the QRCode
static QRCodeErrorCorrectionLevel byName(String name)
"L" = ~7% correction
"M" = ~15% correction
"H" = ~25% correction
"Q" = ~30% correction

XSLT example
Given below is an XSLT example showing how barcode functions are used in an XSLT stylesheet.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0" xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
    xmlns:altova="http://www.altova.com"
    xmlns:altovaext="http://www.altova.com/xslt-extensions"
    xmlns:altovaext-barcode="java:com.altova.extensions.barcode.BarcodeWrapper"
    <xsl:output method="html" encoding="UTF-8" indent="yes"/>
    <xsl:template match="/"
        <html>
            <head><title/></head>
            <body>
                <img alt="barcode" src="{altovaext:get-temp-folder()}barcode.png"/>
            </body>
        </html>
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

8.2.2 Miscellaneous Extension Functions

There are several ready-made functions in programming languages such as Java and C# that are not available as XQuery/XPath functions or as XSLT functions. A good example would be the math functions available in Java, such as \( \sin() \) and \( \cos() \). If these functions were available to the designers of XSLT stylesheets and

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
XQuery queries, it would increase the application area of stylesheets and queries and greatly simplify the tasks of stylesheet creators. The XSLT and XQuery engines used in a number of Altova products support the use of extension functions in Java and .NET, as well as MSXSL scripts for XSLT. This section describes how to use extension functions and MSXSL scripts in your XSLT stylesheets and XQuery documents. The available extension functions are organized into the following sections:

- Java Extension Functions
- .NET Extension Functions
- MSXSL Scripts for XSLT

The two main issues considered in the descriptions are: (i) how functions in the respective libraries are called; and (ii) what rules are followed for converting arguments in a function call to the required input format of the function, and what rules are followed for the return conversion (function result to XSLT/XQuery data object).

Requirements

For extension functions support, a Java Runtime Environment (for access to Java functions) and .NET Framework 2.0 (minimum, for access to .NET functions) must be installed on the machine running the XSLT transformation or XQuery execution, or must be accessible for the transformations.

8.2.2.1 Java Extension Functions

A Java extension function can be used within an XPath or XQuery expression to invoke a Java constructor or call a Java method (static or instance).

A field in a Java class is considered to be a method without any argument. A field can be static or instance. How to access fields is described in the respective sub-sections, static and instance.

This section is organized into the following sub-sections:

- Java: Constructors
- Java: Static Methods and Static Fields
- Java: Instance Methods and Instance Fields
- Datatypes: XPath/XQuery to Java
- Datatypes: Java to XPath/XQuery

Note the following

- If you are using an Altova desktop product, the Altova application attempts to detect the path to the Java virtual machine automatically, by reading (in this order): (i) the Windows registry, and (ii) the JAVA_HOME environment variable. You can also add a custom path in the Options dialog of the application; this entry will take priority over any other Java VM path detected automatically.
- If you are running an Altova server product on a Windows machine, the path to the Java virtual machine will be read first from the Windows registry; if this is not successful the JAVA_HOME environment variable will be used.
- If you are running an Altova server product on a Linux or macOS machine, then make sure that the path to the Java virtual machine is stored in the JAVA_HOME environment variable. The path must point to the jvm.dll file in the \bin\server or \bin\client directory.
Form of the extension function
The extension function in the XPath/XQuery expression must have the form prefix:fname().

- The prefix: part identifies the extension function as a Java function. It does so by associating the extension function with an in-scope namespace declaration, the URI of which must begin with java: (see below for examples). The namespace declaration should identify a Java class, for example:
  xmlns:myns="java:java.lang.Math". However, it could also simply be:
  xmlns:myns="java" (without a colon), with the identification of the Java class being left to the fname() part of the extension function.
- The fname() part identifies the Java method being called, and supplies the arguments for the method (see below for examples). However, if the namespace URI identified by the prefix: part does not identify a Java class (see preceding point), then the Java class should be identified in the fname() part, before the class and separated from the class by a period (see the second XSLT example below).

Note: The class being called must be on the classpath of the machine.

XSLT example
Here are two examples of how a static method can be called. In the first example, the class name (java.lang.Math) is included in the namespace URI and, therefore, must not be in the fname() part. In the second example, the prefix: part supplies the prefix java: while the fname() part identifies the class as well as the method.

```
  select="jMath:cos(3.14)" /
</xsl:value-of>

<xsl:value-of xmlns:jmath="java">
  select="jmath:java.lang.Math.cos(3.14)" /
</xsl:value-of>
```

The method named in the extension function (cos() in the example above) must match the name of a public static method in the named Java class (java.lang.Math in the example above).

XQuery example
Here is an XQuery example similar to the XSLT example above:

```
<cosine xmlns:jMath="java:java.lang.Math">
  {jMath:cos(3.14)}
</cosine>
```

User-defined Java classes
If you have created your own Java classes, methods in these classes are called differently according to: (i) whether the classes are accessed via a JAR file or a class file, and (ii) whether these files (JAR or class) are located in the current directory (the same directory as the XSLT or XQuery document) or not. How to locate these files is described in the sections User-Defined Class Files and User-Defined Jar Files. Note that paths to class files not in the current directory and to all JAR files must be specified.
8.2.2.1.1 User-Defined Class Files

If access is via a class file, then there are four possibilities:

- The class file is in a package. The XSLT or XQuery file is in the same folder as the Java package. *(See example below.)*
- The class file is not packaged. The XSLT or XQuery file is in the same folder as the class file. *(See example below.)*
- The class file is in a package. The XSLT or XQuery file is at some random location. *(See example below.)*
- The class file is not packaged. The XSLT or XQuery file is at some random location. *(See example below.)*

Consider the case where the class file is not packaged and is in the same folder as the XSLT or XQuery document. In this case, since all classes in the folder are found, the file location does not need to be specified. The syntax to identify a class is:

```
java:classname
```

where

- `java:` indicates that a user-defined Java function is being called; (Java classes in the current directory will be loaded by default)
- `classname` is the name of the required method's class

The class is identified in a namespace URI, and the namespace is used to prefix a method call.

Class file packaged, XSLT/XQuery file in same folder as Java package

The example below calls the `getVehicleType()` method of the `Car` class of the `com.altova.extfunc` package. The `com.altova.extfunc` package is in the folder `JavaProject`. The XSLT file is also in the folder `JavaProject`.

```
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
    xmlns:car="java:com.altova.extfunc.Car" >
<xsl:output exclude-result-prefixes="fn car xsl fo xs"/>

<xsl:template match="/"
    <a>
      <xsl:value-of select="car:getVehicleType()"/>
    </a>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
Class file referenced, XSLT/XQuery file in same folder as class file

The example below calls the `getVehicleType()` method of the `Car` class. Let us say that: (i) the `Car` class file is in the following folder: `JavaProject/com/altova/extfunc`, and (ii) that this folder is the current folder in the example below. The XSLT file is also in the folder `JavaProject/com/altova/extfunc`.

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
    xmlns:car="java:Car">
    <xsl:output exclude-result-prefixes="fn car xsl fo xs"/>
    <xsl:template match="/">
        <a>
            <xsl:value-of select="car:getVehicleType()"/>
        </a>
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Class file packaged, XSLT/XQuery file at any location

The example below calls the `getCarColor()` method of the `Car` class of the `com.altova.extfunc` package. The `com.altova.extfunc` package is in the folder `JavaProject`. The XSLT file is at any location. In this case, the location of the package must be specified within the URI as a query string. The syntax is:

```
java:classname[?path=uri-of-package]
```

where

- `java:` indicates that a user-defined Java function is being called
- `uri-of-package` is the URI of the Java package
- `classname` is the name of the required method's class

The class is identified in a namespace URI, and the namespace is used to prefix a method call. The example below shows how to access a class file that is located in another directory than the current directory.

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
    <xsl:output exclude-result-prefixes="fn car xsl xs"/>
    <xsl:template match="/">
        <xsl:variable name="myCar" select="car:new('red')" />
        <a><xsl:value-of select="car:getCarColor($myCar)"/></a>
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
Class file referenced, XSLT/XQuery file at any location

The example below calls the `getCarColor()` method of the `Car` class. Let us say that the `Car` class file is in the folder `C:/JavaProject/com/altova/extfunc`, and the XSLT file is at any location. The location of the class file must then be specified within the namespace URI as a query string. The syntax is:

```
java:classname[path=<uri-of-classfile>]
```

*where*

- `java:` indicates that a user-defined Java function is being called
- `uri-of-classfile` is the URI of the folder containing the class file
- `classname` is the name of the required method's class

The class is identified in a namespace URI, and the namespace is used to prefix a method call. The example below shows how to access a class file that is located in another directory than the current directory.

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
    xmlns:car="java:Car?path=file:///C:/JavaProject/com/altova/extfunc/" >
  
  <xsl:output exclude-result-prefixes="fn car xsl xs"/>
  
  <xsl:template match="/">
    <xsl:variable name="myCar" select="car:new('red')" />
    <a><xsl:value-of select="car:getCarColor($myCar)"/></a>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

**Note:** When a path is supplied via the extension function, the path is added to the ClassLoader.

8.2.2.1.2 User-Defined Jar Files

If access is via a JAR file, the URI of the JAR file must be specified using the following syntax:

```
xmlns:classNS="java:classname?path=jar:uri-of-jarfile!/
```

The method is then called by using the prefix of the namespace URI that identifies the class:

```
classNS:method()
```

*In the above:*

- `java:` indicates that a Java function is being called
- `classname` is the name of the user-defined class
is the separator between the classname and the path
path=jar: indicates that a path to a JAR file is being given
uri-of-jarfile is the URI of the jar file
!/ is the end delimiter of the path
classNS:method() is the call to the method

Alternatively, the classname can be given with the method call. Here are two examples of the syntax:

xmlns:ns1="java:docx.layout.pages?
path=jar:file:///c:/projects/docs/docx.jar!/
ns1:main()

xmlns:ns2="java?path=jar:file:///c:/projects/docs/docx.jar!/"
ns2:docx.layout.pages.main()

Here is a complete XSLT example that uses a JAR file to call a Java extension function:

<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
xmlns:car="java?path=jar:file:///C:/test/Car1.jar!/>
<xsl:output exclude-result-prefixes="fn car xsl xs"/>
<xsl:template match=""/>
<xsl:variable name="myCar" select="car:Car1.new('red')" />
<a><xsl:value-of select="car:Car1.getCarColor($myCar)"/></a>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="car"/>
</xsl:stylesheet>

Note: When a path is supplied via the extension function, the path is added to the ClassLoader.

8.2.2.1.3 Java: Constructors

An extension function can be used to call a Java constructor. All constructors are called with the pseudo-function new().

If the result of a Java constructor call can be explicitly converted to XPath/XQuery datatypes, then the Java extension function will return a sequence that is an XPath/XQuery datatype. If the result of a Java constructor call cannot be converted to a suitable XPath/XQuery datatype, then the constructor creates a wrapped Java object with a type that is the name of the class returning that Java object. For example, if a constructor for the class java.util.Date is called (java.util.Date.new()), then an object having a type java.util.Date is returned. The lexical format of the returned object may not match the lexical format of an XPath datatype and the value would therefore need to be converted to the lexical format of the required XPath datatype and then to the required XPath datatype.

There are two things that can be done with a Java object created by a constructor:
• It can be assigned to a variable:
  
  ```xml
  <xsl:variable name="currentdate" select="date:new()"
    xmlns:date="java:java.util.Date" />
  ```

• It can be passed to an extension function (see Instance Method and Instance Fields):  
  
  ```xml
  <xsl:value-of select="date:toString(date:new())" xmlns:date="java:java.util.Date" />
  ```

### 8.2.2.1.4 Java: Static Methods and Static Fields

A static method is called directly by its Java name and by supplying the arguments for the method. Static fields (methods that take no arguments), such as the constant-value fields \( E \) and \( \Pi \), are accessed without specifying any argument.

#### XSLT examples

Here are some examples of how static methods and fields can be called:

```xml
  select="jMath:cos(3.14)" />
```

```xml
  select="jMath:cos(jMath:PI())" />
```

```xml
  select="jMath:E() * jMath:cos(3.14)" />
```

Notice that the extension functions above have the form `prefix:fname()`. The prefix in all three cases is `jMath:`, which is associated with the namespace URI `java:java.lang.Math`. (The namespace URI must begin with `java:`. In the examples above it is extended to contain the class name (`java.lang.Math`).) The `fname()` part of the extension functions must match the name of a public class (e.g. `java.lang.Math`) followed by the name of a public static method with its argument/s (such as `cos(3.14)`) or a public static field (such as `PI()`).

In the examples above, the class name has been included in the namespace URI. If it were not contained in the namespace URI, then it would have to be included in the `fname()` part of the extension function. For example:

```xml
<xsl:value-of xmlns:java="java:"
  select="java:java.lang.Math.cos(3.14)" />
```

#### XQuery example

A similar example in XQuery would be:

```xml
<cosine xmlns:jMath="java:java.lang.Math">
  {jMath:cos(3.14)}
</cosine>
```
8.2.2.1.5  Java: Instance Methods and Instance Fields

An instance method has a Java object passed to it as the first argument of the method call. Such a Java object typically would be created by using an extension function (for example a constructor call) or a stylesheet parameter/variable. An XSLT example of this kind would be:

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0" exclude-result-prefixes="date"
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:date="java:java.util.Date"
  xmlns:jlang="java:java.lang">
  <xsl:param name="CurrentDate" select="date:new()"/>
  <xsl:template match="/">
    <enrollment institution-id="Altova School"
      date="{date:toString($CurrentDate)}"
      type="{jlang:Object.toString(jlang:Object.getClass( date:new() ))}"
    />
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

In the example above, the value of the node `enrollment/@type` is created as follows:

1. An object is created with a constructor for the class `java.util.Date` (with the `date:new()` constructor).
2. This Java object is passed as the argument of the `jlang.Object.getClass` method.
3. The object obtained by the `getClass` method is passed as the argument to the `jlang.Object.toString` method.

The result (the value of `@type`) will be a string having the value: `java.util.Date`.

An instance field is theoretically different from an instance method in that it is not a Java object per se that is passed as an argument to the instance field. Instead, a parameter or variable is passed as the argument. However, the parameter/variable may itself contain the value returned by a Java object. For example, the parameter `CurrentDate` takes the value returned by a constructor for the class `java.util.Date`. This value is then passed as an argument to the instance method `date:toString` in order to supply the value of `/enrollment/@date`.

8.2.2.1.6  Datatypes: XPath/XQuery to Java

When a Java function is called from within an XPath/XQuery expression, the datatype of the function's arguments is important in determining which of multiple Java classes having the same name is called.

In Java, the following rules are followed:

- If there is more than one Java method with the same name, but each has a different number of arguments than the other/s, then the Java method that best matches the number of arguments in the function call is selected.
- The XPath/XQuery string, number, and boolean datatypes (see list below) are implicitly converted to a corresponding Java datatype. If the supplied XPath/XQuery type can be converted to more than one Java type (for example, `xs:integer`), then that Java type is selected which is declared for the selected
method. For example, if the Java method being called is `fx(decimal)` and the supplied XPath/XQuery datatype is `xs:integer`, then `xs:integer` will be converted to Java's `decimal` datatype.

The table below lists the implicit conversions of XPath/XQuery string, number, and boolean types to Java datatypes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XPath/XQuery Type</th>
<th>Java Datatype</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>xs:string</code></td>
<td><code>java.lang.String</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xs:boolean</code></td>
<td><code>boolean (primitive), java.lang.Boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xs:integer</code></td>
<td><code>int, long, short, byte, float, double, and the wrapper classes of these, such as java.lang.Integer</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xs:float</code></td>
<td><code>float (primitive), java.lang.Float, double (primitive)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xs:double</code></td>
<td><code>double (primitive), java.lang.Double</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xs:decimal</code></td>
<td><code>float (primitive), java.lang.Float, double (primitive), java.lang.Double</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subtypes of the XML Schema datatypes listed above (and which are used in XPath and XQuery) will also be converted to the Java type/s corresponding to that subtype's ancestor type.

In some cases, it might not be possible to select the correct Java method based on the supplied information. For example, consider the following case.

- The supplied argument is an `xs:untypedAtomic` value of 10 and it is intended for the method `mymethod(float)`.
- However, there is another method in the class which takes an argument of another datatype: `mymethod(double)`.
- Since the method names are the same and the supplied type (`xs:untypedAtomic`) could be converted correctly to either `float` or `double`, it is possible that `xs:untypedAtomic` is converted to `double` instead of `float`.
- Consequently the method selected will not be the required method and might not produce the expected result. To work around this, you can create a user-defined method with a different name and use this method.

Types that are not covered in the list above (for example `xs:date`) will not be converted and will generate an error. However, note that in some cases, it might be possible to create the required Java type by using a Java constructor.

### 8.2.2.1.7 Datatypes: Java to XPath/XQuery

When a Java method returns a value, the datatype of the value is a string, numeric or boolean type, then it is converted to the corresponding XPath/XQuery type. For example, Java's `java.lang.Boolean` and `boolean` datatypes are converted to `xsd:boolean`.

One-dimensional arrays returned by functions are expanded to a sequence. Multi-dimensional arrays will not be converted, and should therefore be wrapped.
When a wrapped Java object or a datatype other than string, numeric or boolean is returned, you can ensure conversion to the required XPath/XQuery type by first using a Java method (e.g. `toString`) to convert the Java object to a string. In XPath/XQuery, the string can be modified to fit the lexical representation of the required type and then converted to the required type (for example, by using the `cast as` expression).

### 8.2.2.2 .NET Extension Functions

If you are working on the .NET platform on a Windows machine, you can use extension functions written in any of the .NET languages (for example, C#). A .NET extension function can be used within an XPath or XQuery expression to invoke a constructor, property, or method (static or instance) within a .NET class.

A property of a .NET class is called using the syntax `get_PropertyName()`.

This section is organized into the following sub-sections:

- .NET: Constructors
- .NET: Static Methods and Static Fields
- .NET: Instance Methods and Instance Fields
- Datatypes: XPath/XQuery to .NET
- Datatypes: .NET to XPath/XQuery

#### Form of the extension function

The extension function in the XPath/XQuery expression must have the form `prefix:fname()`.

- The `prefix:` part is associated with a URI that identifies the .NET class being addressed.
- The `fname()` part identifies the constructor, property, or method (static or instance) within the .NET class, and supplies any argument/s, if required.
- The URI must begin with `clitype:` (which identifies the function as being a .NET extension function).
- The `prefix:fname()` form of the extension function can be used with system classes and with classes in a loaded assembly. However, if a class needs to be loaded, additional parameters containing the required information will have to be supplied.

#### Parameters

To load an assembly, the following parameters are used:

- `asm`: The name of the assembly to be loaded.
- `ver`: The version number (maximum of four integers separated by periods).
- `sn`: The key token of the assembly’s strong name (16 hex digits).
- `from`: A URI that gives the location of the assembly (DLL) to be loaded. If the URI is relative, it is relative to the XSLT or XQuery document. If this parameter is present, any other parameter is ignored.
- `partialname`: The partial name of the assembly. It is supplied to `Assembly.LoadWith.PartialName()`, which will attempt to load the assembly. If `partialname` is present, any other parameter is ignored.
The locale, for example, en-US. The default is neutral.

If the assembly is to be loaded from a DLL, use the from parameter and omit the sn parameter. If the assembly is to be loaded from the Global Assembly Cache (GAC), use the sn parameter and omit the from parameter.

A question mark must be inserted before the first parameter, and parameters must be separated by a semi-colon. The parameter name gives its value with an equals sign (see example below).

Examples of namespace declarations
An example of a namespace declaration in XSLT that identifies the system class System.Environment:

```xml
xmlns:myns="clitype:System.Environment"
```

An example of a namespace declaration in XSLT that identifies the class to be loaded as Trade.Forward.Scrip:

```xml
xmlns:myns="clitype:Trade.Forward.Scrip?asm=forward;version=10.6.2.1"
```

An example of a namespace declaration in XQuery that identifies the system class MyManagedDLL.testClass'. Two cases are distinguished:

1. When the assembly is loaded from the GAC:
   ```
   declare namespace cs="clitype:MyManagedDLL.testClass?asm=MyManagedDLL;ver=1.2.3.4;loc=neutral;sn=b9f091b72dcccfa8";
   ```

2. When the assembly is loaded from the DLL (complete and partial references below):
   ```
   declare namespace cs="clitype:MyManagedDLL.testClass?from=file:///C:/Altova Projects/extFunctions/MyManagedDLL.dll;
   declare namespace cs="clitype:MyManagedDLL.testClass?from=MyManagedDLL.dll;
   ```

XSLT example
Here is a complete XSLT example that calls functions in system class System.Math:

```xml
  <xsl:output method="xml" omit-xml-declaration="yes" />
  <xsl:template match="/">
    <math xmlns:math="clitype:System.Math">
      <sqrt><xsl:value-of select="math:Sqrt(9)"/></sqrt>
      <pi><xsl:value-of select="math:PI()"/></pi>
      <e><xsl:value-of select="math:E()"/></e>
      <pow><xsl:value-of select="math:Pow(math:PI(), math:E())"/></pow>
    </math>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
The namespace declaration on the element `math` associates the prefix `math:` with the URI `clitype:System.Math`. The `clitype:` beginning of the URI indicates that what follows identifies either a system class or a loaded class. The `math:` prefix in the XPath expressions associates the extension functions with the URI (and, by extension, the class) `System.Math`. The extension functions identify methods in the class `System.Math` and supply arguments where required.

**XQuery example**

Here is an XQuery example fragment similar to the XSLT example above:

```xml
<math xmlns:math="clitype:System.Math">
  {math:Sqrt(9)}
</math>
```

As with the XSLT example above, the namespace declaration identifies the .NET class, in this case a system class. The XQuery expression identifies the method to be called and supplies the argument.

### 8.2.2.2.1 .NET: Constructors

An extension function can be used to call a .NET constructor. All constructors are called with the pseudo-function `new()`. If there is more than one constructor for a class, then the constructor that most closely matches the number of arguments supplied is selected. If no constructor is deemed to match the supplied argument/s, then a 'No constructor found' error is returned.

**Constructors that return XPath/XQuery datatypes**

If the result of a .NET constructor call can be implicitly converted to XPath/XQuery datatypes, then the .NET extension function will return a sequence that is an XPath/XQuery datatype.

**Constructors that return .NET objects**

If the result of a .NET constructor call cannot be converted to a suitable XPath/XQuery datatype, then the constructor creates a wrapped .NET object with a type that is the name of the class returning that object. For example, if a constructor for the class `System.DateTime` is called (with `System.DateTime.new()`), then an object having a type `System.DateTime` is returned.

The lexical format of the returned object may not match the lexical format of a required XPath datatype. In such cases, the returned value would need to be: (i) converted to the lexical format of the required XPath datatype; and (ii) cast to the required XPath datatype.

There are three things that can be done with a .NET object created by a constructor:

- It can be used within a variable:

  ```xml
  <xsl:variable name="currentdate" select="date:new(2008, 4, 29)"
  xmlns:date="clitype:System.DateTime" />
  ```

- It can be passed to an extension function (see *Instance Method and Instance Fields*):

  ```xml
  <xsl:value-of select="date:ToString(date:new(2008, 4, 29))"
  xmlns:date="clitype:System.DateTime" />
  ```

- It can be converted to a string, number, or boolean:
8.2.2.2 .NET: Static Methods and Static Fields

A static method is called directly by its name and by supplying the arguments for the method. The name used in the call must exactly match a public static method in the class specified. If the method name and the number of arguments that were given in the function call matches more than one method in a class, then the types of the supplied arguments are evaluated for the best match. If a match cannot be found unambiguously, an error is reported.

Note: A field in a .NET class is considered to be a method without any argument. A property is called using the syntax get_PropertyName().

Examples

An XSLT example showing a call to a method with one argument (System.Math.Sin(arg)):

```xml
```

An XSLT example showing a call to a field (considered a method with no argument) (System.Double.MaxValue()):

```xml
```

An XSLT example showing a call to a property (syntax is get_PropertyName()) (System.String()):

```xml
<xsl:value-of select="string:get_Length('my string')" xmlns:string="clitype:System.String" />
```

An XQuery example showing a call to a method with one argument (System.Math.Sin(arg)):

```xml
<sin xmlns:math="clitype:System.Math">
  { math:Sin(30) }
</sin>
```

8.2.2.3 .NET: Instance Methods and Instance Fields

An instance method has a .NET object passed to it as the first argument of the method call. This .NET object typically would be created by using an extension function (for example a constructor call) or a stylesheet parameter/variable. An XSLT example of this kind would be:

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions">
  <xsl:output method="xml" omit-xml-declaration="yes"/>
  <xsl:template match="/">
    <xsl:variable name="releasedate" select="date:new(2008, 4, 29)"
```
In the example above, a `System.DateTime` constructor (`new(2008, 4, 29)`) is used to create a .NET object of type `System.DateTime`. This object is created twice, once as the value of the variable `releasedate`, a second time as the first and only argument of the `System.DateTime.ToString()` method. The instance method `System.DateTime.ToString()` is called twice, both times with the `System.DateTime` constructor (`new(2008, 4, 29)`) as its first and only argument. In one of these instances, the variable `releasedate` is used to get the .NET object.

**Instance methods and instance fields**

The difference between an instance method and an instance field is theoretical. In an instance method, a .NET object is directly passed as an argument; in an instance field, a parameter or variable is passed instead—though the parameter or variable may itself contain a .NET object. For example, in the example above, the variable `releasedate` contains a .NET object, and it is this variable that is passed as the argument of `ToString()` in the second `date` element constructor. Therefore, the `ToString()` instance in the first `date` element is an instance method while the second is considered to be an instance field. The result produced in both instances, however, is the same.

### 8.2.2.2.4 Datatypes: XPath/XQuery to .NET

When a .NET extension function is used within an XPath/XQuery expression, the datatypes of the function’s arguments are important for determining which one of multiple .NET methods having the same name is called.

In .NET, the following rules are followed:

- If there is more than one method with the same name in a class, then the methods available for selection are reduced to those that have the same number of arguments as the function call.
- The XPath/XQuery string, number, and boolean datatypes (see list below) are implicitly converted to a corresponding .NET datatype. If the supplied XPath/XQuery type can be converted to more than one .NET type (for example, `xs:integer`), then that .NET type is selected which is declared for the selected method. For example, if the .NET method being called is `fx(double)` and the supplied XPath/XQuery datatype is `xs:integer`, then `xs:integer` will be converted to .NET's `double` datatype.

The table below lists the implicit conversions of XPath/XQuery string, number, and boolean types to .NET datatypes.
Subtypes of the XML Schema datatypes listed above (and which are used in XPath and XQuery) will also be converted to the .NET type/s corresponding to that subtype's ancestor type.

In some cases, it might not be possible to select the correct .NET method based on the supplied information. For example, consider the following case.

- The supplied argument is an `xs:untypedAtomic` value of 10 and it is intended for the method `mymethod(float)`.
- However, there is another method in the class which takes an argument of another datatype: `mymethod(double)`.
- Since the method names are the same and the supplied type (`xs:untypedAtomic`) could be converted correctly to either `float` or `double`, it is possible that `xs:untypedAtomic` is converted to `double` instead of `float`.
- Consequently the method selected will not be the required method and might not produce the expected result. To work around this, you can create a user-defined method with a different name and use this method.

Types that are not covered in the list above (for example `xs:date`) will not be converted and will generate an error.

### 8.2.2.2.5 Datatypes: .NET to XPath/XQuery

When a .NET method returns a value and the datatype of the value is a string, numeric or boolean type, then it is converted to the corresponding XPath/XQuery type. For example, .NET's `decimal` datatype is converted to `xsd:decimal`.

When a .NET object or a datatype other than string, numeric or boolean is returned, you can ensure conversion to the required XPath/XQuery type by first using a .NET method (for example `System.DateTime.ToString()`) to convert the .NET object to a string. In XPath/XQuery, the string can be modified to fit the lexical representation of the required type and then converted to the required type (for example, by using the `cast as` expression).
8.2.2.3 MSXSL Scripts for XSLT

The `<msxsl:script>` element contains user-defined functions and variables that can be called from within XPath expressions in the XSLT stylesheet. The `<msxsl:script>` is a top-level element, that is, it must be a child element of `<xsl:stylesheet>` or `<xsl:transform>`.

The `<msxsl:script>` element must be in the namespace `urn:schemas-microsoft-com:xslt` (see example below).

**Scripting language and namespace**

The scripting language used within the block is specified in the `<msxsl:script>` element's `language` attribute and the namespace to be used for function calls from XPath expressions is identified with the `implements-prefix` attribute (see below).

```xml
<msxsl:script language="scripting-language" implements-prefix="user-namespace-prefix">
  function-1 or variable-1
  ...
  function-n or variable-n
</msxsl:script>
```

The `<msxsl:script>` element interacts with the Windows Scripting Runtime, so only languages that are installed on your machine may be used within the `<msxsl:script>` element. The .NET Framework 2.0 platform or higher must be installed for MSXSL scripts to be used. Consequently, the .NET scripting languages can be used within the `<msxsl:script>` element.

The `language` attribute accepts the same values as the `language` attribute on the HTML `<script>` element. If the `language` attribute is not specified, then Microsoft JScript is assumed as the default.

The `implements-prefix` attribute takes a value that is a prefix of a declared in-scope namespace. This namespace typically will be a user namespace that has been reserved for a function library. All functions and variables defined within the `<msxsl:script>` element will be in the namespace identified by the prefix specified in the `implements-prefix` attribute. When a function is called from within an XPath expression, the fully qualified function name must be in the same namespace as the function definition.

**Example**

Here is an example of a complete XSLT stylesheet that uses a function defined within a `<msxsl:script>` element.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0" xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
    xmlns:msxsl="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:xslt"
    xmlns:user="http://mycompany.com/mynamespace">
  <msxsl:script language="VBScript" implements-prefix="user">
    <![CDATA[
      ' Input: A currency value: the wholesale price
```

© 2015-2021 Altova GmbH
' Returns: The retail price: the input value plus 20% margin, 
' rounded to the nearest cent

dim a as integer  = 13
Function AddMargin(WholesalePrice) as integer
    AddMargin = WholesalePrice * 1.2 + a
End Function

</msxsl:script>

<xsl:template match="/"
    <html>
        <body>
            <p>
                <b>Total Retail Price =
                $<xsl:value-of select="user:AddMargin(50)"/>
            </b>
            <br/>
            <b>Total Wholesale Price =
                $<xsl:value-of select="50"/>
            </b>
        </p>
    </body>
</html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

**Datatypes**

The values of parameters passed into and out of the script block are limited to XPath datatypes. This restriction does not apply to data passed among functions and variables within the script block.

**Assemblies**

An assembly can be imported into the script by using the `msxsl:assembly` element. The assembly is identified via a name or a URI. The assembly is imported when the stylesheet is compiled. Here is a simple representation of how the `msxsl:assembly` element is to be used.

<msxsl:script>
  <msxsl:assembly name="myAssembly.assemblyName" />
  <msxsl:assembly href="pathToAssembly" />

  ...
</msxsl:script>

The assembly name can be a full name, such as:

"system.Math, Version=3.1.4500.1 Culture=neutral PublicKeyToken=a46b3f648229c514"

or a short name, such as "myAssembly.Draw".
Namespaces

Namespaces can be declared with the `msxsl:using` element. This enables assembly classes to be written in the script without their namespaces, thus saving you some tedious typing. Here is how the `msxsl:using` element is used so as to declare namespaces.

```xml
<msxsl:script>
    <msxsl:using namespace="myAssemblyNS.NamespaceName" />

    ...

</msxsl:script>
```

The value of the `namespace` attribute is the name of the namespace.
Index

.D .NET extension functions,
   constructors, 433
datatype conversions (.NET to XPath/XQuery), 436
datatype conversions (XPath/XQuery to .NET), 435
for XSLT and XQuery, 431
instance methods, instance fields, 434
overview, 431
static methods, static fields, 434 .NET Framework API, 321
.NET interface, 10

A
Altova extensions,
   chart functions (see chart functions), 333

C
Catalog customization, 41
Catalog mechanism overview, 39
Catalogs, 39
Catalogs and environment variables, 43
Catalogs in RaptorXML, 40
Chart functions,
   chart data structure for, 411
   example, 416
   listing, 407
COM interface, 10
Command line,
   options, 185
Command line,
   and XQuery, 81
   usage summary, 48
CoreCatalog.xml, 40
Cores, 20
CustomCatalog.xml, 40

D
Debugging Python scripts in Visual Studio code, 318
Debugging server-side Python scripts, 317
DTDs and catalogs, 39

E
Environment variables used in catalogs, 40
Environment variables, 43
Extension functions for XSLT and XQuery, 421
Extension Functions in .NET for XSLT and XQuery,
   see under .NET extension functions, 431
Extension Functions in Java for XSLT and XQuery,
   see under Java extension functions, 422
Extension Functions in MSXSL scripts, 437

G
Global resources, 45

H
Help command on CLI, 161
HTTP interface, 10, 202
   client requests, 214
   security issues, 47
   server configuration, 206
   server setup, 203

I
Installation on Linux, 28
Installation on macOS, 34
Installation on Windows, 21
installing RaptorXMLServer Python module, 315
Interfaces,
   overview of, 10
J

Java extension functions,
  constructors, 427
datatype conversions, Java to Xpath/XQuery, 430
datatype conversions, XPath/XQuery to Java, 429
for XSLT and XQuery, 422
instance methods, instance fields, 429
  overview, 422
static methods, static fields, 428
user-defined class files, 424
user-defined JAR files, 426
Java interface, 10
JSON config file,
  for RaptorXMLServer Python module, 315

L

License commands on CLI, 166
Licensing and processor cores, 20
Licensing on Linux, 31
Licensing on macOS, 36
Licensing on Windows, 24
Linux,
  installation on, 28
  licensing on, 31
Localization, 163

M

macOS,
  installation on, 34
  licensing on, 36
msxsl:script, 437

P

pip command, 315
Processor cores, 20
Python,
  security issues, 47
  Python API, 312
  Python API FAQs, 319
  Python interface, 10
  Python library,
    of RaptorXML Server, 315
  Python module,
    of RaptorXML Server, 315
  Python scripts on RaptorXML Server, 317

R

RaptorXML,
  command line interface, 10
  editions and interfaces, 10
  features, 15
  HTTP interface, 10
  interfaces with COM, Java, .NET, 10
  introduction, 9
  Python interface, 10
  supported specifications, 17
  system requirements, 14
  RaptorXML Server APIs, 311
RootCatalog.xml, 40, 315

S

Schemas,
  looking up via catalogs, 41
Schemas and catalogs, 39
Scripts in XSLT/XQuery,
  see under Extension functions, 421
Security issues, 47
Server configuration, 206
Setup,
  on Linux, 28
  on macOS, 34
  on Windows, 21
Single-thread execution, 20

V

Validation,
Validation,  
  of DTD, 60  
  of XML instance with DTD, 50  
  of XML instance with XSD, 53  
  of XQuery document, 96  
  of XSD, 64  
  of XSLT document, 116

Visua Studio and Python scripts, 318

W

Well-formedness check, 70  
Windows,  
  installation on, 21  
  licensing on, 24

X

XML catalogs, 39  
XQuery,  
  Extension functions, 421  
XQuery commands, 81  
XQuery document validation, 96  
XQuery execution, 81  
XSLT,  
  Extension functions, 421  
XSLT commands, 108  
XSLT document validation, 116  
XSLT transformation, 108